

REVISED  
FOR RHEL  
**6.4**

*Step by  
step  
illustration  
guide for  
newbies*

**MUSABUDDIN  
SYED**

Lab Manual for  
Linux Admin  
Course at  
KernelSphere  
Technologies,  
Hyderabad - AP



# LINUX REFERENCE GUIDE

**LINUX REFERENCE GUIDE:**

Every effort has been made to make this book as complete and as accurate as possible, but no warranty or fitness is implied.



*Name:*

*Batch:*

MORNING / AFTERNOON / EVENING

*Branch:*

BANGALORE / CHENNAI / HYDERABAD / PUNE

**Our Address:**

**KernelSphere Technologies Head Office:**

#201 Sree Swathi Anukar,  
beside Aditya Trade Center,  
Ameerpet, Hyderabad-500038

Phone: +91-40-42218546, +91 9347632617

**Dedicated to:**

**My parents, my mentor Mr. Vinod Kumar, Ms. Jyoti Singh, entire KernelSphere family, and to my  
*students***

KERNELSPHERE TECHNOLOGIES

### **About the Author:**

**Musabuddin Syed** is a highly acclaimed trainer, author and solutions provider. He regularly trains students both in-class and online at KernelSphere Technologies.

### **Words from the Author:**

I would like to thank **Mr. Vinod Kumar (Rahul)** and **Ms. Jyoti Singh** (MD Kernel Tech), for giving me the opportunity to compile this book on Linux.

I would especially like to thank my Mentor **Mr. Vinod Kumar (Rahul)** for all his support, guidance, supervision and patience in making of this book.

I would also like to extend my thanks to the entire dedicated **KernelSphere team** for their support and suggestions in making of this book.

*Musabuddin Syed*

### **Words to the Students**

Though we have taken utmost efforts to present you this book error free, but still it may contain some errors or mistakes. Students are encouraged to bring, if there are any mistakes or errors in this document to our notice. So that it may be rectified in the next edition of this document.

This document provides the brief information on every topic and lab practices. The students are advised to make full use of the lab sessions, taking help of the Lab Assistants available. Please, feel free to ask your doubts to our faculties.

**“Suppressing your doubts is Hindering your growth”.**

We urge you to work hard and make use of the facilities we are providing to you, because there is no substitute for hard work. We wish you all the best for your future.

**“God gives every bird its food, but He does not throw it into its nest” J.G. Holland**

For feedback and suggestions, write to any of the following:

[info@kernelsphere.com](mailto:info@kernelsphere.com)

[jyoti@kernelsphere.com](mailto:jyoti@kernelsphere.com)

[musab@kernelsphere.com](mailto:musab@kernelsphere.com)

# Table of Contents

Introduction to KernelSphere .....	v-viii
Introduction to Linux .....	01-10
Basic Commands .....	11-35
RHEL 6.4 Basic Graphical Installation .....	36-52
Managing File Systems and Partitions .....	53-74
Logical Volume Management (LVM) .....	75-97
User and Group Administration .....	98-120
Network Configuration and Troubleshooting.....	121-146
Managing SELinux (Basics) .....	147-156
Booting Procedure and Kernel Parameters .....	157-177
Job Automation .....	178-187
Administrating Remote System .....	188-199
Enhanced User Security with SUDO .....	200-209
Software Management .....	210-232
Backup and Restore (tar and gzip) .....	233-236
Manage Installed Services .....	237-240
Managing Processes .....	241-252
FTP (File Transfer Protocol) Server .....	253-266
NFS (Network File System) Server .....	267-276
Samba Server .....	277-285
DNS (Domain Name System) Server .....	286-298
Web Server (Apache) .....	299-311
Squid Proxy Server .....	312-319
DHCP Server .....	320-325
Mail Server .....	326-330
Configuring Firewall through iptables .....	331-334
Kickstart and Network Installations .....	335-351

## TEACH YOURSELF TOPICS (ADDITIONAL):

Installation of Oracle Database 11g .....	353-361
Implementing Nagios Core on RHEL 6.4.....	362-366
Creating filesystem using Parted.....	367-371
Well Known Port Numbers .....	372-385

# KERNEL TECHNOLOGIES

**“THE FINISHING SCHOOL TO MASTER TECHNOLOGY...”**

Kernel Technologies imparts knowledge transfer through expertise to the aspiring candidates of the ever challenging IT world. Kernel Technologies established as a training institute with the motive of providing the advanced technology required for job aspirants has now with immense hard work, dedication became very successful in trainings as well as imparting solutions.

We follow the Industry Standard Practices, implement ITIL at Kernel Technologies. A candidate at Kernel Technologies is exposed to real time environment with our REAL TIME REPLICA MODEL DATA CENTER, the ever challenging real time issues are taught with expertise.

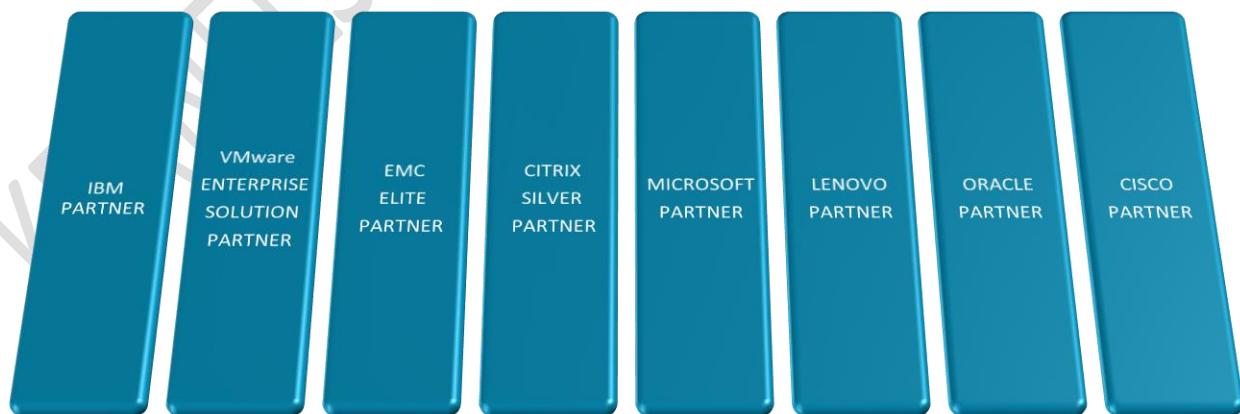
At Kernel Technologies, a candidate will learn this well-designed wonderful LINUX Operating System used by innumerable clients across the globe. As they say: *Perfect practice makes perfect*. Learn to master LINUX from the experts. You can be rest assured that you are at one of the best places to master this Operating System when you learn it from Kernel Technologies.

A visit to Kernel Technologies will surely enlighten you; you will hear a lot of successful stories, see the successful mails of our students who got placed in MNCs, you can visit the datacenter at the Kernel Technologies; check out the IBM POWER machines; feel how the work is done in real time.

Some of the clients we support:



We are also:



# KERNELSPHERE TECHNOLOGIES DATA CENTER

- KERNELSPHERE TECHNOLOGIES HAS THE **STATE-OF-THE-ART** DATA CENTER LOCATED AT ITS HEAD OFFICE IN HYDERABAD.
- THE KERNEL TECHNOLOGIES DATA CENTER CONSISTS OF:

## SWITCHES

- CISCO 4006 LAYER 3 SWITCH
- BROCADE DS-320 SWITCHES

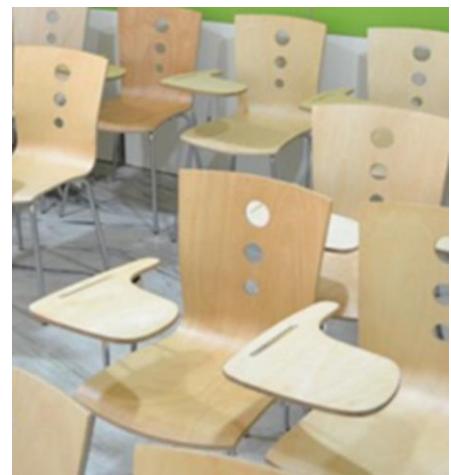
## STORAGE

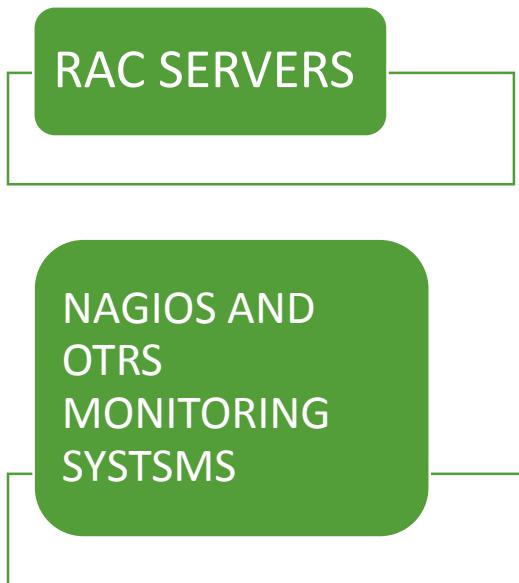
- EMC VNX 5300
- EMC CLARiiON CX4
- VMAX SE
- NETAPP 2240
- IBM V7000
- IBM DS 5000

## IBM POWER MACHINES

- IBM PURE FLEX BLADE CENTRAL
- POWER 6 – 520, POWER 5 – 550, POWER 3 MACHINES
- IBM M3400 SERIES MACHINES

KERNELSPHERE  
TECHNOLOGIES





KERNELSPHERE TECHNOLOGIES

## Courses offered at KernelSphere Technologies

### CAREER - VIRTUALIZATION

- MCITP
- VMWARE VSOPHERE 5.1
- CITRIX
- CLOUD COMPUTING

### CAREER - STORAGE

- EMC VNX/CLARIION
- NETAPP
- IBM DATA STORAGE

### CAREER - ORACLE

- DBA
- RAC
- EXADATA
- VIRTUALIZATION

### CAREER - SYSTEM ADMINISTRATION

- AIX
- LINUX
- LINUX CLUSTER
- LPAR/VIO
- HACMP
- SHELL SCRIPTING

# INTRODUCTION TO LINUX



## WHAT IS OPERATING SYSTEM?

Operating system is an interface between user and the computer hardware. The hardware of the computer cannot understand the human readable language as it works on binaries i.e. 0's and 1's. Also it is very tough for humans to understand the binary language, in such case we need an interface which can translate human language to hardware and vice-versa for effective communication.

## TYPES OF OPERATING SYSTEM:

Single User - Single Tasking Operating System

Single User - Multitasking Operating System

Multi User - Multitasking Operating System

## SINGLE USER - SINGLE TASKING OPERATING SYSTEM

In this type of operating system only one user can log into system and can perform only one task at a time.

E.g.: MS-DOS

## SINGLE USER - MULTI TASKING OPERATING SYSTEM

This type of O/S supports only one user to log into the system but a user can perform multiple tasks at a time, browsing internet while playing songs etc.

E.g.: Windows 98, ME.

## MULTI USER - MULTI TASKING OPERATING SYSTEM

This type of O/S provides multiple users to log into the system and also each user can perform various tasks at a time. In a broader term multiple users can log in to system and share the resources of the system at the same time.

E.g.: UNIX, LINUX etc.

## HISTORY OF UNIX

In the beginning, there was AT&T.

Bell Labs' Ken Thompson developed UNIX in 1969 so he could play games on a scavenged DEC PDP-7. With the help of Dennis Ritchie, the inventor of the "C" programming language, Ken rewrote UNIX entirely in "C" so that it could be used on different computers. In 1974, the OS was licensed to universities for educational purposes. Over the years, hundreds of people added and improved upon the system, and it spread into the commercial world. Dozens of different UNIX "flavors" appeared, each with unique qualities, yet still having enough similarities to the original AT&T version. All of the "flavors" were based on either AT&T's System V or Berkeley System Distribution (BSD) UNIX, or a hybrid of both.

During the late 1980's there were several commercial implementations of UNIX:

Apple Computer's A/UX

AT&T's System V Release 3

Digital Equipment Corporation's Ultrix and OSF/1 (renamed to DEC UNIX)

Hewlett Packard's HP-UX

IBM's AIX

Lynx's Real-Time UNIX

NeXT's NeXTStep

Santa Cruz Operation's SCO UNIX

Silicon Graphics' IRIX

SUN Microsystems' SUN OS and Solaris and dozens more.

The Open Standards Foundation is a UNIX industry organization designed to keep the various UNIX flavors working together. They created operating systems guidelines called POSIX to encourage inter-operability of applications from one flavor of UNIX to another. Portability of applications to different gave UNIX a distinct advantage over its mainframe competition.

Then came the GUIs. Apple's Macintosh operating system and Microsoft's Windows operating environment simplified computing tasks, and made computers more appealing to a larger number of users. UNIX wizards enjoyed the power of the command line interface, but acknowledged the difficult learning curve for new users. The Athena Project at MIT developed the X Windows Graphical User Interface for UNIX computers. Also known as the X11 environment, corporations developed their own "flavors" of the UNIX GUIs based on X11. Eventually, a GUI standard called Motif was generally accepted by the corporations and academia.

During the late 1990's Microsoft's Windows NT operating system started encroaching into traditional UNIX businesses such as banking and high-end graphics. Although not as reliable as UNIX, NT became popular because of the lower learning curve and its similarities to Windows 95 and 98. Many traditional

UNIX companies, such as DEC and Silicon Graphics abandoned their OS for NT. Others, such as SUN, focused their efforts on niche markets, such as the Internet.

## UNIX PRINCIPLES

**Everything is a file:-** UNIX systems have many powerful utilities designed to create and manipulate files. The UNIX security model is based around the security of files. By treating everything as a file, you can secure access to hardware in the same way as you secure access to a document.

**Configuration data stored in text:** - Storing configuration in text allows an administrator to move a configuration from one machine to another easily, provide the ability to roll back a system configuration to a particular date and time.

**Small, Single-Purpose Programs:** - UNIX provides many utilities.

**Avoid captive user interfaces:-**

**Ability to chain programs together to perform complex tasks:-** A core design feature of UNIX is that output of one program can be the input for another. This gives the user the flexibility to combine many small programs together to perform a larger, more complex task.

## GNU PROJECT/ FSF

GNU project started in 1984

- a) Goal: Create 'free' UNIX clone
- b) By 1990, nearly all required user space application created.

Example:-gcc, emacs, etc.

Free Software Foundation

Non-Profit organization that manages the GNU project.

GPL – GNU (General Public License)

- a) primary license for open source software
- b) encourages free software
- c) All enhancements and changes to GPL software must also be GPL
- d) Often called ‘copy left’ (All rights reversed)

## Linux Origins

**LINUS TORVALDS** - Finnish college student in 1991

Linux was developed in 1991 by Linus Torvalds and a band of programmers who voluntarily developed the core program of the system, the kernel. That program was originally compatible for another operating system called Minix, but later development made it usable with GNU software.

When Linux Kernel combined with GNU applications, complete free UNIX like OS was developed.

### WHY LINUX?

Fresh implementation of UNIX APIs

Open source development model

Supports wide variety of hardware

Supports many networking protocols and Configurations

Fully supported

Linux is a UNIX like OS: Linux is a similar to UNIX as the various UNIX versions are to each other.

Multi-User and Multi-tasking: Linux is a multi-user and multi-tasking operating system. That means that more than one person can be logged on to the same Linux computer at the same time. The same user could even be logged into their account from two or more terminals at the same time; Linux is also Multi-Tasking. A user can have more than one program executing at the same time.

Wide hardware support: Red Hat Linux support most pieces modern x86 compatible PC hardware.

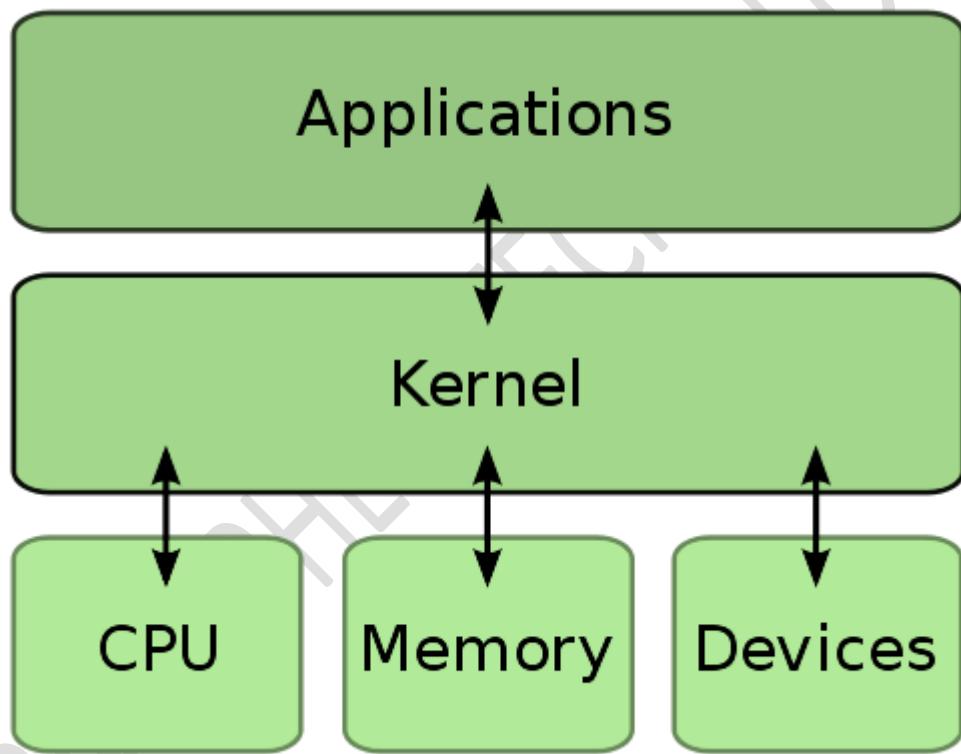
Fully Supported: Red Hat Linux is a fully supported distribution Red Hat Inc. provides many support programs for the smallest to the largest companies.

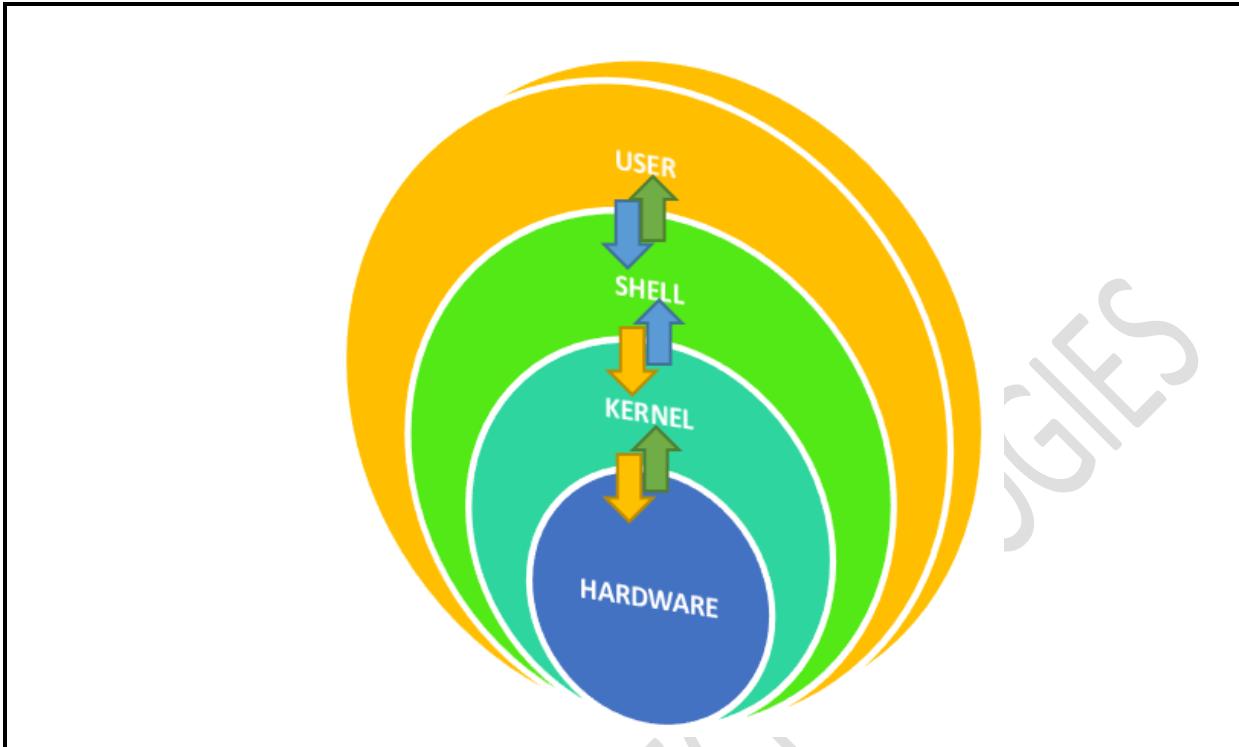
## ARCHITECTURE OF UNIX

A kernel is the central part of an operating system. It manages the tasks of the computer and the hardware - most notably memory and CPU time.

A computer user never interacts directly with the kernel. It runs behind the scenes and cannot be seen, except for the text logs that it prints.

The architecture of UNIX can be divided into three levels of functionality. The lowest level is the *kernel*, which schedules tasks, manages resources, and controls security. The next level is the *shell*, which acts as the user interface, interpreting user commands and starting applications. The highest level is *utilities*, which provides utility functions. In other words it is the USER level, as user is the one who operates those utilities.





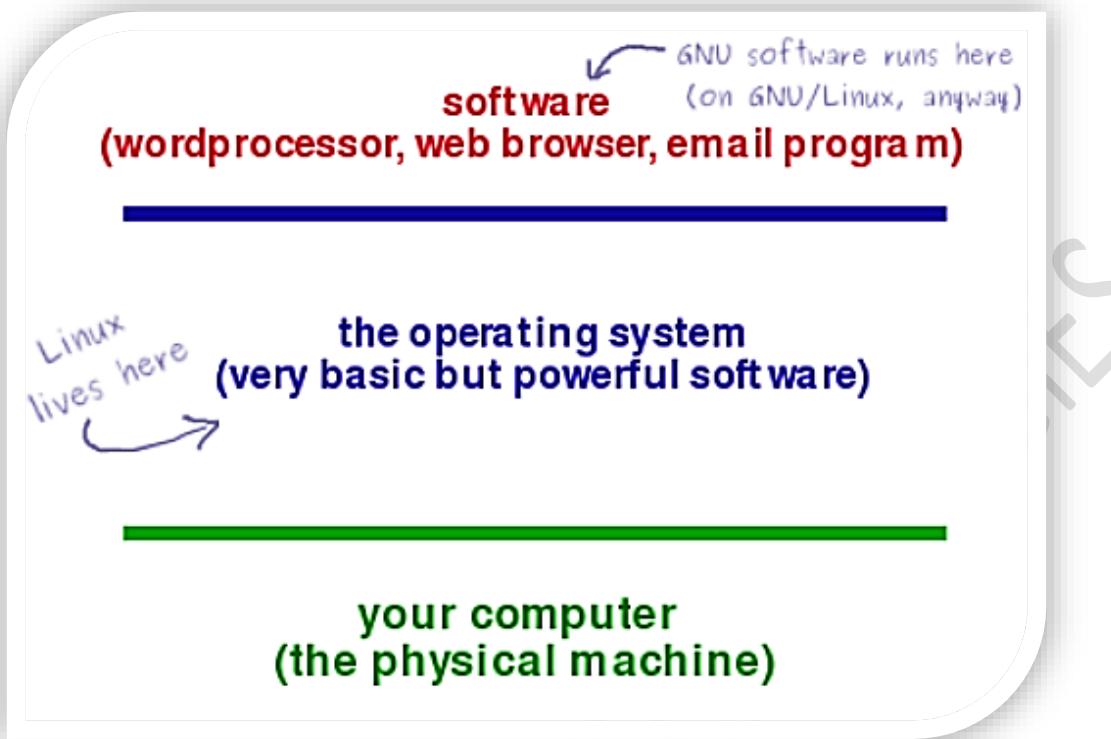
## KERNEL:

GNU is pronounced 'GNU's Not Unix' was a project conceived by Richard Stallman in 1983 in response to the increasing tendency of software companies to copyright their software under terms that prohibited sharing.

GNU's purpose: to develop a wholly free system.

Both the kernel and the software are freely available under licensing that is sometimes called "copyleft" (as opposed to copyright). Where traditional copyright was meant to restrict usage and ownership of a copyrighted item to as few people as possible, inhibiting development and growth, GNU/Linux is different. It is released under terms designed to ensure that as many people as possible are allowed to receive, use, share, and modify the software. This license is called the GPL (GNU Public License).





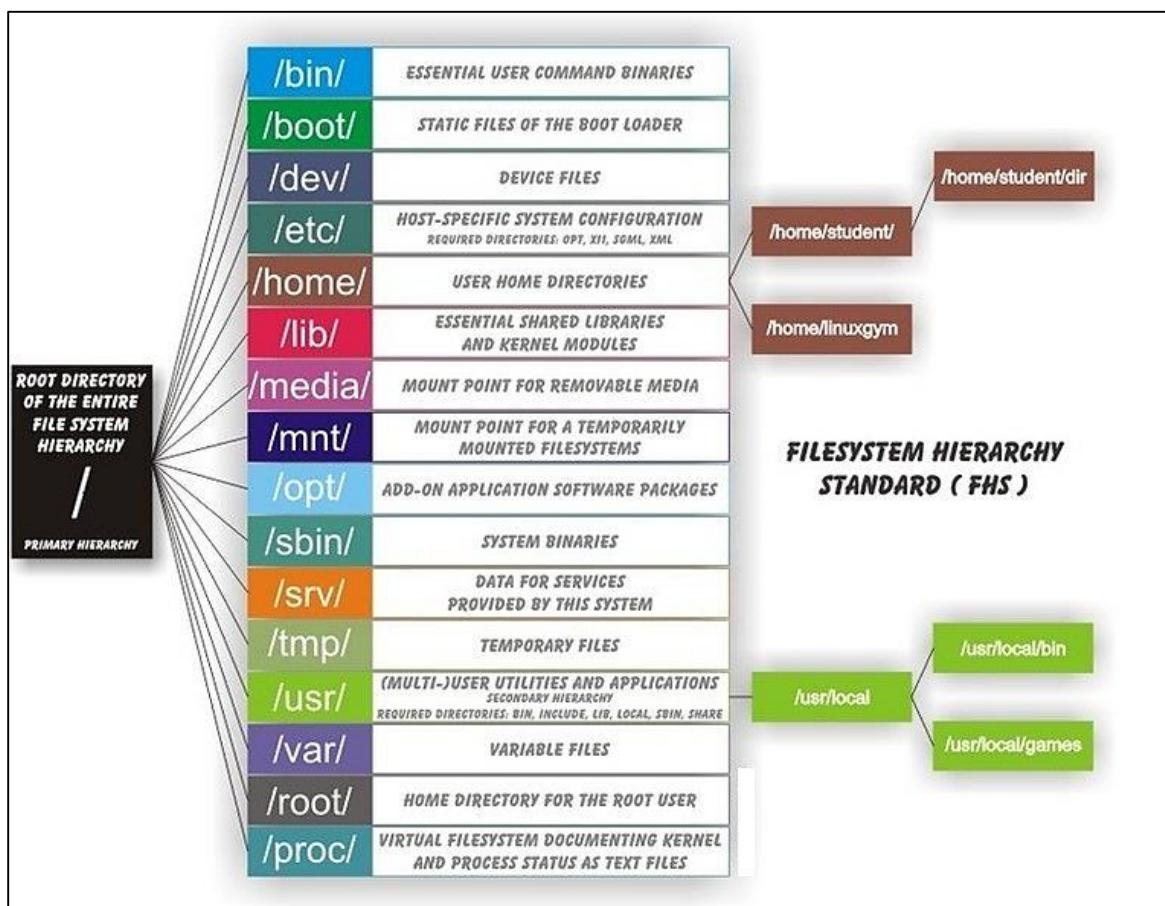
What is a command shell?

A program that interprets commands

Allows a user to execute commands by typing them manually at a terminal, or automatically in programs called shell scripts.

A shell is *not* an operating system. It is a way to interface with the operating system and run commands.

## FILESYSTEM HIERARCHY



Linux uses single rooted, inverted tree like file system hierarchy

/

It is parent directory for all other directories It is called as ROOT directory. It is represented by forward slash (/) C:\ of windows

/root

It is home directory for root user (super user) It provides working environment for root user

/root is similar to c:\documents and settings\administrator

/home

It is home directory for other users. It provide working environment for other users (other than root)

/home is similar to c:\documents and settings\username

/boot

It contains bootable files for Linux, like vmlinuz (kernel).... ntoskrnl Initrd (INITial Ram Disk) and GRUB (GRand Unified Boot loader).... boot.ini, ntldr

## /etc

It contains all configuration files like /etc/passwd - User info, /etc/resolv.conf -Preferred DNS, /etc/dhcpd.conf - DHCP server

/etc is similar to c:\windows\system32\drivers\

## /usr

By default soft wares are installed in /usr directory (UNIX Sharable Resources)

/usr is similar to C:\Program Files

## /opt

It is optional directory for /usr. It contains third party softwares

/opt is similar to c:\Program Files

## /bin

It contains commands used by all users (Binary files)

## /sbin

It contains commands used by only Super User (root) (Super user's binary files)

## /dev

It contains device files, like /dev/had - for hard drives, /dev/cd rom - for cd drives

/dev similar to device manager of Windows

## /proc

It contain process files, the contents are not permanent, they keep changing It is also called as Virtual Directory. Its file contain useful information used by OS like

/proc/meminfo ... information of RAM/SWAP

/proc/cpuinfo ... information of CPU

## /var

It contains variable data like mails, log files

## /mnt

It is default mount point for any partition. It is empty by default

## /media

It contains all of removable media like CD-ROM, pen drive

## /lib

It contains library files which are used by OS. Library files in Linux are SO (shared object) files

/lib is similar to .dll files of windows

## SHELL:

RHEL comes with a shell called as BASH

**BASH = Bourne Again SHell**

Bash is a shell written as a free replacement to the standard Bourne Shell (/bin/sh) originally written by Steve Bourne for UNIX systems.

It has all of the features of the original Bourne Shell, plus additions that make it easier to program with and use from the command line.

Since it is Free Software, it has been adopted as the default shell on most Linux systems.

# BASIC COMMANDS

Creating, Removing, Copying, Moving files & Directories

Creating a file in Linux

Using cat command:

- cat (Concatenate) command is used to create a file and to display and modify the contents of a file.
- To create a file

**# cat > filename (say ktfile)**

Hello World

**Ctrl+d (To save the file)**

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# cat > ktfile
Hello World
```

To display the content of the file

**# cat filename (say ktfile)**

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# cat ktfile
Hello World
[root@ktlinux ~]# █
```

To append the data in the already existing file

**# cat >> <filename>**

**# cat >> ktfile**

**Ctrl+d (to save the changes)**

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# cat >> ktfile
Welcome to Kernel Technologies
[root@ktlinux ~]# █
```

Creating multiple files at same time using touch command

**#touch <filename> <filename> <filename>**

**#touch file1 file2 file3**

Note: to check the files use

**# ls**

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# touch file1 file2 file3
[root@ktlinux ~]# ls
anaconda-ks.cfg  Documents  file1  file3
Desktop          Downloads  file2  install.log
[root@ktlinux ~]#
```

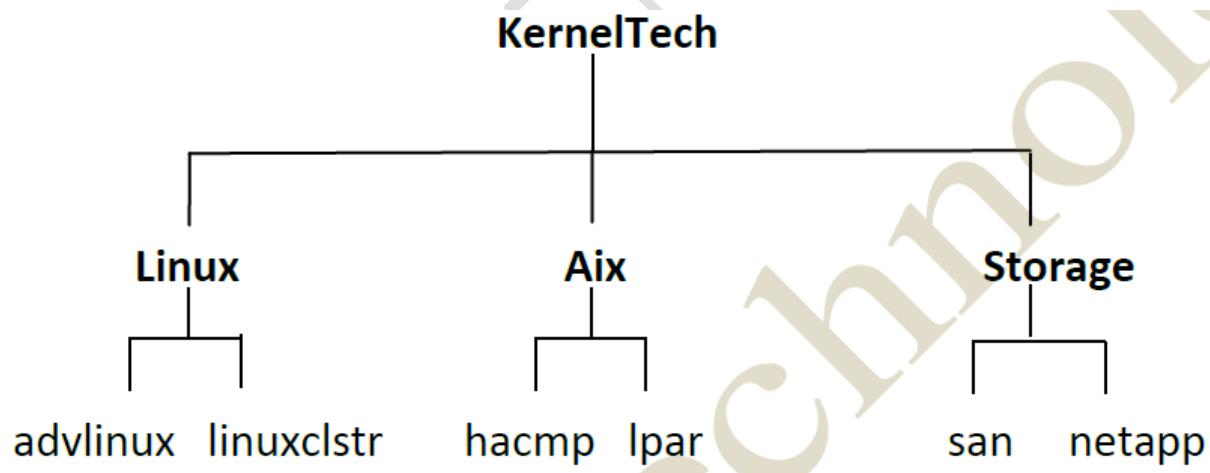
Creating a Directory:

```
#mkdir <dir name>
#mkdir ktdir
```

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# mkdir ktdir
[root@ktlinux ~]# ls
anaconda-ks.cfg  Downloads  file3
Desktop          file1      install.log
Documents        file2      install.log.syslog  ktdir
[root@ktlinux ~]#
```

Making multiple directories inside a directory:

Let us make some directories according to the following architecture in one command.



```
#mkdir -p KernelTech/{Linux/{advlinux,linuxclstr},Aix/{hacmp,lpar},Storage/{san,netapp}}
```

Check it by using tree command or ls -R command

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# mkdir -p KernelTech/{Linux/{advlinux,linuxclstr},Aix/{hacmp,lpars},Storage/{san,netapp}}
[root@ktlinux ~]# tree KernelTech/
KernelTech/
└── Aix
    ├── hacmp
    └── lpar
└── Linux
    ├── advlinux
    └── linuxclstr
└── Storage
    ├── netapp
    └── san

9 directories, 0 files
[root@ktlinux ~]# █
```

Copying files into directory:

**#cp <source filename> <destination directory in which to paste the file>**

```
#cp file1 ktdir
```

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# cp file1 ktdir
[root@ktlinux ~]# cd ktdir
[root@ktlinux ktdir]# ls
file1
[root@ktlinux ktdir]# █
```

Copying directories from one location to other

**# cp -rvfp <dir name> <destination name>**

```
#cp -rvfp ktdir2 ktdir
```

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# cp -rvfp ktdir2 ktdir
`ktdir2' -> `ktdir/ktdir2'
`ktdir2/file2' -> `ktdir/ktdir2/file2'
`ktdir2/file3' -> `ktdir/ktdir2/file3'
`ktdir2/file4' -> `ktdir/ktdir2/file4'
`ktdir2/file1' -> `ktdir/ktdir2/file1'
`ktdir2/file5' -> `ktdir/ktdir2/file5'
[root@ktlinux ~]# cd ktdir
[root@ktlinux ktdir]# ls
file1  file2  ktdir2
[root@ktlinux ktdir]# █
```

Moving files from one location to other (cut and Paste):

```
#mv <filename> <Destination directory>
```

```
#mv file2 ktdir
```

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# mv file2 ktdir
[root@ktlinux ~]# ls
anaconda-ks.cfg  Documents  file1  install.log
Desktop          Downloads   file3  install.log.syslog
[root@ktlinux ~]# cd ktdir
[root@ktlinux ktdir]# ls
file1  file2
[root@ktlinux ktdir]# █
```

Moving a Directory from one location to other:

```
#mv <dir name> <destination dir name>
```

```
#mv ktdir ktdir2
```

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# ls
anaconda-ks.cfg  Documents  file1  install.log      ktdir
Desktop          Downloads   file3  install.log.syslog  ktdir2
[root@ktlinux ~]# mv ktdir ktdir2
[root@ktlinux ~]# ls
anaconda-ks.cfg  Documents  file1  install.log      ktdir2
Desktop          Downloads   file3  install.log.syslog  ktfile
[root@ktlinux ~]# cd ktdir2
[root@ktlinux ktdir2]# ls
file1  file2  file3  file4  file5  ktdir
[root@ktlinux ktdir2]# █
```

### Renaming a File :

**#mv <old name> <new name>**

```
#mv ktfile kernelfile
```

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# ls
anaconda-ks.cfg  Documents  install.log      ktfile  Pictures  Templates
Desktop          Downloads   install.log.syslog  Music    Public    Videos
[root@ktlinux ~]# cat ktfile
Welcome to Kernel Tech
[root@ktlinux ~]# mv ktfile kernelfile
[root@ktlinux ~]# ls
anaconda-ks.cfg  Documents  install.log      kernelfile  Pictures  Templates
Desktop          Downloads   install.log.syslog  Music    Public    Videos
[root@ktlinux ~]# cat kernelfile
Welcome to Kernel Tech
[root@ktlinux ~]#
```

### Renaming a Directory:

The procedure and command for renaming the directory is exactly same as renaming a file.

**#mv <old name> <new name>**

```
#mv ktdir kerneldir
```

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# ls
anaconda-ks.cfg  Documents  install.log      kernelfile
Desktop          Downloads   install.log.syslog  ktdir
[root@ktlinux ~]# mv ktdir kerneldir
[root@ktlinux ~]# ls
anaconda-ks.cfg  Documents  install.log      kerneldir
Desktop          Downloads   install.log.syslog  kernelfile
[root@ktlinux ~]#
```

### Removing a File:

**#rm filename or #rm -f filename (without prompting)**

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# ls  
anaconda-ks.cfg  Documents  install.log      kerneldir  
Desktop          Downloads  install.log.syslog kernelfile  
[root@ktlinux ~]# rm kernelfile  
rm: remove regular file `kernelfile'? y■
```

Without prompting:

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# rm -f kernelfile  
[root@ktlinux ~]# ls  
anaconda-ks.cfg  Documents  install.log      kerneldir  
Desktop          Downloads  install.log.syslog Music  
[root@ktlinux ~]# ■
```

Removing an Empty directory:

**#rmdir dirname**

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# ls  
anaconda-ks.cfg  Documents  install.log      kerneldir  
Desktop          Downloads  install.log.syslog ktdir  
[root@ktlinux ~]# rmdir ktdir  
[root@ktlinux ~]# ls  
anaconda-ks.cfg  Documents  install.log      kerneldir  
Desktop          Downloads  install.log.syslog Music  
[root@ktlinux ~]# ■
```

Removing a directory with files or directories inside:

A dir which is having some contents inside it cannot be removed by rmdir command. There are two ways to delete the directory with contents.

Remove the contents inside the directory and then run rmdir command

**#rm -rf dirname (where r stands for recursive and f stands for forcefully.)**

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# ls  
anaconda-ks.cfg  Documents  install.log      kerneldir  
Desktop          Downloads  install.log.syslog Music  
[root@ktlinux ~]# rmdir kerneldir/  
rmdir: failed to remove `kerneldir/': Directory not empty  
[root@ktlinux ~]# rm -rf kerneldir/  
[root@ktlinux ~]# ls  
anaconda-ks.cfg  Documents  install.log      Music  
Desktop          Downloads  install.log.syslog Pictures
```

## VIM EDITOR

VI Visual display editor

VIM Visual display editor improved

This is command mode editor for files. Other editors in Linux are emacs, gedit.

vi editor is most popular

It has 3 modes:

- 1 Command Mode
- 2 Insert mode (edit mode)
- 3 extended command mode

Note: When you open the vim editor, it will be in the command mode by default.

In the command mode the cursor's can be used as

h/l/k/j to move cursor left/right/up/down

**Insert Mode:**

i	To begin insert mode at the cursor position
I	To insert at the beginning of line
a	To append to the next word's letter
A	To Append at the end of the line
o	To insert a new line below the cursor position
O	To insert a new line above the cursor position

### Command Mode:

gg	To go to the beginning of the page
G	To go to end of the page
w	To move the cursor forward, word by word
b	To move the cursor backward, word by word
nw	To move the cursor forward to n words (5W)
nb	To move the cursor backward to n words (5B)
u	To undo last change (word)
U	To undo the previous changes (entire line)
Ctrl+R	To redo the changes
yy	To copy a line
nyy	To copy n lines (5yy or 4yy)
p	To paste line below the cursor position
P	To paste line above the cursor position
dw	To delete the word letter by letter (like Backspace)
x	To delete the world letter by letter (like DEL Key)
dd	To delete entire line
ndd	To delete n no. of lines from cursor position(5dd)
/	To search a word in the file

### Extended Mode: (Colon Mode)

Extended Mode is used for save and quit or save without quit using “Esc” Key with “:”

Esc+:w	To Save the changes
Esc+:q	To quit (Without saving)
Esc+:wq	To save and quit
Esc+:w!	To save forcefully

<b>Esc+wq!</b>	<b>To save and quit forcefully</b>
<b>Esc+:x</b>	<b>To save and quit</b>
<b>Esc+:X</b>	<b>To give password to the file and remove password</b>
<b>Esc+:20(n)</b>	<b>To go to line no 20 or n</b>
<b>Esc+: se nu</b>	<b>To set the line numbers to the file</b>
<b>Esc+:se nonu</b>	<b>To Remove the set line numbers</b>

To open multiple files in vim editor

**#vim -o file1 file2**

To switch between files use Ctrl +w

Listing files and directories:

<b>#ls</b>	list the file names
<b>#ls -l</b>	long listing of the file
<b>#ls -l filename</b>	to see the permissions of a particular file
<b>#ls -al</b>	shows the files in ascending order of modification.
<b>#ls p*</b>	All the files start with p.
<b>#ls ?ample</b>	Files with any first character and has ample
<b>#ls -ld l*</b>	Directory listing only
<b>#ls -ld directory name</b>	to see the permissions of a particular directory
<b>#ls [ae]*</b>	First character of the filename must be a or e.
<b># ls [!ae]*</b>	! Symbol complements the condition that follows. The characters must not be a or e.
<b>#ls [a-m][c-z][4-9]</b>	list all the files in specific range

Types of Files:

<b>Symbol</b>	<b>Type of File</b>
-	Normal file
d	Directory
l	Link file (shortcut)
b	Block file (Harddisk, Floppy disk)

c	Character file (Keyboard, Mouse)
---	----------------------------------

## SYMBOLIC LINK:

There are two types of Links:-

S.No.	Soft Link	Hard link
1	Size of link file is equal to no. of characters in the name of original file	Size of both file is same
2	Can be created across the Partition	Can't be created across the partition
3	Inode no. of source and link file is different	Inode no. of both file is same
4	if original file is deleted, link is broken and data is lost	If original file is deleted then also link will contain data
5	SHORTCUT FILE	BACKUP FILE

### Creating a soft link:

# ln -s <source file> <destination>

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# ln -s ktfile ktfile.slink
[root@ktlinux ~]# ls -li ktfile ktfile.slink
5934 -rwxrwxrwx. 2 root root 0 Sep 17 09:21 ktfile
8394 [rwxrwxrwx. 1 root root 6 Sep 19 07:21 ktfile.slink -> ktfile
[root@ktlinux ~]#
```

### Creating a Hard link:

#ln <source file> <Destination>

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# ln ktfile ktfile.hlink
[root@ktlinux ~]# ls -li ktfile ktfile.hlink
5934 -rwxrwxrwx. 2 root root 0 Sep 17 09:21 ktfile
5934 -rwxrwxrwx. 2 root root 0 Sep 17 09:21 ktfile.hlink
[root@ktlinux ~]#
```

## REGULAR EXPRESSIONS, PIPELINES & I/O REDIRECTIONS

### Grep:

Grep stands for **Global Regular Expression Print**. It is used to pick out the required expression from the file and print the output. If grep is combined with another command it can be used to pick out the selected word, phrase from the output of first command and print it.

Examples of Grep:

Let us pick the information about **root** from the file **/etc/passwd** (**/etc/passwd** contains information about all the users present in the system)

```
#grep root /etc/passwd
```

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# grep root /etc/passwd
root:x:0:0:root:/root:/bin/bash
operator:x:11:0:operator:/root:/sbin/nologin
[root@ktlinux ~]#
```

To avoid case sensitivity of the word (i.e. the word may be uppercase or lowercase) use **-i**  
**#grep -i kernel ktfile** (lets grep the word **kernel** whether upper or lower case in the file **ktfile**)

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# grep -i kernel ktfile
Welcome to Kernel Tech
Welcome to kernel Tech
Welcome to KERNEL TECH
[root@ktlinux ~]#
```

To display a word and 2 lines after the word:

```
#grep -nA2 wheel /etc/group
```

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# grep -nA2 wheel /etc/group
11[wheel]:x:10:root
12-mail:x:12:mail,postfix
13-uucp:x:14:uucp
[root@ktlinux ~]#
```

To display a word and 2 lines after the word:

```
#grep -nB2 wheel /etc/group
```

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# grep -nB2 wheel /etc/group
9-mem:x:8:
10-kmem:x:9:
11:wheel:x:10:root
```

To display the things except the given word:

```
#grep -v kernel ktfile
```

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# cat ktfile
Welcome to Kernel Tech
Linux is Freedom
[root@ktlinux ~]# grep -v Kernel ktfile
Linux is Freedom
[root@ktlinux ~]# █
```

To display the searched word in color

```
#grep --color root /etc/passwd
```

Combining grep with other commands

```
# cat ktfile | grep -i kernel (pipe | is used to combine to commands)
#ls -l |grep -i ktfile
# ifconfig |grep -i eth0
```

Like this we can combine grep with many commands

## FILTER COMMANDS:

- Filter commands are used to filter the output so that the required things can easily be picked up. The commands which are used to filter the output are
  - **#less**
  - **#more**
  - **#head**
  - **#tail**
  - **#sort**
  - **#cut**
  - **#sed**

### **less:-**

The **less** command is used to see the output line wise or page wise.

**Ex: less /etc/passwd**

```
root:x:0:0:root:/bin/bash
bin:x:1:1:bin:/bin:/sbin/nologin
daemon:x:2:2:daemon:/sbin:/sbin/nologin
adm:x:3:4:adm:/var/adm:/sbin/nologin
lp:x:4:7:lp:/var/spool/lpd:/sbin/nologin
sync:x:5:0:sync:/sbin:/bin/sync
shutdown:x:6:0:shutdown:/sbin:/sbin/shutdown
halt:x:7:0:halt:/sbin:/sbin/halt
mail:x:8:12:mail:/var/spool/mail:/sbin/nologin
uucp:x:10:14:uucp:/var/spool/uucp:/sbin/nologin
operator:x:11:0:operator:/root:/sbin/nologin
games:x:12:100:games:/usr/games:/sbin/nologin
gopher:x:13:30:gopher:/var/gopher:/sbin/nologin
ftp:x:14:50:FTP User:/var/ftp:/sbin/nologin
```

**Note:** -press **Enter** key to scroll down line by line (or)

Use **d** to go to next page

Use **b** to go to previous page

Use **/** to search for a word in the file

Use **v** to go vi mode where you can edit the file and once you save it you will back to less command

### **more:-**

**more** is exactly same like **less**

**Ex: #more /etc/passwd**

**Note:** -press **Enter** key to scroll down line by line (or)

Use **d** to go to next page

Use **/** to search for a word in the file

Use **v** to go vi mode where you can edit the file and once you save it you will back to more command

### **head:**

It is used to display the top **10 lines** of the file.

**Ex:# head /etc/passwd**

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# head /etc/passwd
root:x:0:0:root:/root:/bin/bash
bin:x:1:1:bin:/bin:/sbin/nologin
daemon:x:2:2:daemon:/sbin:/sbin/nologin
adm:x:3:4:adm:/var/adm:/sbin/nologin
lp:x:4:7:lp:/var/spool/lpd:/sbin/nologin
sync:x:5:0:sync:/sbin:/bin sync
shutdown:x:6:0:shutdown:/sbin:/sbin/shutdown
halt:x:7:0:halt:/sbin:/sbin/halt
mail:x:8:12:mail:/var/spool/mail:/sbin/nologin
uucp:x:10:14:uucp:/var/spool/uucp:/sbin/nologin
```

To display the custom lines

```
#head -n /etc/passwd (where n can be any number)
```

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# head -5 /etc/passwd
root:x:0:0:root:/root:/bin/bash
bin:x:1:1:bin:/bin:/sbin/nologin
daemon:x:2:2:daemon:/sbin:/sbin/nologin
adm:x:3:4:adm:/var/adm:/sbin/nologin
lp:x:4:7:lp:/var/spool/lpd:/sbin/nologin
```

**tail:**

It is used to display the **last 10** lines of the file

```
#tail /etc/passwd
```

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# tail /etc/passwd
apache:x:48:48:Apache:/var/www:/sbin/nologin
nslcd:x:65:55:LDAP Client User:::/sbin/nologin
avahi:x:70:70:Avahi mDNS/DNS-SD Stack:/var/run/avahi-daemon:/sbin/nologin
ntp:x:38:38::/etc/ntp:/sbin/nologin
pulse:x:496:494:PulseAudio System Daemon:/var/run/pulse:/sbin/nologin
gdm:x:42:42::/var/lib/gdm:/sbin/nologin
sshd:x:74:74:Privilege-separated SSH:/var/empty/sshd:/sbin/nologin
tcpdump:x:72:72:::/sbin/nologin
visitor:x:500:500:visitor:/home/visitor:/bin/bash
ktuser:x:501:501::/home/ktuser:/bin/bash
```

To display the custom lines

```
#tail -n /etc/passwd (where n can be any number)
```

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# tail -5 /etc/passwd
ktuser:x:500:500:ktuser:/home/ktuser:/bin/bash
amit:x:501:501::/home/amit:/bin/bash
vivek:x:502:502::/home/vivek:/bin/bash
musab:x:503:503::/home/musab:/bin/bash
rahul:x:504:504::/home/rahul:/bin/bash
[root@ktlinux ~]# █
```

### Sort:

It is used to sort the output in numeric or alphabetic order

**#sort filename**

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# cat ktfile
Welcome to Kernel Tech
Welcome to Kernel Tech
Welcome to Kernel Tech
Welcome to Kernel Tech
Linux is Freedom
Linux is Freedom
Linux is Freedom
[root@ktlinux ~]# sort ktfile
Linux is Freedom
Linux is Freedom
Linux is Freedom
Linux is Freedom
Welcome to Kernel Tech
Welcome to Kernel Tech
Welcome to Kernel Tech
[root@ktlinux ~]# █
```

To sort the file according to numbers

**#sort -d ktfile or #sort -h ktfile**

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# cat ktfile
4.Welcome to Kernel Tech
2.Welcome to Kernel Tech
3.Welcome to Kernel Tech
1.Linux is Freedom
6.Linux is Freedom
5.Linux is Freedom
[root@ktlinux ~]# sort -h ktfile
1.Linux is Freedom
2.Welcome to Kernel Tech
3.Welcome to Kernel Tech
4.Welcome to Kernel Tech
5.Linux is Freedom
6.Linux is Freedom
```

To remove the duplicate entries from the output

**#sort -u ktfile**

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# cat ktfile
Welcome to Kernel Tech
Welcome to Kernel Tech
Welcome to Kernel Tech
Linux is Freedom
Linux is Freedom
Linux is Freedom
[root@ktlinux ~]# sort -u ktfile
Linux is Freedom
Welcome to Kernel Tech
[root@ktlinux ~]#
```

**cut command:**

The cut command is used to pick the given expression (in columns) and display the output.

**# cut -d -f filename (where d stands for delimiter ex. :, " " etc and f stands for field)**

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# cut -d: -f1 /etc/passwd
root
bin
daemon
adm
lp
sync
shutdown
halt
mail
uucp
```

To delimit spaces and print the field

```
#cut -d " " -f1 filename
```

To delimit commas and print the field

```
#cut -d, -f1 filename
```

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# cat hello
hello,how,are,you
[root@ktlinux ~]# cut -d, -f1 hello
hello
```

#### **sed command:**

**sed** stands for **stream editor**, which is used to search a word in the file and replace it with the word required to be in the output

**Note:** it will only modify the output, but there will be no change in the original file.

```
#sed 's/searchfor/replacewith/g' filename
```

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# cat ktfile
Welcome to Kernel Tech
[root@ktlinux ~]# sed 's/Tech/Technologies/g' ktfile
Welcome to Kernel Technologies
[root@ktlinux ~]# cat ktfile
Welcome to Kernel Tech
```

## I/O REDIRECTION:

Redirection is a process where we can copy the output of any command(s), file(s) into a new file. There are two ways of redirecting the output into a file.

Using **>** or **>> filename** after the command, and

Using **tee** command

Let's see the **>** and **>>** option first

Syn: command **>** new file

Note: if the given name of the file is not available a new file will be created automatically. If the file already exists then it will overwrite contents of that file.

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# cat ktfile
Welcome to Kernel Tech
[root@ktlinux ~]# sed 's/Tech/Technologies/g' ktfile > ktf1
[root@ktlinux ~]# cat ktf1
Welcome to Kernel Technologies
```

Appending another output in same the same file

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# cat ktfile2
Ameerpet - Hyderabad
[root@ktlinux ~]# cat ktfile2 >> ktf1
[root@ktlinux ~]# cat ktf1
Welcome to Kernel Technologies
Ameerpet - Hyderabad
```

Likewise there are many options where we can use redirections

Ex:

Copying contents of two files in a new file

```
#cat file1 file2 > file3
```

Using tee command:

The above options of redirections will not display any output, but directly save the output in a file. Using tee command will not only redirect the output to new file but it will also display the output.

**Syn: cat <filename> | tee <new file name>**

Note: if the given name of the file (newfile) is not available a new file will be created automatically. If the file already exists then it will overwrite contents of the file.

**#cat ktfile |tee ktf1**

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# cat ktfile |tee ktf1
Welcome to Kernel Tech
[root@ktlinux ~]# cat ktf1
Welcome to Kernel Tech
```

Appending data in the same file using tee command

**Syn: cat filename |tee -a filename2**

**#cat ktfile1 | tee -a ktf1**

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# cat ktfile |tee ktf1
Welcome to Kernel Tech
[root@ktlinux ~]# cat ktfile2 |tee -a ktf1
Ameerpet - Hyderabad
[root@ktlinux ~]# cat ktf1
Welcome to Kernel Tech
Ameerpet - Hyderabad
```

Find command:

**find** command is used to find the files or directory's path, it is exactly like the find option in windows where you can search for a file.

**Syntax: find / (under root) –option filename**

Options that can be used with find command:

Option	Usage
-name	For searching a file with its name
-inum	For searching a file with particular inode number
-type	For searching a particular type of file
-user	For files whose owner is a particular user
-group	For files belonging to particular group

Finding a File with name:

**#find / -name Kernel Tech**

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# find / -name KernelTech
find: File system loop detected; `/var/named/
as `/var/named'.
[root/KernelTech]
```

Finding a file with its inode number

**#find / -inum 5934**

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# find / -inum 5934
/sys/devices/virtual/block/loop3/dev
find: File system loop detected; `/var/
as `/var/named'.
find: `/proc/9206/task/9206/fd/5': No s
find: `/proc/9206/task/9206/fdinfo/5':
find: `/proc/9206/fd/5': No such file o
find: `/proc/9206/fdinfo/5': No such fi
/root/ktfile.hlink
[root/ktfile
[root@ktlinux ~]#
```

Finding the files, whose owner is a user called "ktuser"

**#find / -user ktuser**

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# find / -user ktuser
find: File system loop detected; `/var
as `/var/named'.
/var/spool/mail/ktuser
/home/ktuser
/home/ktuser/.mozilla
/home/ktuser/.mozilla/plugins
/home/ktuser/.mozilla/extensions
/home/ktuser/kernel2
/home/ktuser/.bashrc
/home/ktuser/.gnome2
/home/ktuser/kernel1
```

Finding the files whose group is “ktgroup”

**#find / -group ktgroup**

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# find / -group ktgroup
find: File system loop detected; `/var/named/chroot
as `/var/named'.
/home/ktuser/kernel2
/home/ktuser/kernel1
/home/ktuser/kernel4
/home/ktuser/kernel5
/home/ktuser/kernel3
```

## FILE PERMISSIONS:

Permissions are applied on three levels:-

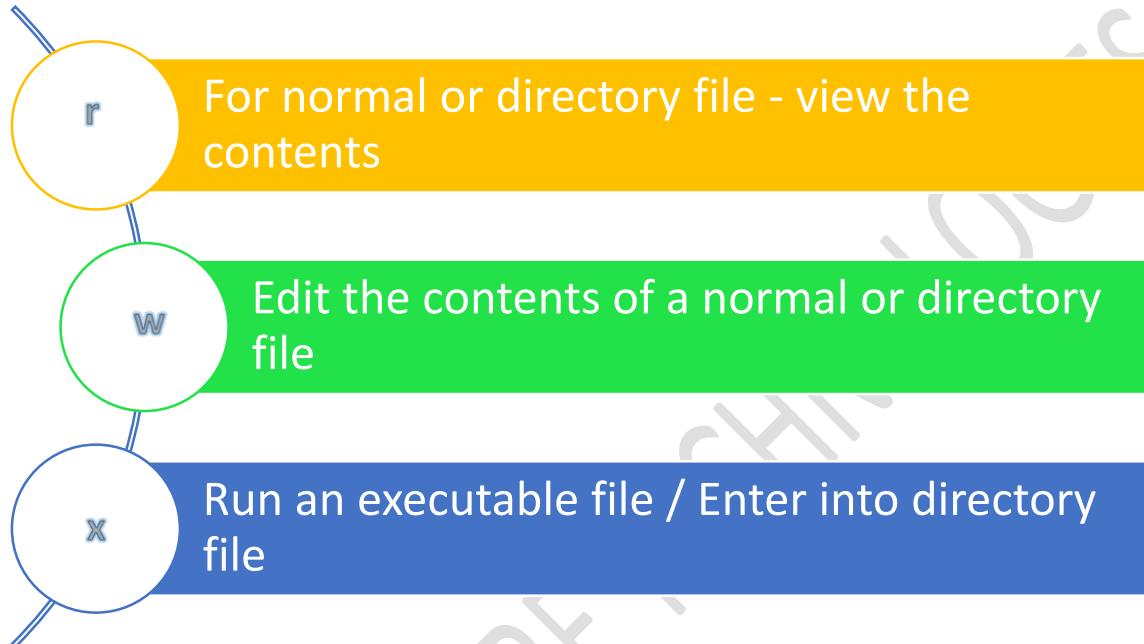
- Owner or User level
- Group level
- Others level

Access modes are of three types:-

- r read only
- w write/edit/delete/append
- x execute/run a command

Access modes are different on file and directory:

PERMISSIONS	FILES	DIRECTORY
r	Open the file	'ls' the contents of dir
w	Write, edit, append, delete file	Add/Del/Rename contents of dir
x	To run a command/shell script	To enter into dir using 'cd'



```
[root@ktlinux ~]# ls -l ktfile
-rw-r--r--. 1 root root 0 Sep 17 09:21 ktfile
[root@ktlinux ~]# ls -ld ktdir/
drwxr-xr-x. 2 root root 4096 Sep 17 09:21 ktdir/
```

Filetype, permission, links, owner, group name of owner, size in bytes, date of modification, file name

Permission can be set on any file/dir by two methods:-

1 Symbolic method (ugo)

2 Absolute methods (numbers)

### 1. SYMBOLIC METHOD (UGO):

Symbolic mode: General form of symbolic mode is:

```
# chmod [who] [+/-=] [permissions] file
```

who → To whom the permissions to be assigned

User/owner (u); group (g); others (o)

Example: -

Assigning different permissions to the file (user=rwx, group=rw and others=r)

**#chmod u=rwx,g=rw,o=r ktfile (where ktfile is the name of the file)**

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# chmod u=rwx,g=rw,o=r ktfile
[root@ktlinux ~]# ls -l ktfile
-rwxrw-r--. 1 root root 0 Sep 17 09:21 ktfile
[root@ktlinux ~]# █
```

Assigning full permission to the file i.e. rwx to all

**#chmod ugo=rwx <file name>**

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# ls -l ktfile
-rwxrw-r--. 1 root root 0 Sep 17 09:21 ktfile
[root@ktlinux ~]# chmod ugo=rwx ktfile
[root@ktlinux ~]# ls -l ktfile
-rwxrwxrwx. 1 root_root 0 Sep 17 09:21 ktfile
```

Likewise you can add or remove permissions from any file for anyone (user group or other)

- #chmod u+x ktfile (Adding execute permission to user only)
- #chmod go-wx ktfile (Removing write and execute permissions from group and other)
- #chmod go+wx ktfile (Adding write and execute permissions from group and other)
- #chmod go=r ktfile (Giving only read permission to group and other)

## 2 ABSOLUTE METHOD (NUMBERS)

In Absolute method we use numbers instead of using symbols i.e.

- Read = 4
- Write = 2
- Execute = 1

Assigning different permissions to the file (user=rwx, group=rw and others=r)

#chmod 764 ktfile (where 7 means rwx i.e. 4+2+1, rw=6 i.e. 4+2 and 1 indicates x)

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# ls -l ktfile
-rwxrwxrwx. 1 root root 0 Sep 17 09:21 ktfile
[root@ktlinux ~]# chmod 764 ktfile
[root@ktlinux ~]# ls -l ktfile
-rwxrw-r--. 1 root root 0 Sep 17 09:21 ktfile
```

Assigning full permission to the file i.e. rwx to all

**#chmod 777 ktfile**

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# ls -l ktfile
-rwxrw-r--. 1 root root 0 Sep 17 09:21 ktfile
[root@ktlinux ~]# chmod 777 ktfile
[root@ktlinux ~]# ls -l ktfile
-rwxrwxrwx. 1 root root 0 Sep 17 09:21 ktfile
```

Likewise you can give different permissions according to your requirement

Removing all permissions from others

**#chmod 770 ktfile (where 0 indicates no permissions)**

Note: All the above permissions and procedure is same for files and directories.

## UMASK:

When we create any file using touch, cat or vi commands they get created with default file permissions as stored in umask (User file creation mask).umask is a 4 digit octal number which tells Unix which of the three permissions are to be denied rather than granted. Umask will decide that what should be the default permissions for a file and directory when it is created.

The default umask value is 0022

**#umask**

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# umask
0022
[root@ktlinux ~]# █
```

Calculation of default permissions for file and directory, basing upon the umask value

Note: For a file by default it cannot have the execute permission, so the maximum full permission for a file at the time of creation can be 666 (i.e. 777 -111 = 666), whereas a directory can have full permissions i.e. 777

The full permission for the file	666
Minus the umask value	- <u>022</u>
The default permission for file is	<u>644</u> (rw-, r--, r--)

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# umask  
0022  
[root@ktlinux ~]# touch ktfile2  
[root@ktlinux ~]# ls -l ktfile2  
-rw-r--r--. 1 root root 0 Sep 19 04:19 ktfile2  
[root@ktlinux ~]# █
```

The full permission for the directory	777
Minus the umask value	- <u>022</u>
The default permission for file is	<u>755</u> (rwx, r-x, r-x)

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# umask  
0022  
[root@ktlinux ~]# mkdir ktdir2  
[root@ktlinux ~]# ls -ld ktdir2  
drwxr-xr-x. 2 root root 4096 Sep 19 04:24 ktdir2  
[root@ktlinux ~]# █
```

#### Modifying the umask value:

#umask 002

The Modified default Permission for a file will be 666-002=664 i.e. rw,rw,r, and for the directory it will be 777-002=775 i.e. rwx,rwx,r-x.

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# umask  
0022  
[root@ktlinux ~]# umask 002  
[root@ktlinux ~]# umask  
0002  
[root@ktlinux ~]# █
```

Note: Create a file and a directory and check for the default permissions.

***These were the few things amongst the basics; keep working to furnish your basics. After All, "if the foundation is good then only the building can stand still"***

# RHEL 6 BASIC GRAPHICAL INSTALLATION

Minimum and Recommended Requirements to install RHEL 6 are:

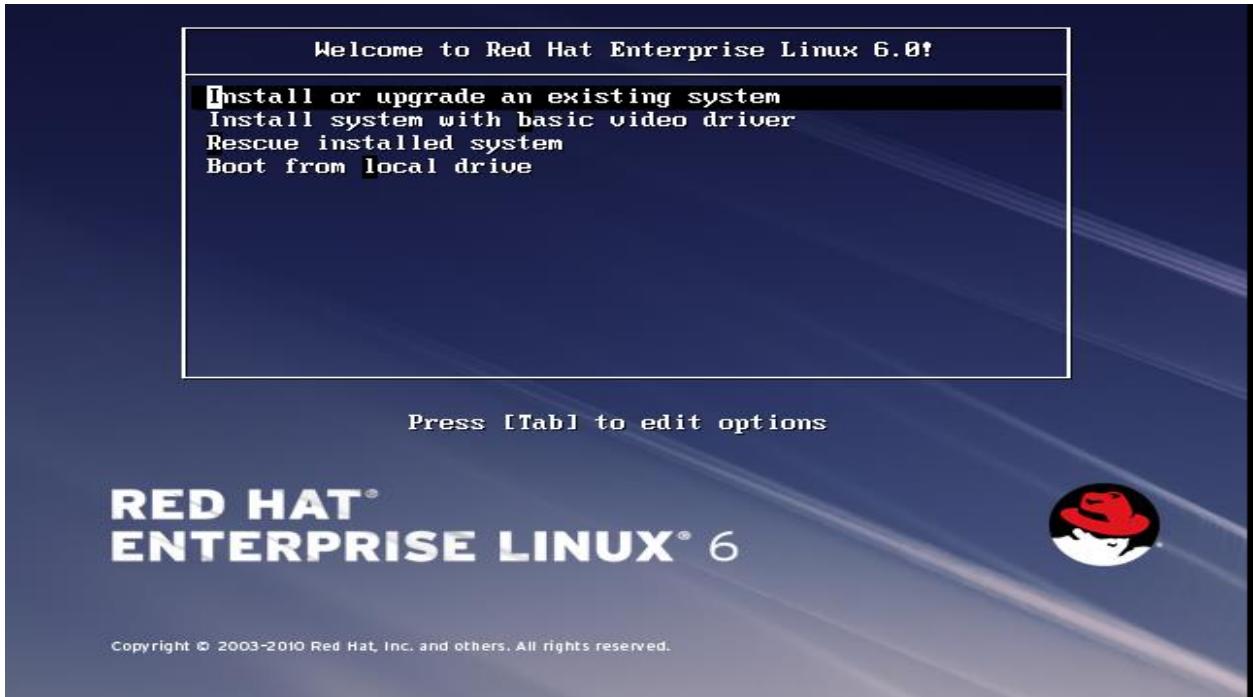
Hardware	Recommended Requirement for RHEL6-32BIT	Minimum Requirement for RHEL6-32 BIT	Recommended Requirement for RHEL6-64BIT	Minimum Requirement for RHEL6-64BIT
PROCESSOR	AMD/INTEL DUAL CORE	AMD/INTEL P IV	AMD/INTEL CORE 2 DUO	AMD/INTEL DUAL CORE
MOTHER BOARD	NORMAL	NORMAL	VT ENABLED	VT ENABLED
RAM	1 GB	384-512 MB	2 GB	768-1GB
HARD DISK	20 GB	15 GB	40 GB	20 GB

Minimum Partition creation and sizes for basic installation

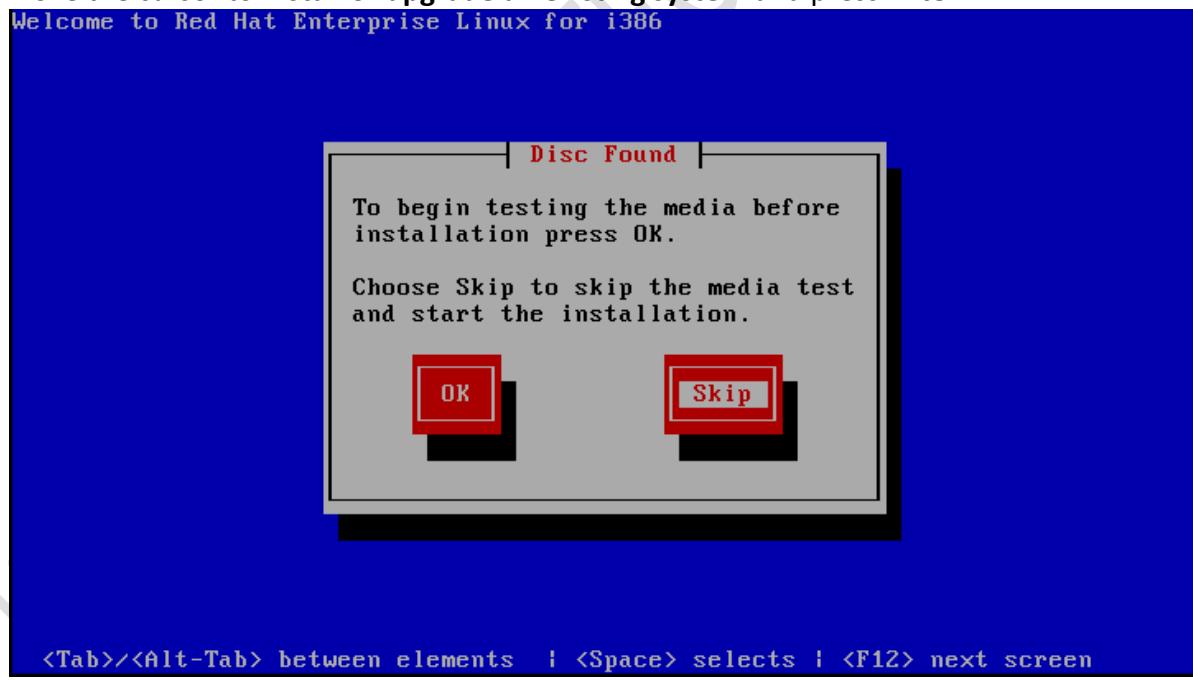
Partition Name	Size For 32 Bit	Size For 64 Bit
/ (root)	8 to 10 GB	15 to 20 GB
/boot	200 MB	200 MB
SWAP	Twice of RAM	Twice of RAM

## Installing RHEL6 with above specification

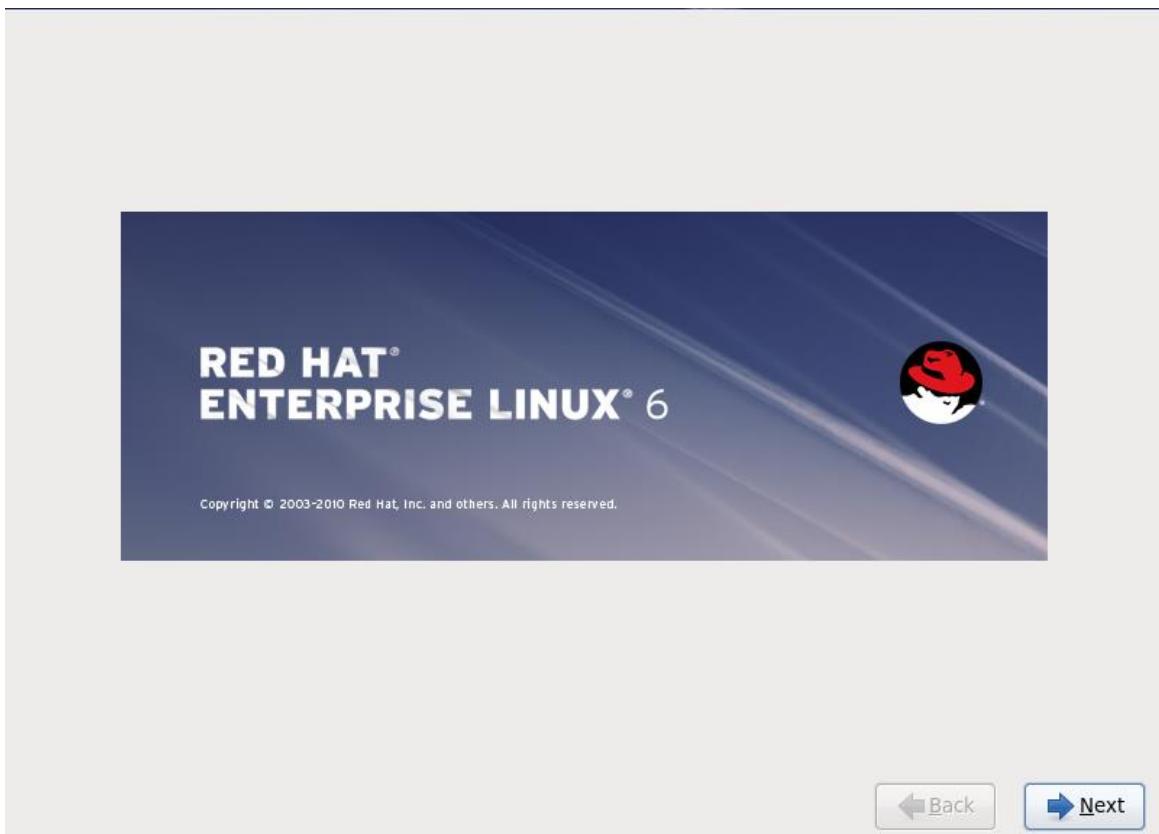
- Enter into BIOS setting and make CD/DVD Drive as first boot device
- Make sure that VT (Virtual Technology) is enabled for RHEL6-64 bit systems
- Insert the RHEL 6 CD/DVD into CD/DVD drive and boot the system
- If booted from CD/DVD Rom the following screen will be displayed



- Move the cursor to **Install or upgrade an existing system** and press Enter



- To test the media select **OK**, to skip the testing move cursor to **Skip** and press enter



- Click on **Next** button to move forward

A screenshot of the language selection screen in the Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6 installer. It shows a scrollable list of languages. The "English (English)" option is highlighted with a blue bar. On the left of the list is a small flag icon. At the bottom right are "Back" and "Next" buttons.

- Select your desired language, usually **English**. Click **Next** to continue

Select the appropriate keyboard for the system.

- Romanian
- Russian
- Serbian
- Serbian (latin)
- Slovak (qwerty)
- Slovenian
- Spanish
- Swedish
- Swiss French
- Swiss French (latin1)
- Swiss German
- Swiss German (latin1)
- Turkish
- U.S. English**
- U.S. International
- Ukrainian
- United Kingdom

[!\[\]\(51946e59d6a9059bc5fa299c0fa448cf\_img.jpg\) Back](#) [!\[\]\(33aa04743e0e44c15ee50dcc88b2993d\_img.jpg\) Next](#)

Select the keyboard type as required usually **U.S English**, click **Next** to continue

What type of devices will your installation involve?

**Basic Storage Devices**

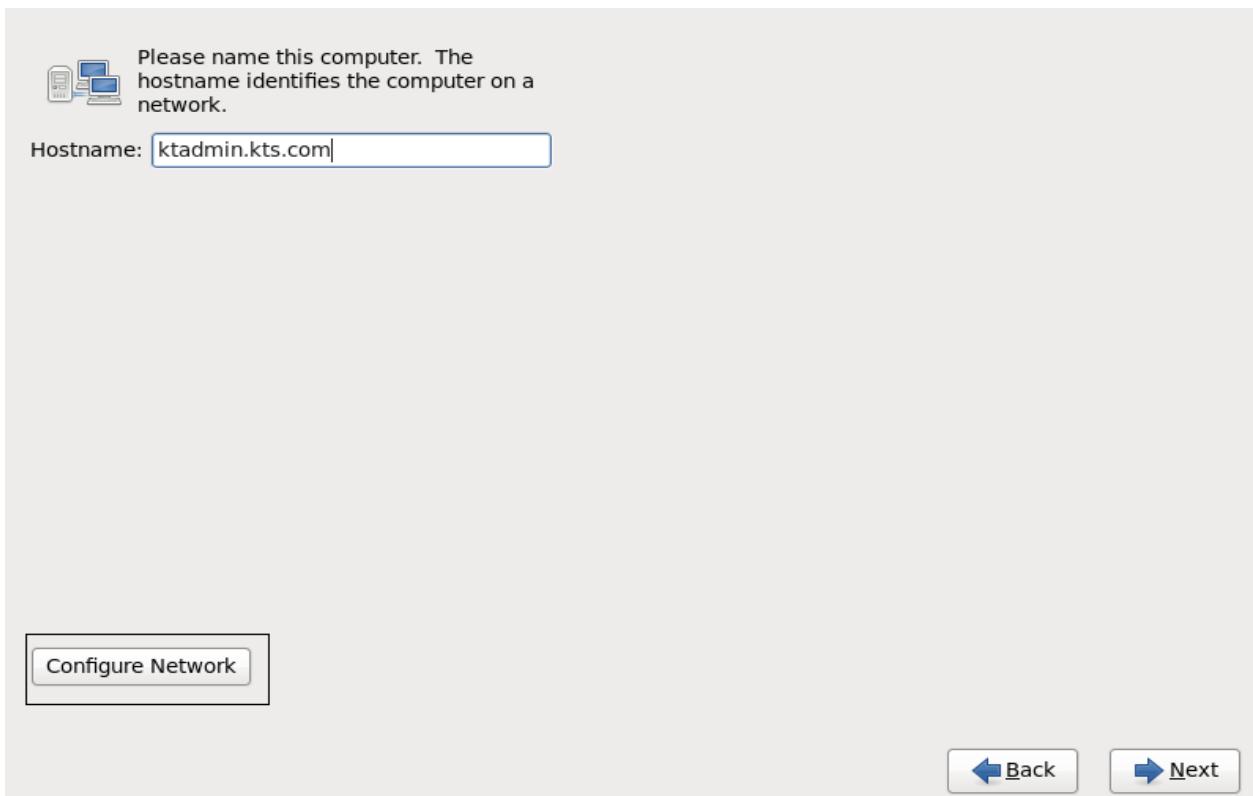
- Installs or upgrades to typical types of storage devices. If you're not sure which option is right for you, this is probably it.

**Specialized Storage Devices**

- Installs or upgrades to enterprise devices such as Storage Area Networks (SANs). This option will allow you to add FCoE / iSCSI / zFCP disks and to filter out devices the installer should ignore.

[!\[\]\(fa46275bbfd247d70efa9c8b079ba519\_img.jpg\) Back](#) [!\[\]\(d9f74839af8670acff2edeb4be76b599\_img.jpg\) Next](#)

Select the type of storage for the Computer. Click **Next** to continue



Assign a hostname to the system, if wish to give ip address click on **Configure Network**, else Click **Next** to continue

Please select the nearest city in your time zone:



Selected city: Kolkata, Asia

Asia/Kolkata

System clock uses UTC

[Back](#) [Next](#)

Select the nearest city in your Time Zone and Click on **Next** to continue

The root account is used for administering the system. Enter a password for the root user.



Root Password: .....  
Confirm: .....

[Back](#) [Next](#)

Assign some password for **root**, then click on **Next** to continue

Which type of installation would you like?

**Use All Space**



Removes all partitions on the selected device(s). This includes partitions created by other operating systems.

**Tip:** This option will remove data from the selected device(s). Make sure you have backups.

**Replace Existing Linux System(s)**



Removes only Linux partitions (created from a previous Linux installation). This does not remove other partitions you may have on your storage device(s) (such as VFAT or FAT32).

**Tip:** This option will remove data from the selected device(s). Make sure you have backups.

**Shrink Current System**



Shrinks existing partitions to create free space for the default layout.

**Use Free Space**



Retains your current data and partitions and uses only the unpartitioned space on the selected device(s), assuming you have enough free space available.

**Create Custom Layout**



Manually create your own custom layout on the selected device(s) using our partitioning tool.

Encrypt system

Review and modify partitioning layout

Back

Next

Select the type of partitioning you want, to create your own partitions with custom sizes, select **Create Custom Layout** and click on Next to continue

**Drive /dev/sda (25600 MB) (Model: VMware, VMware Virtual S)**

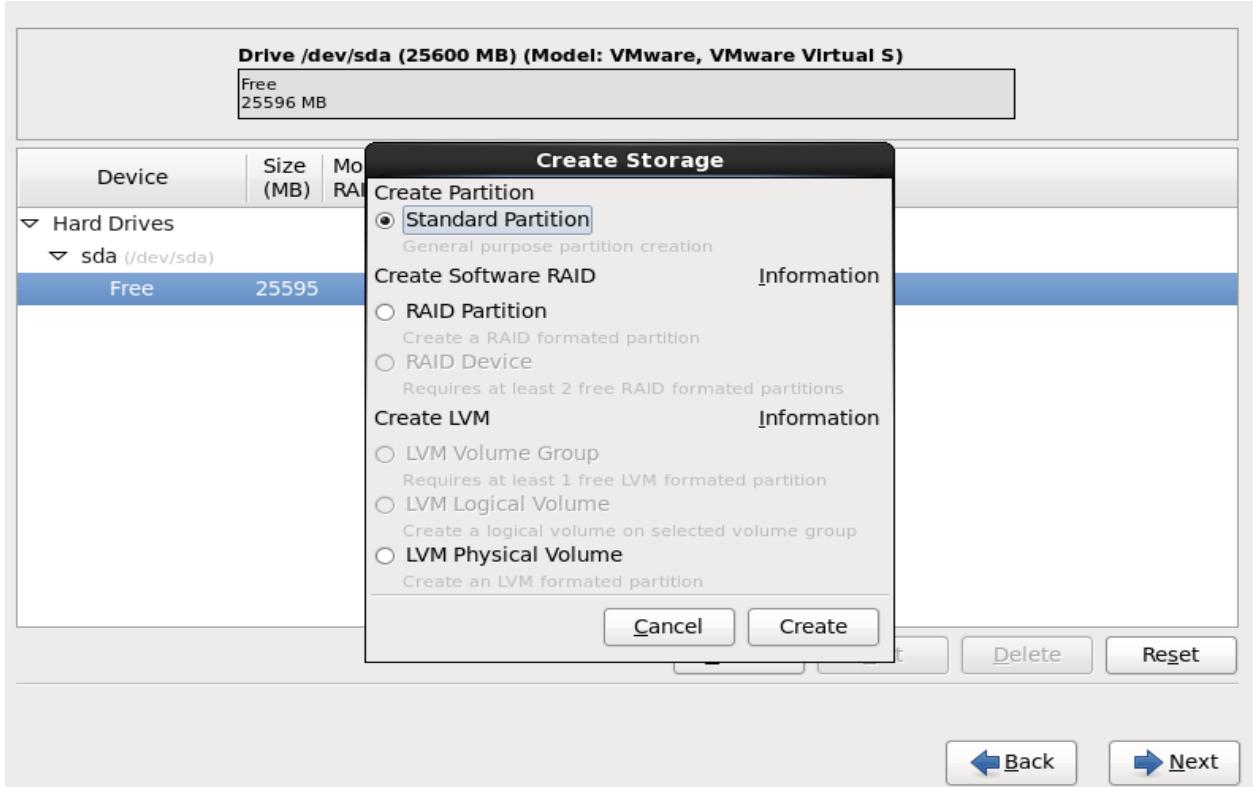
Free  
25596 MB

Device	Size (MB)	Mount Point/ RAID/Volume	Type	Format
<b>Hard Drives</b>				
<b>sda (/dev/sda)</b>				
Free	25595			

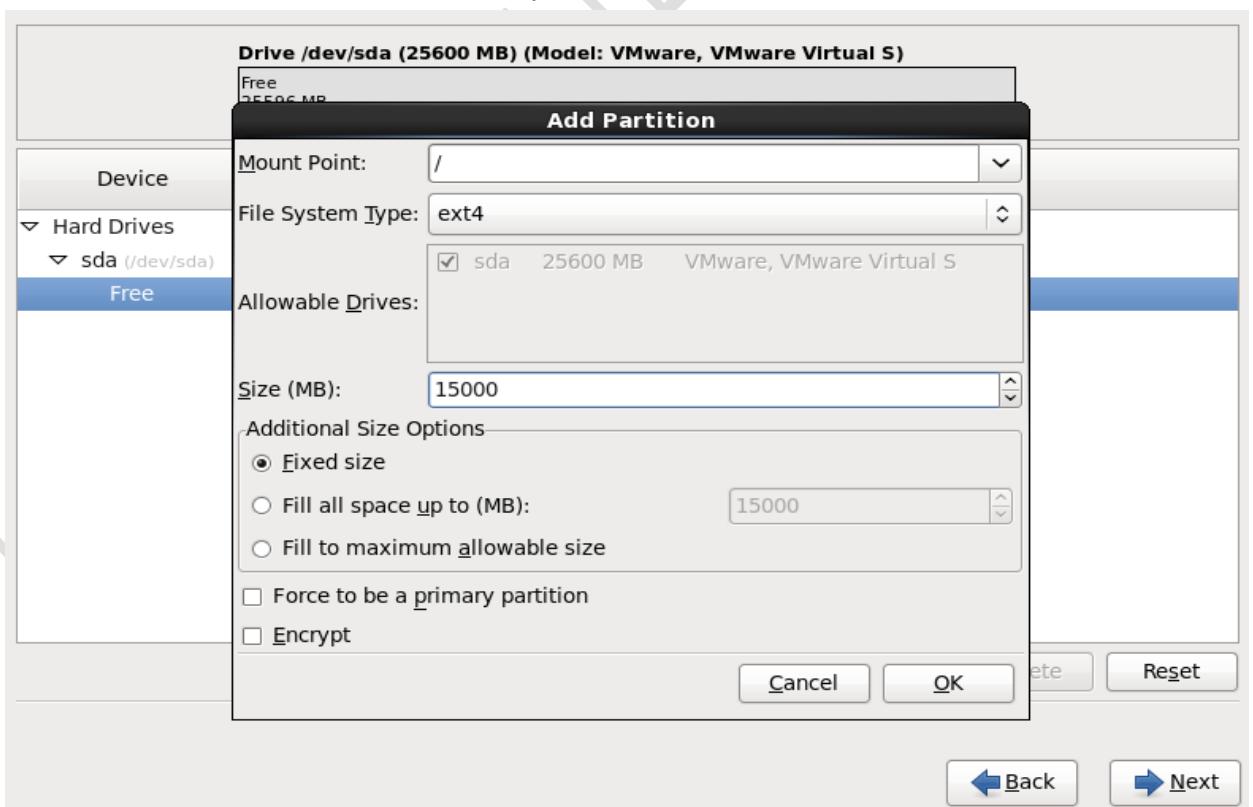
**Create** **Edit** **Delete** **Reset**

Back Next

Click on the **Free** space, then click on **Create** to create your own partitions

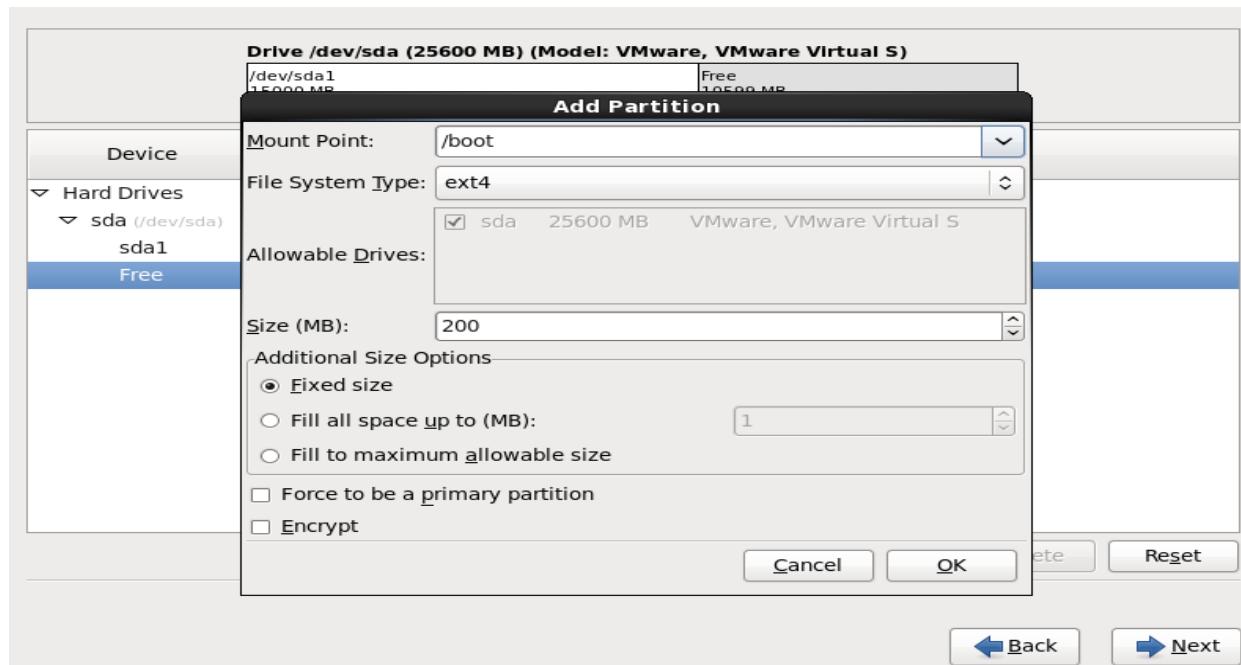


Check the box beside **Standard Partition**, Click on **Create** to continue.

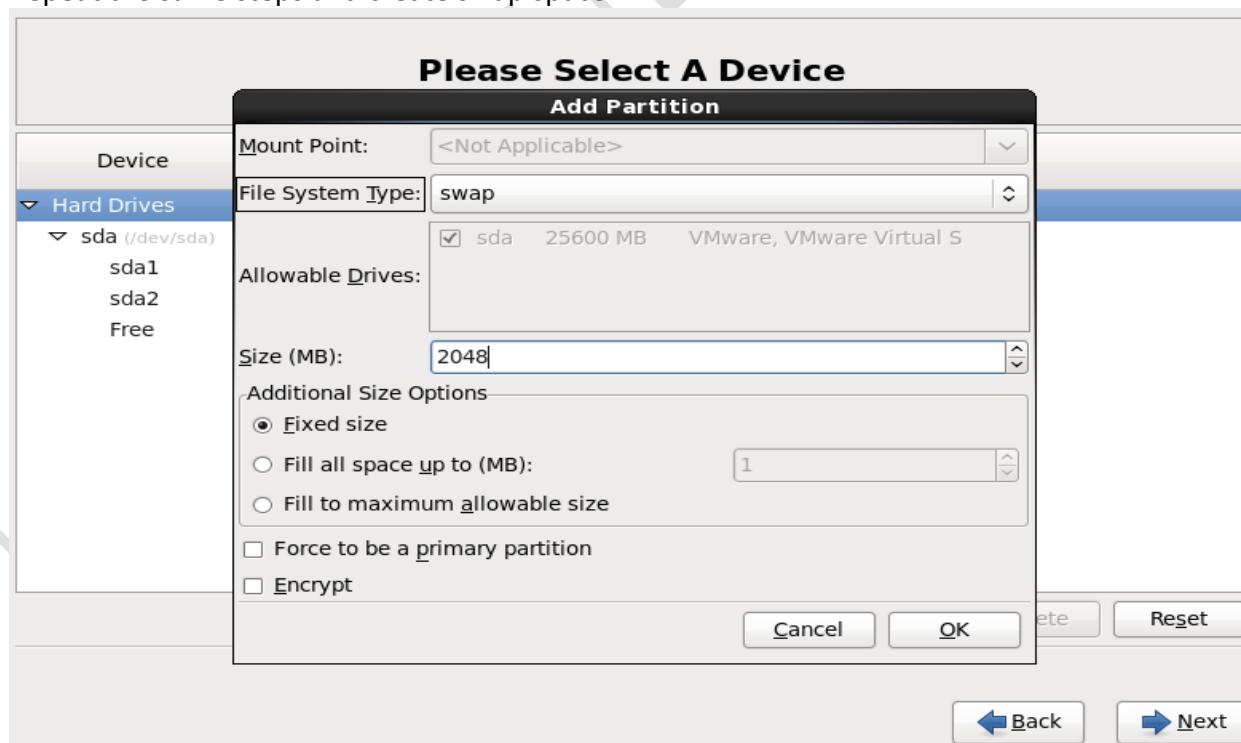


Select / from **Mount Point** Box, give the size you wish for it and click on **OK** to create it.

Select the **Free** space again and click on **Create** to create another partition. Also Check the box beside **Standard Partition**, Click on **Create** to continue



Select **/boot** from **Mount Point** Box, give the size 200 MB for it and click on **OK** to create it.  
Repeat the same steps and create swap space



This time select **swap** from **File System Type**, give the size required and click on **OK**

### Please Select A Device

Device	Size (MB)	Mount Point/ RAID/Volume	Type	Format
▼ Hard Drives				
sda (/dev/sda)				
sda1	200	/boot	ext4	✓
sda2	15000	/	ext4	✓
sda3	2048		swap	✓
Free	8351			

[Create](#) [Edit](#) [Delete](#) [Reset](#)

[Back](#) [Next](#)

Verify the partition and click on Next to continue with it.

### Please Select A Device

Device	Size (MB)	Mount Point/ RAID/Volume	Type	Format
▼ Hard Drives				
sda (/dev/sda)				
sda1	200	/boot	ext4	✓
sda2	15000	/	ext4	✓
sda3	2048		swap	✓
Free	8351			

**Format Warnings**

The following pre-existing devices have been selected to be formatted, destroying all data.

/dev/sda partition table (MSDOS)

[Cancel](#) [Format](#)

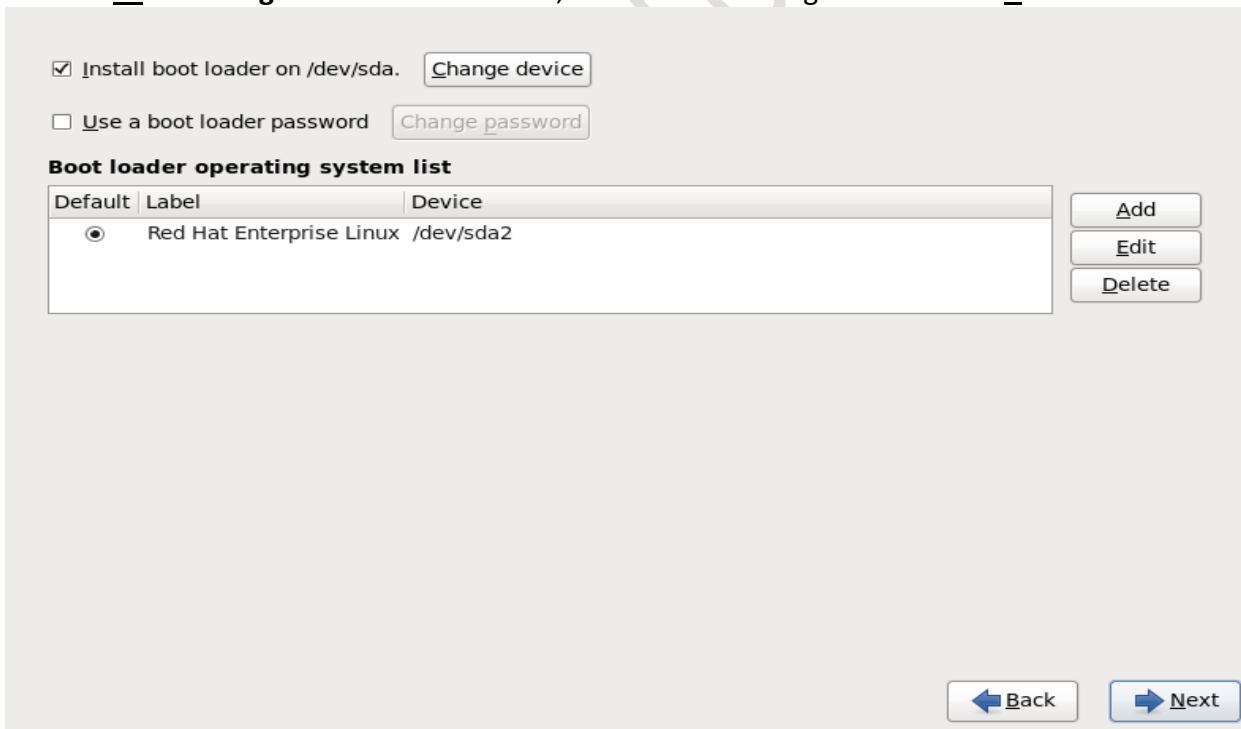
[Create](#) [Edit](#) [Delete](#) [Reset](#)

[Back](#) [Next](#)

Click on Format to format the partition and continue with it.



Click on **Write changes to disk** to continue, if wish make changes click on **Go back**.



To change the name of boot loader select **Edit** and assign new name to it.

To assign password to boot loader check the box beside **Use boot loader password** and assign a password to it.

To keep all as default, just click on **Next** button to continue.

The default installation of Red Hat Enterprise Linux is a basic server install. You can optionally select a different set of software now.

- Basic Server
- Database Server
- Web Server
- Virtual Host
- Desktop
- Software Development Workstation
- Minimal

Please select any additional repositories that you want to use for software installation.

- High Availability
- Load Balancer
- Red Hat Enterprise Linux

[+ Add additional software repositories](#)

[Modify repository](#)

You can further customize the software selection now, or after install via the software management application.

- Customize later     Customize now

[Back](#)

[Next](#)

Select **Desktop** to have a graphical environment in RHEL6.

Check **Customize later** to install additional software later. Click on **Next** to continue

## RED HAT® ENTERPRISE LINUX® 6



Copyright © 2003-2010 Red Hat, Inc. and others. All rights reserved.

Packages completed: 13 of 1063

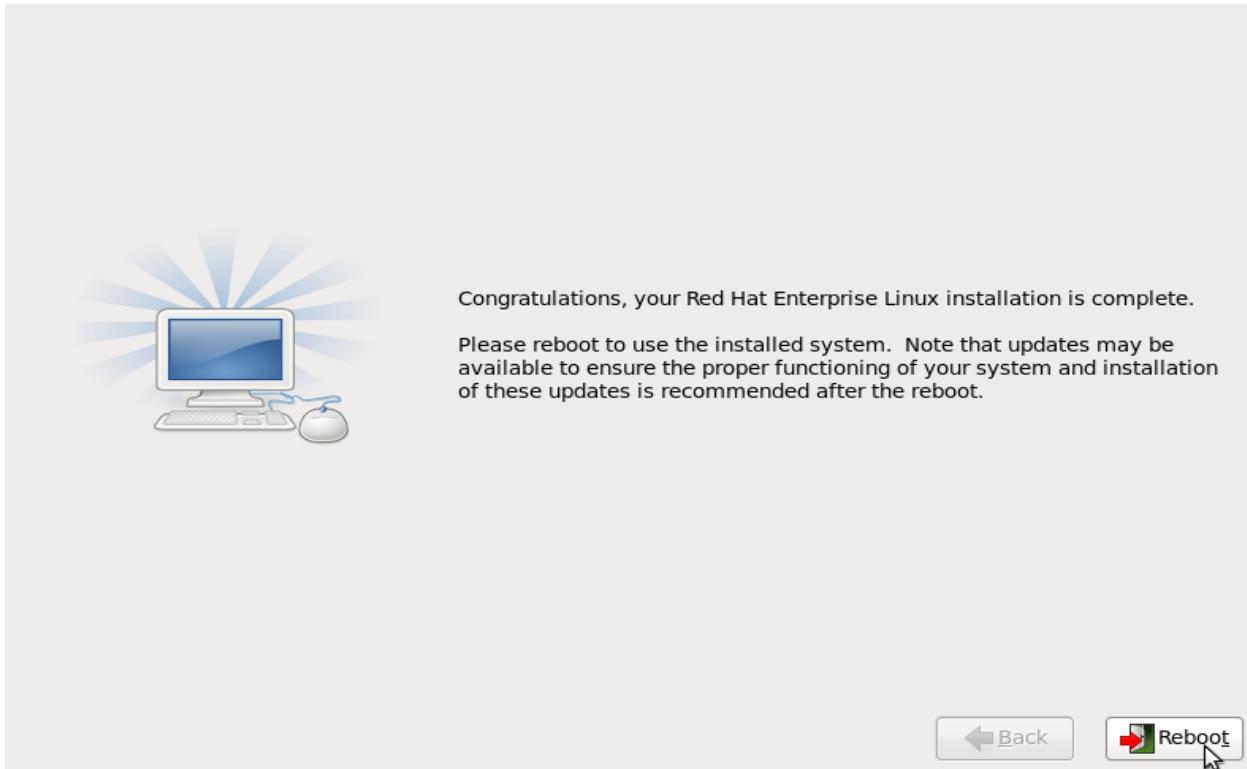
**Installing tzdata-2010l-1.el6.noarch (1 MB)**  
Timezone data

[Back](#)

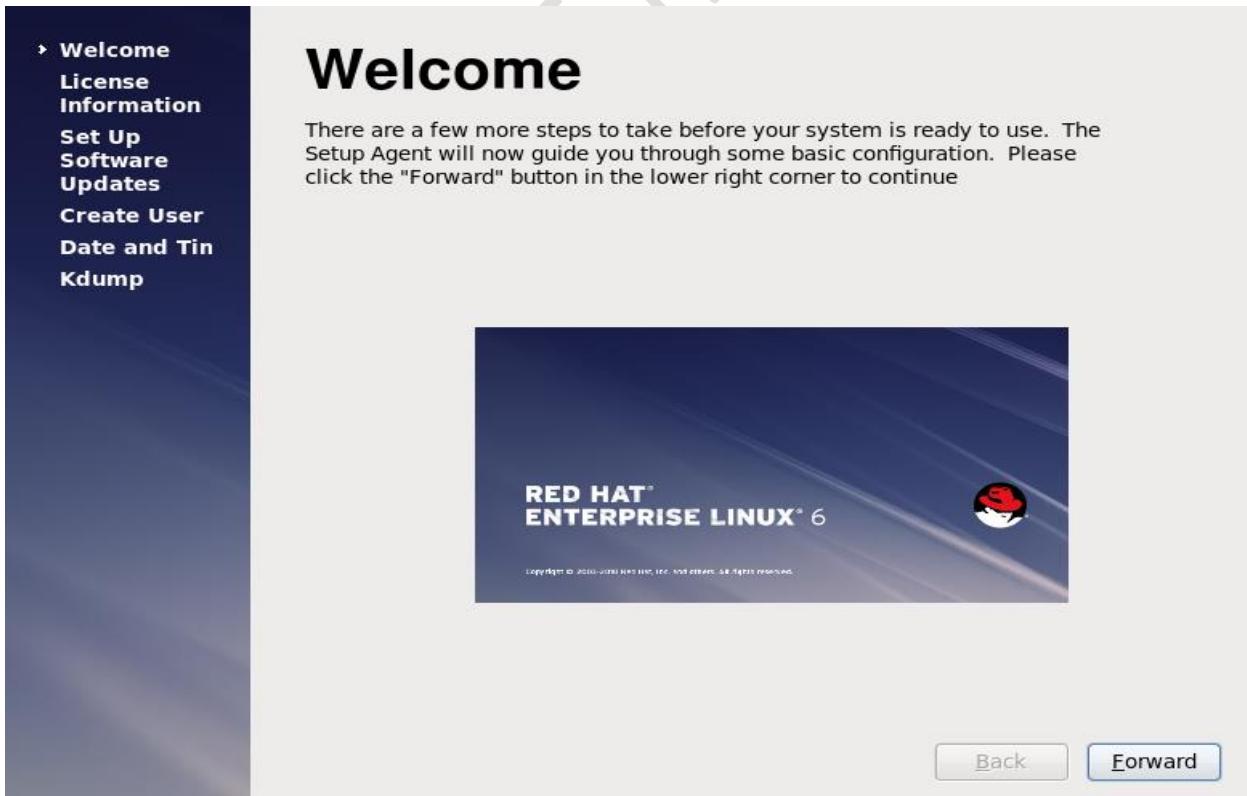
[Next](#)

Now sit back and relax until the installation is completed





When above prompt is displayed, remove the CD/DVD from the drive and click on **Reboot** to reboot the system.



Click on **Forward** to move to next step.

The screenshot shows the 'License Information' step of a setup wizard. On the left, a sidebar lists steps: Welcome, License Information (selected), Set Up Software Updates, Create User, Date and Time, Kdump. The main area displays the 'END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT RED HAT® ENTERPRISE LINUX® AND RED HAT APPLICATIONS'. It contains a detailed text about the EULA, followed by two radio button options: 'Yes, I agree to the License Agreement' (selected) and 'No, I do not agree'. At the bottom are 'Back' and 'Forward' buttons.

**License Information**

END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT RED HAT® ENTERPRISE LINUX® AND RED HAT APPLICATIONS

PLEASE READ THIS END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT CAREFULLY BEFORE USING SOFTWARE FROM RED HAT. BY USING RED HAT SOFTWARE, YOU SIGNIFY YOUR ASSENT TO AND ACCEPTANCE OF THIS END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT AND ACKNOWLEDGE YOU HAVE READ AND UNDERSTAND THE TERMS. AN INDIVIDUAL ACTING ON BEHALF OF AN ENTITY REPRESENTS THAT HE OR SHE HAS THE AUTHORITY TO ENTER INTO THIS END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT ON BEHALF OF THAT ENTITY. IF YOU DO NOT ACCEPT THE TERMS OF THIS AGREEMENT, THEN YOU MUST NOT USE THE RED HAT SOFTWARE. THIS END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT DOES NOT PROVIDE ANY RIGHTS TO RED HAT SERVICES SUCH AS SOFTWARE MAINTENANCE, UPGRADES OR SUPPORT. PLEASE REVIEW YOUR SERVICE OR SUBSCRIPTION AGREEMENT(S) THAT YOU MAY HAVE WITH RED HAT OR OTHER AUTHORIZED RED HAT SERVICE PROVIDERS REGARDING SERVICES AND ASSOCIATE PAYMENTS.

This end user license agreement ("EULA") governs the use of any of the versions of Red Hat Enterprise Linux, certain other Red Hat software applications that include or refer to this license, and any related

Yes, I agree to the License Agreement  
 No, I do not agree

[Back](#) [Forward](#)

Accept the license agreement and click on **Forward** to continue

The screenshot shows the 'Set Up Software Updates' step of a setup wizard. The sidebar is identical to the previous screen. The main area has a large title 'Set Up Software Updates'. Below it, text explains the purpose: connecting to RHN for updates. A bulleted list includes: Your Red Hat Network or Red Hat Network Satellite login, A name for your system's Red Hat Network profile, and The address to your Red Hat Network Satellite (optional). A 'Why Should I Connect to RHN? ...' link is shown. A registration question follows: 'Would you like to register your system at this time? (**Strongly recommended.**)'. Two radio buttons are present: 'Yes, I'd like to register now.' (unchecked) and 'No, I prefer to register at a later time.' (selected). At the bottom are 'Back' and 'Forward' buttons.

**Set Up Software Updates**

This assistant will guide you through connecting your system to Red Hat Network (RHN) for software updates, such as:

- Your Red Hat Network or Red Hat Network Satellite login
- A name for your system's Red Hat Network profile
- The address to your Red Hat Network Satellite (optional)

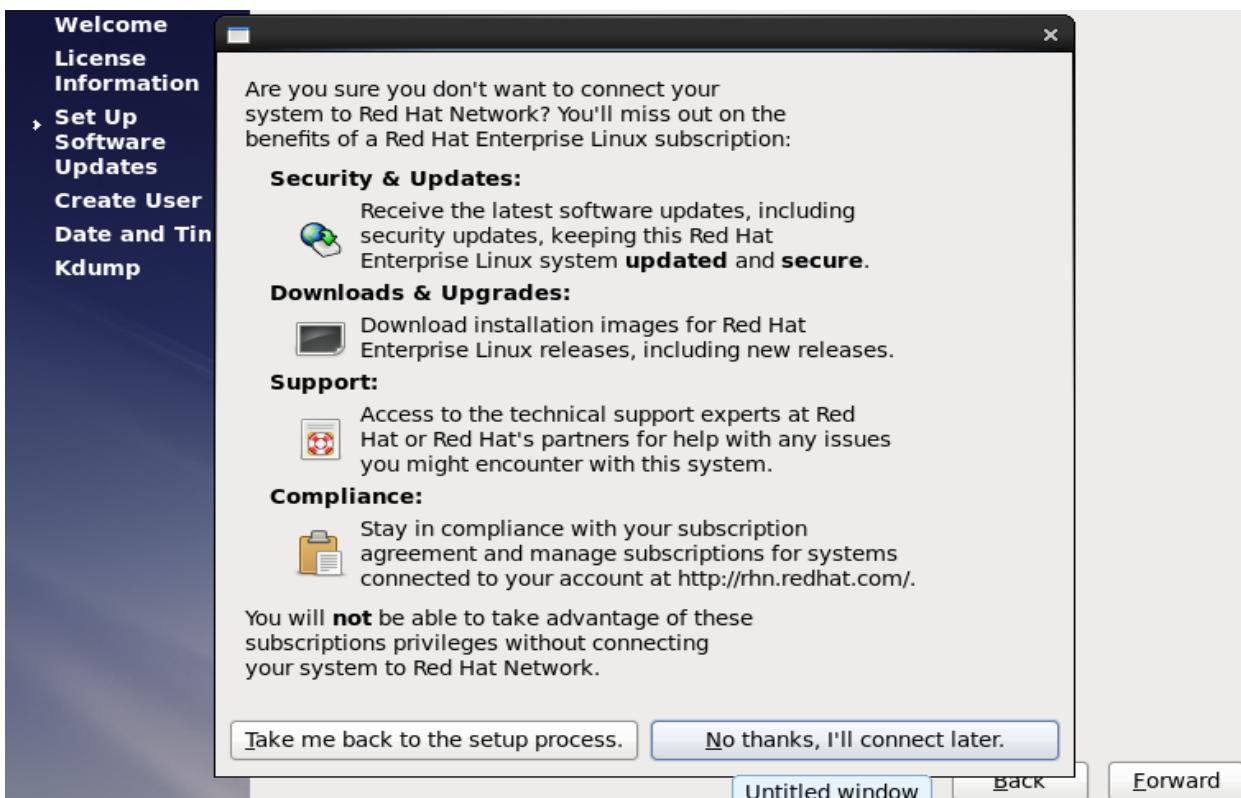
[Why Should I Connect to RHN? ...](#)

Would you like to register your system at this time? (**Strongly recommended.**)

Yes, I'd like to register now.  
 No, I prefer to register at a later time.

[Back](#) [Forward](#)

Check **No, I prefer to register at a later time.** to skip the registration and click on **Forward**.



Click on No thanks, to move to next step



Click on Forward to continue.

**Welcome**  
**License Information**  
**Set Up Software Updates**  
» **Create User**  
**Date and Time**  
**Kdump**

## Create User

You must create a 'username' for regular (non-administrative) use of your system. To create a system 'username', please provide the information requested below.

Username:

Full Name:

Password:

Confirm Password:

If you need to use network authentication, such as Kerberos or NIS, please click the Use Network Login button.

[Use Network Login...](#)

If you need more control when creating the user (specifying home directory, and/or UID), please click the Advanced button.

[Advanced...](#)

[Back](#) [Forward](#)

Give a name to create a user and assign it a password. Click on [Forward](#) to continue.

**Welcome**  
**License Information**  
**Set Up Software Updates**  
**Create User**  
» **Date and Time**  
**Kdump**

## Date and Time

Please set the date and time for the system.

[Date and Time](#)

Current date and time: Sat 15 Oct 2011 06:02:00 AM IST  
 Synchronize date and time over the network

Manually set the date and time of your system:

**Date**

< October >		< 2011 >				
Sun	Mon	Tue	Wed	Thu	Fri	Sat
25	26	27	28	29	30	1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	11	12	13	14	15
16	17	18	19	20	21	22
23	24	25	26	27	28	29
30	31	1	2	3	4	5

**Time**

Hour :

Minute :

Second :

[Back](#) [Forward](#)

Set the date and time and click on [Forward](#) to continue

Welcome  
License  
Information  
Set Up  
Software  
Updates  
Create User  
Date and Time  
Kdump

# Kdump

Kdump is a kernel crash dumping mechanism. In the event of a system crash, kdump will capture information from your system that can be invaluable in determining the cause of the crash. Note that kdump does require reserving a portion of system memory that will be unavailable for other uses.

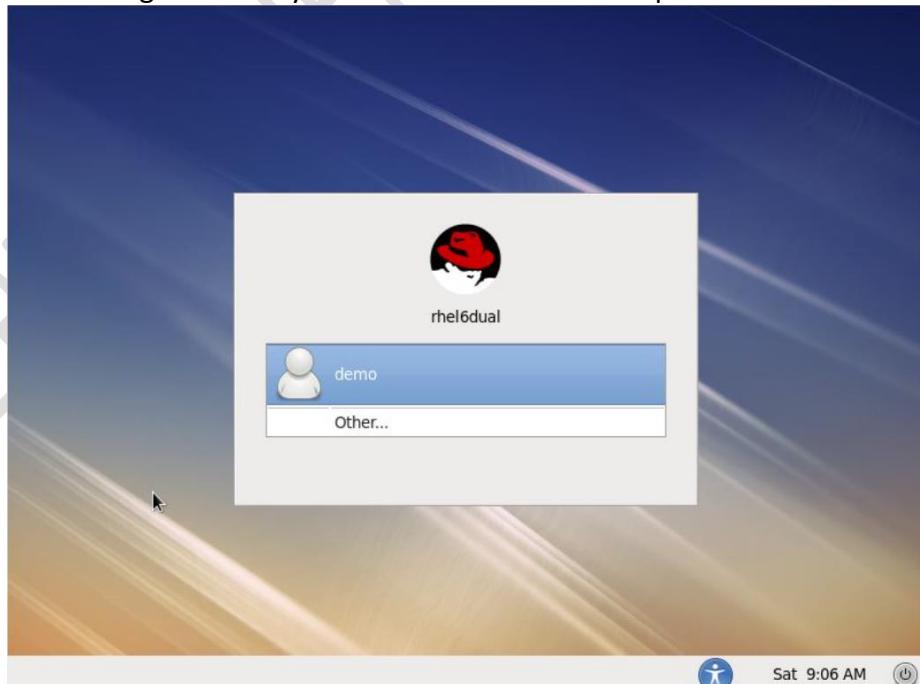
Enable kdump?

Total System Memory (MB): 499

Kdump Memory (MB): 128

Usable System Memory (MB): 371

Click on **Finish** and congratulations your installation is now completed.



Login using either ktuser or root user.

# MANAGING PARTITIONS & FILE SYSTEMS

## WHAT IS A PARTITION?

Partitioning is a means to divide a single hard drive into many logical drives. A partition is a contiguous set of blocks on a drive that are treated as an independent disk. A partition table is an index that relates sections of the hard drive to partitions.

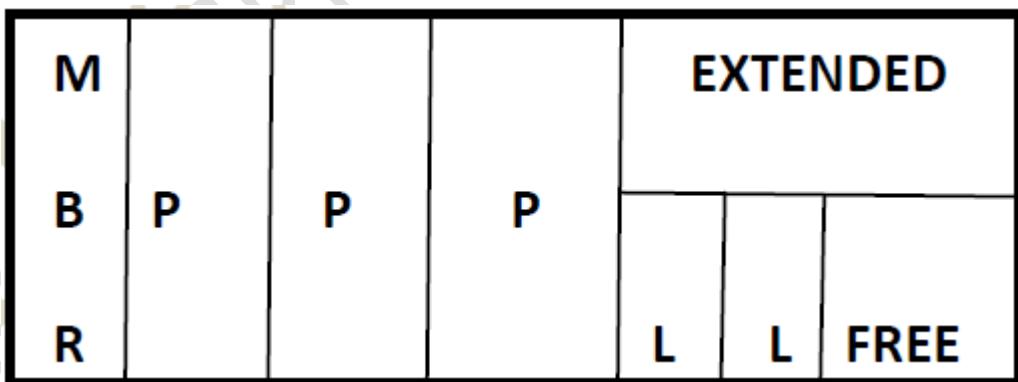
## WHY HAVE MULTIPLE PARTITIONS?

**Encapsulate your data:** Since file system corruption is local to a partition, you stand to lose only some of your data if an accident occurs.

**Increase disk space efficiency:** You can format partitions with varying block sizes, depending on your usage. If your data is in a large number of small files (less than 1k) and your partition uses 4k sized blocks, you are wasting 3k for every file. In general, you waste on average one half of a block for every file, so matching block size to the average size of your files is important if you have many files.

**Limit data growth:** Runaway processes or maniacal users can consume so much disk space that the operating system no longer has room on the hard drive for its bookkeeping operations. This will lead to disaster. By segregating space, you ensure that things other than the operating system die when allocated disk space is exhausted.

Disk Partitioning Criteria:



**MBR** = MASTER BOOT RECORD

**P** = PRIMARY PARTITION

**EXTENDED** = EXTENDED PARTITION

**L** = LOGICAL PARTITION, **FREE** = FREE SPACE

The Structure of Disk Partition

- On the disk where O/S is installed, will have the first partition as **MBR**.
- **MBR** is a Master Boot Record, which contains two important utilities, **IPL** (Initial Program Loader) and **PTI** (Partition Table information)
- **IPL** is responsible for booting the operating system, because it contains the **boot loader**.
- In earlier versions of Linux i.e. up to **RHEL 4**, the default boot loader was **LILO** (Linux Loader). But, since **RHEL5** onwards it has been changed to **GRub** (Grand Unified Boot loader), which is far more superior to **LILO**.
- The **PTI** (Partition Table information) is the information about the number of partitions on the disk, sizes of the partition and types of partitions.

### THE CRITERIA OF DISK PARTITIONING:

Every disk can have only **4** Partitions

The technical reason for this is simple. The partition table of every drive has 64 bytes reserved specifically for partitioning the drive. Each partition takes 16 bytes we use the following formula:

$$64 / 16 = 4$$

4 = Number of partitions available

16 = Number of bytes needed to store partition information for each Individual partition

64 = Number of bytes needed to store partition information for every partition

We divide 4 partitions as 3 Primary Partitions + 1 Extended Partition

- **Primary Partition** is a partition which usually holds the **operating system**. Only one amongst the 3 primary partitions can be active which will be booted by **MBR** to load the operating system.
- **Extended Partition** is a special type of primary partition which can be subdivided into multiple logical partitions. As there can be only 3 primary partitions per disk, and if the user is required to make further partitions then all the space remaining on the disk should be allocated to extended partition, which can be used to create the logical partitions later. There can be only **one extended partition** per disk.
- **Logical partitions** are the partitions which are created under extended partition, all the space in the extended partition can be used to create any number of logical partitions.

### DISK IDENTIFICATION:

Different type of disks will be having different initials in Linux

- **IDE** drive will be shown as **/dev/hda**
- **SCSI** drive will be shown as **/dev/sda**
- **Virtual** drive will be shown as **/dev/vda**

## FILE SYSTEM:-

- It is method of storing the data in an organized fashion on the disk. Every partition on the disk except **MBR** and **Extended partition** should be assigned with some file system in order to make them store the data. File system is applied on the partition by formatting it with a particular type of file system.

Types of file systems used in RHEL 6:

- The file systems supported in Linux are ext2, ext3 and in RHEL 6 ext4, vfat, etc.
- Ext** file system is the widely used file system in Linux, whereas vfat is the file system to maintain a common storage between **Linux and windows** ( in case of multiple o/s )

S.NO	EXT2	EXT3	EXT4
1.	Stands for Second Extended File System	Stands for Third Extended File System	Stands for Fourth Extended File System
2.	It was introduced in 1993	It was introduced in 2001	It was introduced in 2008.
3.	Does not have journaling feature.	Supports Journaling Feature.	Supports Journaling Feature.
4.	Maximum File size can be from <b>16 GB to 2 TB</b>	Maximum File Size can be from <b>16 GB to 2 TB</b>	Maximum File Size can be from <b>16 GB to 16 TB</b>
5.	Maximum ext2 file system size can be from <b>2 TB to 32 TB</b>	Maximum ext3 file system size can be from <b>2 TB to 32 TB</b>	Maximum ext4 file system size is 1 EB (Exabyte). 1 EB = 1024 PB (Petabyte). 1 PB = 1024 TB (Terabyte).
6.	Cannot convert ext file system to ext2.	You can convert an ext2 file system to ext3 file system directly (without backup/restore).	All previous ext file systems can easily be converted into ext4 file system. You can also mount an existing ext3 f/s as ext4 f/s (without having to upgrade it).

## MOUNTING:-

- Attaching a directory to the file system in order to access the partition and its file system is known as mounting.

- The mount point is the directory (usually an empty one) in the currently accessible file system to which an additional file system is mounted.
- The /mnt directory exists by default on all Unix-like systems. It, or usually its subdirectories (such as /mnt/floppy and /mnt/usb), are intended specifically for use as mount points for removable media such as CDROMs, USB key drives and floppy disks.

Files which is related to mounting in Linux:

- **/etc/mtab** is a file which stores the information of all the currently mounted file systems; it is dynamic and keeps changing.
- **/etc/fstab** is the file which keeps information about the permanent mount point. If you want to make your mount point permanent, so that it will be mounted even after reboot, then you need to make an appropriate entry in this file.

#### LAB WORK:-

To view the existing partitions

**#fdisk -l or parted -l**

```
[root@ktcl5 Desktop]# fdisk -l

Disk /dev/sda: 32.2 GB, 32212254720 bytes
64 heads, 32 sectors/track, 30720 cylinders
Units = cylinders of 2048 * 512 = 1048576 bytes
Sector size (logical/physical): 512 bytes / 512 bytes
I/O size (minimum/optimal): 512 bytes / 512 bytes
Disk identifier: 0x00090a50

      Device Boot      Start        End    Blocks   Id  System
/dev/sda1  *           2       201     204800   83  Linux
Partition 1 does not end on cylinder boundary.
/dev/sda2            202      8201    8192000   83  Linux
Partition 2 does not end on cylinder boundary.
/dev/sda3            8202     12201   4096000   83  Linux
Partition 3 does not end on cylinder boundary.
/dev/sda4            12202     30720   18963456    5  Extended
Partition 4 does not end on cylinder boundary.
/dev/sda5            12204     15203    3072000   83  Linux
/dev/sda6            15205     17204   2048000   82  Linux swap / Solaris
```

```
[root@ktcl5 Desktop]# parted -l
Model: VMware Virtual disk (scsi)
Disk /dev/sda: 32.2GB
Sector size (logical/physical): 512B/512B
Partition Table: msdos

Number  Start   End     Size    Type      File system  Flags
 1      1049kB  211MB   210MB   primary   ext4        boot
 2      211MB   8599MB  8389MB  primary   ext4
 3      8599MB  12.8GB  4194MB  primary   ext4
 4      12.8GB  32.2GB  19.4GB  extended
 5      12.8GB  15.9GB  3146MB  logical   ext4
 6      15.9GB  18.0GB  2097MB  logical   linux-swap(v1)
```

**Note:** Observe in the above picture that the device name is **/dev/sda**.

Partition Administration using fdisk

To enter into disk utility, the syntax is

```
#fdisk <disk name>
```

```
#fdisk /dev/sda
```

```
[root@ktcl5 Desktop]# fdisk /dev/sda
```

WARNING: DOS-compatible mode is deprecated. It's strongly recommended to switch off the mode (command 'c') and change display units to sectors (command 'u').

Command (m for help):

Command action

- a toggle a bootable flag
- b edit bsd disklabel
- c toggle the dos compatibility flag
- d delete a partition
- l list known partition types
- m print this menu
- n add a new partition
- o create a new empty DOS partition table
- p print the partition table
- q quit without saving changes
- s create a new empty Sun disklabel
- t change a partition's system id
- u change display/entry units
- v verify the partition table
- w write table to disk and exit
- x extra functionality (experts only)

Command (m for help):

- Use **m** to list out various options that can be used in fdisk.

#### Creating a new partition

```
#fdisk /dev/sda
```

- Use **p** to list out the partition information first and
- Use **n** to create a new partition.

```
[root@ktcl5 Desktop]# fdisk /dev/sda
WARNING: DOS-compatible mode is deprecated. It's strongly recommended to
switch off the mode (command 'c') and change display units to
sectors (command 'u').
Command (m for help): p
Disk /dev/sda: 32.2 GB, 32212254720 bytes
64 heads, 32 sectors/track, 30720 cylinders
Units = cylinders of 2048 * 512 = 1048576 bytes
Sector size (logical/physical): 512 bytes / 512 bytes
I/O size (minimum/optimal): 512 bytes / 512 bytes
Disk identifier: 0x00090a50

      Device Boot      Start        End      Blocks   Id  System
/dev/sda1  *           2         201     204800   83  Linux
Partition 1 does not end on cylinder boundary.
/dev/sda2            202        8201    8192000   83  Linux
Partition 2 does not end on cylinder boundary.
/dev/sda3            8202       12201    4096000   83  Linux
Partition 3 does not end on cylinder boundary.
/dev/sda4            12202      30720    18963456   5   Extended
Partition 4 does not end on cylinder boundary.
/dev/sda5            12204      15203    3072000   83  Linux
/dev/sda6            15205      17204    2048000   82  Linux swap / Solaris

Command (m for help):
```

Now use n to create a new partition and verify it again with p.

```
Command (m for help): n
First cylinder (12202-30720, default 12202): 17205
Last cylinder, +cylinders or +size{K,M,G} (17205-30720, default 30720): +500M

Command (m for help): p
Disk /dev/sda: 32.2 GB, 32212254720 bytes
64 heads, 32 sectors/track, 30720 cylinders
Units = cylinders of 2048 * 512 = 1048576 bytes
Sector size (logical/physical): 512 bytes / 512 bytes
I/O size (minimum/optimal): 512 bytes / 512 bytes
Disk identifier: 0x00090a50

      Device Boot      Start        End      Blocks   Id  System
/dev/sda1  *           2         201     204800   83  Linux
Partition 1 does not end on cylinder boundary.
/dev/sda2            202        8201    8192000   83  Linux
Partition 2 does not end on cylinder boundary.
/dev/sda3            8202       12201    4096000   83  Linux
Partition 3 does not end on cylinder boundary.
/dev/sda4            12202      30720    18963456   5   Extended
Partition 4 does not end on cylinder boundary.
/dev/sda5            12204      15203    3072000   83  Linux
/dev/sda6            15205      17204    2048000   82  Linux swap / Solaris
/dev/sda7            17205     17705    513008   83  Linux
```

### Deleting a partition:

Let's delete the partition we've created above i.e. /dev/sda7

- Use **d** to delete a partition and specify the device name, in our case it is **7**.

```
Command (m for help): d
Partition number (1-7): 7
```

**Note:** Never delete the system partitions i.e. **1-7**

#### Saving the partition changes:

Every time you make a partition or delete a partition, the changes made has to be saved using **w**, otherwise the creation and deletion will not be considered to be happen. For practice purpose you can make any no. of partition and delete it and just quit using **q** so that it will not be saved.

```
Command (m for help): w
The partition table has been altered!

Calling ioctl() to re-read partition table.

WARNING: Re-reading the partition table failed with error 16: Device or resource busy.
The kernel still uses the old table. The new table will be used at
the next reboot or after you run partprobe(8) or kpartx(8)
Syncing disks.
[root@ktcl5 Desktop]# █
```

#### Updating the partition table without restarting the system

After creating or deleting a partition the changes will be effected in the partition table only after the restart of the system. But there is a way to avoid this circumstance. We can use **partprobe** or **partx** command to update the partition information without restarting the system

```
#partprobe /dev/sda
Or
#partx -a /dev/sda
Or
#kpartx /dev/sda
```

**Note:** In RHEL6 **partprobe** is not functioning properly, so it is recommended to use **partx** command only.

Now then we have learnt creating a partition. Let's see how to format a partition with a particular file system.

### Formatting a partition with ext4 filesystem:

After creating a partition we need to assign some file system to it so that we can start storing the data into it. To format a partition the following syntax is used.

```
# mkfs.<file system type> <partition name>
```

```
#mkfs.ext4 /dev/sda7 (where sda7 is our newly created partition)
```

```
[root@ktcl5 Desktop]# mkfs.ext4 /dev/sda7
mke2fs 1.41.12 (17-May-2010)
Filesystem label=
OS type: Linux
Block size=1024 (log=0)
Fragment size=1024 (log=0)
Stride=0 blocks, Stripe width=0 blocks
128520 inodes, 513008 blocks
25650 blocks (5.00%) reserved for the super user
First data block=1
Maximum filesystem blocks=67633152
63 block groups
8192 blocks per group, 8192 fragments per group
2040 inodes per group
Superblock backups stored on blocks:
      8193, 24577, 40961, 57345, 73729, 204801, 221185, 401409

Writing inode tables: done
Creating journal (8192 blocks): done
Writing superblocks and filesystem accounting information: done

This filesystem will be automatically checked every 38 mounts or
180 days, whichever comes first.  Use tune2fs -c or -i to override.
[root@ktcl5 Desktop]#
```

- Likewise you can format the different partitions with different file systems like
- #mkfs.ext3 /dev/sda8
- #mkfs.vfat /dev/sda9

Note: Even after formatting the partition we cannot add the data into the partition. In order to add the data in the partition it is required to be mounted.

### Mounting a partition:

Mounting is a procedure where we attach a directory to the file system. There are two types of mounting which will be used in Linux or any UNIX.

- Temporary Mounting
- Permanent Mounting

### Temporary Mounting

In a temporary mount point we will create a directory and mount it, but this mount point will last only till the system is up, once it is rebooted the mounting will be lost.

Syntax:

```
#mount <device name> <directory name (mount point)>
```

```
#mount /dev/sda7 /kernel
```

```
[root@ktcl5 ~]# mkdir /kernel  
[root@ktcl5 ~]# mount /dev/sda7 /kernel  
[root@ktcl5 ~]# █
```

To View all the mounted partitions

```
#mount
```

```
[root@ktcl5 ~]# mount  
/dev/sda3 on / type ext4 (rw)  
proc on /proc type proc (rw)  
sysfs on /sys type sysfs (rw)  
devpts on /dev/pts type devpts (rw,gid=5,mode=620)  
tmpfs on /dev/shm type tmpfs (rw,rootcontext="system_u:object_r:tmpfs_t:s0")  
/dev/sda1 on /boot type ext4 (rw)  
/dev/sda5 on /home type ext4 (rw)  
/dev/sda2 on /usr type ext4 (rw)  
none on /proc/sys/fs/binfmt_misc type binfmt_misc (rw)  
sunrpc on /var/lib/nfs/rpc_pipefs type rpc_pipefs (rw)  
gvfs-fuse-daemon on /root/.gvfs type fuse.gvfs-fuse-daemon (rw,nosuid,nodev)  
/dev/sr0 on /media/RHEL_6.0_x86_64 Disc 1 type iso9660 (ro,nosuid,nodev,uhelper  
mode=0500)  
/dev/sda7 on /kernel type ext4 (rw)  
[root@ktcl5 ~]# █
```

- Now we have successfully mounted the partition we can access it and can store the data
- To add the data access the mount point
- #cd /kernel
- Add the data and exit the directory

### Unmounting a partition:

```
#umount <mount point directory>
```

```
#umount /kernel
```

Verify it with **mount** command.

### Permanent Mounting:

Permanent mounting procedure is exactly same like temp mounting, but here we will update the **/etc/fstab** file with the mounting details, so that it will be mounted even after the system is reboot.

Steps To make a permanent mount point:

- Make a directory or use an existing directory
- Add entry in **/etc/fstab** file
- Use **mount -a** command to check it is mounting. (**mount -a** will mount all the entry placed in **/etc/fstab**)

Here we will be using our existing **/kernel** directory as mount point which is created previously.

#vim /etc/fstab

#	# /etc/fstab	# Created by anaconda on Fri Nov 5 08:05:42 2010	#	# Accessible filesystems, by reference, are maintained under '/dev/disk'	# See man pages fstab(5), findfs(8), mount(8) and/or blkid(8) for more info	#
UUID=02419cbf-4435-4798-b879-8f821e15cd5b	/			ext4	defaults	1 1
UUID=46aa05b1-9d60-432a-9d64-69a0332f0b2d	/boot			ext4	defaults	1 2
UUID=4f72eaef-8667-450c-ab56-ed30d5dfb8b6	/home			ext4	defaults	1 2
UUID=940a9c29-3a8f-4b6b-a84b-aaa7be57e2a8	/usr			ext4	defaults	1 2
UUID=204d9293-fe4e-4dc2-89cd-816c7a906188	swap			swap	defaults	0 0
tmpfs	/dev/shm			tmpfs	defaults	0 0
devpts	/dev/pts			devpts	gid=5,mode=620	0 0
sysfs	/sys			sysfs	defaults	0 0
proc	/proc			proc	defaults	0 0
/dev/sda7	/kernel			ext4	defaults	0 0

Device Name      Mount Point      Type of FS      Mount options      Dumping      Check Sequence

#mount -a

```
[root@ktcl5 ~]# mount -a
[root@ktcl5 ~]# mount
/dev/sda3 on / type ext4 (rw)
proc on /proc type proc (rw)
sysfs on /sys type sysfs (rw)
devpts on /dev/pts type devpts (rw,gid=5,mode=620)
tmpfs on /dev/shm type tmpfs (rw,rootcontext="system_u:object_r:tmpfs_t:s0")
/dev/sda1 on /boot type ext4 (rw)
/dev/sda5 on /home type ext4 (rw)
/dev/sda2 on /usr type ext4 (rw)
none on /proc/sys/fs/binfmt_misc type binfmt_misc (rw)
sunrpc on /var/lib/nfs/rpc_pipefs type rpc_pipefs (rw)
gvfs-fuse-daemon on /root/.gvfs type fuse.gvfs-fuse-daemon (rw,nosuid,nodev)
/dev/sr0 on /media/RHEL_6.0_x86_64 Disc 1 type iso9660 (ro,nosuid,nodev,uhelper
mode=0500)
/dev/sda7 on /kernel type ext4 (rw)
[root@ktcl5 ~]# █
```

You can now access the directory and add, delete or modify the contents and can also unmount the file system at any point

Sometimes a directory reflects error while unmouting, the possible causes for it are

- You are in the same directory and trying to unmount it. Check with **pwd** command
- Some users are present in the directory and using the contents in it.
- Check with **fuser -cu /dev/sda7**

```
[root@ktcl5 ~]# fuser -cu /dev/sda7
/dev/sda7:          5821c(ktuser)
[root@ktcl5 ~]# █
```

- Check for the files which are open with **lsof /dev/sda7**
- Kill the open connections using **fuser -ck /kernel/hello** where hello is the file which is open.
- Now you can use **umount** command to unmount the file system.

#### To view the usage information of mounted partition:

To view the usage information of mounted partition use the command **df -h**

```
#df -h
```

```
[root@ktcl5 ~]# df -h
Filesystem           Size  Used Avail Use% Mounted on
/dev/sda3            3.9G  383M  3.3G  11% /
tmpfs                499M  372K  499M   1% /dev/shm
/dev/sda1            194M   39M  146M  21% /boot
/dev/sda5            2.9G   69M  2.7G   3% /home
/dev/sda2            7.7G  3.1G  4.3G  42% /usr
/dev/sr0              3.2G  3.2G     0 100% /media/RHEL_6.0_x86_64 Disc 1
/dev/sda7            486M   11M  450M   3% /kernel
[root@ktcl5 ~]# ■
```

#### To view the size of a file or directory:

To view the size of the file or directory uses the command

```
du -h file or directory name.
```

#### Assigning label to the partition:

Assigning the label is giving some name to the partition. To assign label to the partition **e2label** command is used

Syntax:

#e2label <partition name> <label>	To check the label
#e2label /dev/sda7 ktdisk	#e2label /dev/sda7

```
[root@ktcl5 ~]# e2label /dev/sda7 ktdisk
[root@ktcl5 ~]# e2label /dev/sda7
ktdisk
```

To list all the mounted partition along with their labels, use **mount -l** command

#### Mounting a partition using its label:

Mounting a **/dev/sda7** partition with its label **ktdisk**, verify it with **mount** command

```
[root@ktcl5 ~]# mount LABEL=ktdisk /kernel
[root@ktcl5 ~]# mount
```

#### Making a permanent mount point using label:

- As we know that to make a permanent mount point, an entry has to be made in **/etc/fstab** file.

```
#vim /etc/fstab
```

tmpfs	/dev/shm	tmpfs	defaults	0 0
devpts	/dev/pts	devpts	gid=5,mode=620	0 0
sysfs	/sys	sysfs	defaults	0 0
proc	/proc	proc	defaults	0 0
LABEL=ktdisk	/kernel	ext4	defaults	0 0
~				

- Now use **mount -a** command and verify it with **mount** command whether it is mounted or not.

#### Mounting a partition permanently with its block id (UUID):

- To check the uuid of a partition use **blkid /dev/sda7** command.
- Copy the uuid
- Make an entry in **/etc/fstab** using UUID
- Verify it with **mount -a** option

```
[root@ktcl5 ~]# blkid /dev/sda7
/dev/sda7: LABEL="ktdisk" UUID="f489d0b1-ffca-4e21-917a-7b82c0edd255" TYPE="ext4"
[root@ktcl5 ~]#
```

```
#vim /etc/fstab
```

tmpfs	/dev/shm	tmpfs	defaults	0 0
devpts	/dev/pts	devpts	gid=5,mode=620	0 0
sysfs	/sys	sysfs	defaults	0 0
proc	/proc	proc	defaults	0 0
UUID=f489d0b1-ffca-4e21-917a-7b82c0edd255	/kernel	ext4	defaults	0 0

Now mount it with **mount -a** command and verify it with **mount** command

#### Creating a Swap Partition:

Swap space in Linux is used when the amount of physical memory (RAM) is full. If the system needs more memory resources and the RAM is full, inactive pages in memory are moved to the swap space. While swap space can help machines with a small amount of RAM, it should not be considered a replacement for more RAM. Swap space is located on hard drives, which have a slower access time than physical memory.

## Recommended System Swap Space

Amount of RAM in the System	Recommended Amount of Swap Space
4GB of RAM or less	a minimum of 2GB of swap space
4GB to 16GB of RAM	a minimum of 4GB of swap space
16GB to 64GB of RAM	a minimum of 8GB of swap space
64GB to 256GB of RAM	a minimum of 16GB of swap space
256GB to 512GB of RAM	a minimum of 32GB of swap space

The Basic Rule for the Size of SWAP:

Apart from the above recommendation a basic rule is applied to create the swap partitions

- if the size of the RAM is **less than or equal to 2GB**, then size of **SWAP=2 X RAM SIZE**
- If the size of the RAM is **more than 2GB**, then size of **SWAP= 2GB + size of the RAM**

Swap space is compulsory to be created at the time of installation. But, additional swap spaces can be created and deleted at any point of time, when it is required. Sometimes we need to increase the swap space, so we create additional swap spaces which will be added to the existing swap space to increase the size.

Commands to be used in maintaining Swap spaces

- To see the memory size and the swap space size

```
#free -m
```

- To see the swap usage use

```
#swapon -s
```

- To format the partition with swap file system use

```
#mkswap <partition name>
```

- To activate the swap space use

```
#swapon <partition name>
```

- To deactivate the swap space use

```
#swapoff <partition name>
```

## CREATING A SWAP PARTITION:

- Create a normal partition using fdisk and change hex code to make it swap partition.
- The hex code for SWAP is **82**. (To change the use **t** in fdisk and list all the hex code use **I**)
- Update the partition table using **partx -a** command

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# fdisk /dev/sda

WARNING: DOS-compatible mode is deprecated. It's strongly recommended to
switch off the mode (command 'c') and change display units to
sectors (command 'u').

Command (m for help): n
First cylinder (4426-6527, default 4426):
Using default value 4426
Last cylinder, +cylinders or +size{K,M,G} (4426-6527, default 6527): +500M

Command (m for help): t
Partition number (1-6): 6
Hex code (type L to list codes): 82
Changed system type of partition 6 to 82 (Linux swap / Solaris)

Command (m for help): p

Disk /dev/sda: 53.7 GB, 53687091200 bytes
255 heads, 63 sectors/track, 6527 cylinders
Units = cylinders of 16065 * 512 = 8225280 bytes
Sector size (logical/physical): 512 bytes / 512 bytes
I/O size (minimum/optimal): 512 bytes / 512 bytes
Disk identifier: 0x0006d4e7

      Device Boot   Start     End   Blocks   Id  System
/dev/sda1           1    3825  30720000   8e  Linux LVM
/dev/sda2    *     3825    3851    204800   83  Linux
/dev/sda3     3851    4361  4096000   82  Linux swap / Solaris
/dev/sda4     4361    6527 17406303+   5  Extended
/dev/sda5     4361    4425    521957   83  Linux
/dev/sda6     4426    4490    522081   82  Linux swap / Solaris
```

Format the partition with swap file system

```
#mkswap /dev/sda6
```

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# mkswap /dev/sda6
Setting up swap space version 1, size = 522076 KiB
no label, UUID=d3d25afa-71d6-4339-a88a-8640f2680a74
[root@ktlinux ~]#
```

Turn on the newly created swap space and verify it.

- To turn on the swap space the syntax is

```
#swapon /dev/sda6
```

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# swapon /dev/sda6
[root@ktlinux ~]# swapon -s
Filename                                Type      Size   Used   Priority
/dev/sda3                               partition 4095992 0     -1
/dev/sda6                               partition 522072  0     -2
[root@ktlinux ~]# free -m
              total     used     free   shared  buffers   cached
Mem:       2007      741     1266      0        4     272
-/+ buffers/cache:      464     1543
Swap:      4509      0     4509
```

Making the Newly Created SWAP Partition to mount after reboot.

- In order to make the swap partition mount automatic after reboot, we need to make an entry in **/etc/fstab** file.

```
#vim /etc/fstab
```

```
# 
# /etc/fstab
# Created by anaconda on Wed Nov 10 06:40:21 2010
#
# Accessible filesystems, by reference, are maintained under '/dev/disk'
# See man pages fstab(5), findfs(8), mount(8) and/or blkid(8) for more info
#
/dev/mapper/vg_ktlinux-rootlv /          ext4    defaults      1 1
UUID=ce33cb92-21b8-49c0-95fc-17f40437d44b /boot      ext4    defaults      1 2
/dev/mapper/vg_ktlinux-homelv /home      ext4    defaults      1 2
/dev/mapper/vg_ktlinux-usrlv /usr       ext4    defaults      1 2
/dev/mapper/vg_ktlinux-varlv /var       ext4    defaults      1 2
UUID=60dcea45-f68b-473d-b953-0fb5b63d5fc swap      swap    defaults      0 0
tmpfs           /dev/shm      tmpfs   defaults      0 0
devpts          /dev/pts      devpts  gid=5,mode=620 0 0
sysfs           /sys         sysfs   defaults      0 0
proc             /proc        proc    defaults      0 0
/dev/mapper/ktpart /kernel      ext4    defaults      0 0
/dev/sda6        swap        swap    defaults      0 0
```

### Removing the SWAP Partition:

- Deactivate the swap partition  
`#swapoff <device name>`
- Remove the entry from **/etc/fstab**.
- Delete the partition through **fdisk**

### ENCRYPTING A PARTITION USING LUKS (LINUX UNIFIED KEY SETUP):

- LUKS is a standard format for device encryption.
- LUKS ensures the data protection inside the partition, especially against the data breach.
- It encrypts the partition or volume, which will decrypt only by providing correct password.
- The partition must be decrypted before the file system in it can be mounted.
- Once it is open (decrypted), you can work with the partition normally i.e. mounting and adding the data to the partition.
- After the completion of work the partition has to be closed i.e. encrypted, so that it cannot be mounted nor can be accessible by others, unless you lose password.

### Commands used in LUKS encryption:

- **cryptsetup luksFormat**: To Format the partition with encryption, and assigning the password.
- **cryptsetup luksOpen**: To open or decrypt the partition. (password will be required) and the you need to assign some **name** to it, which will be used for further operation as **/dev/mapper/name**.
- **cryptsetup luksClose**: To Close or encrypt back the partition after use.
- **cryptsetup luksAddKey**: To add the key (password) to the configuration to automatically decrypting the partition.

### Steps to Encrypt the Partition:

1. Create a normal partition using fdisk.
  2. Format the partition using **luks** and assign the passphrase.
  3. Decrypt the partition.
  4. Now format again using normal ext4 formatting.
  5. Mount the partition, Make a permanent mount.
  6. Access the partition and add the data
  7. Unmount the partition, and close the partition i.e. encrypt back.
- 
1. Create a normal partition using fdisk.

**#fdisk /dev/sda and create a partition of size 500MB**

Device	Boot	Start	End	Blocks	Id	System
/dev/sda1		1	3825	30720000	8e	Linux LVM
/dev/sda2	*	3825	3851	204800	83	Linux
/dev/sda3		3851	4361	4096000	82	Linux swap / Solaris
/dev/sda4		4361	6527	17406303+	5	Extended
/dev/sda5		4361	4425	521957	83	Linux

```
[root@ktlinux ~]#
```

2. Format the partition using luks and assign the passphrase.

- To encrypting a partition using luks the command is

```
#cryptsetup luksFormat /dev/sda5
```

- It will prompt us to continue, type uppercase YES to continue
- Then it will ask you to assign a passphrase and verify it, which will be used later to decrypt the partition.

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# cryptsetup luksFormat /dev/sda5
```

WARNING!

=====

This will overwrite data on /dev/sda5 irrevocably.

Are you sure? (Type uppercase yes): YES

Enter LUKS passphrase:

Verify passphrase:

```
[root@ktlinux ~]#
```

3. Decrypt the partition.

- To decrypt the partition for further use, make use of the following steps

```
#cryptsetup luksOpen /dev/sda5 ktpart
```

- Where **ktpart** is the name given to the partition, it is mandatory to give a name to the partition. You can assign any name.
- It will ask passphrase; enter the passphrase to decrypt it. (it should be the same as assigned in step 2)

**Note:** From now onward the disk will be represented as **/dev/mapper/ktpart**

**Note:** Don't use **/dev/sda5** to format the partition.

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# cryptsetup luksOpen /dev/sda5 ktpart
Enter passphrase for /dev/sda5:
[root@ktlinux ~]# █
```

**4.** Formatting the partition with ext4 file system.

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# mkfs.ext4 /dev/mapper/ktpart
mke2fs 1.41.12 (17-May-2010)
Filesystem label=
OS type: Linux
Block size=1024 (log=0)
Fragment size=1024 (log=0)
Stride=0 blocks, Stripe width=0 blocks
130048 inodes, 519908 blocks
25995 blocks (5.00%) reserved for the super user
First data block=1
Maximum filesystem blocks=67633152
```

**5.** Making the permanent mount point and mount the partition.

- For temporary mounting make a directory and use

```
#mount /dev/mapper/ktpart /kernel
```

- Make the entry in **/etc/fstab** to make it permanent as shown below
- Also make an entry in **/etc/crypttab** as shown below.

```
#vim /etc/fstab
```

UUID=60dcea45-f68b-473d-b953-0fbc5b63d5fc	swap	swap	defaults
tmpfs	/dev/shm	tmpfs	defaults 0 0
devpts	/dev/pts	devpts	gid=5,mode=620 0 0
sysfs	/sys	sysfs	defaults 0 0
proc	/proc	proc	defaults 0 0
/dev/mapper/ktpart	/kernel	ext4	defaults 0 0

```
#vim /etc/crypttab
```

```
ktpart /dev/sda5
```

**6.** Access the partition and some data to it.

- Access the partition using **mount point**

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# cd /kernel
[root@ktlinux kernel]# ls
lost+found
[root@ktlinux kernel]# touch ktfile{1..5}
[root@ktlinux kernel]# ls
ktfile1 ktfile2 ktfile3 ktfile4 ktfile5 lost+found
[root@ktlinux kernel]# cd ..
[root@ktlinux ~]# █
```

7. Unmount the partition, and close the partition i.e. encrypt it back

```
# umount /dev/mapper/ktpart
#cryptsetup luksClose /dev/mapper/ktpart
#mount -a (To check encryption is working)
```

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# umount /dev/mapper/ktpart
[root@ktlinux ~]# cryptsetup luksClose /dev/mapper/ktpart
[root@ktlinux ~]# mount -a
mount: special device /dev/mapper/ktpart does not exist
[root@ktlinux ~]# █
```

Saving the passphrase in file, to auto mount the partition.

- When you assign the label of the partition in the **/etc/crypttab**, the system will be halted at the time of boot and will ask you to enter the passphrase of that particular partition so that the partition can be decrypted and mounted.
- Either you should type the passphrase to continue or can ignore it by using **ctrl+c** to continue booting without decrypting and mounting the partition.
- In order to make the O/S to take the passphrase automatically and unlock the partition, we can save the passphrase in a file, so that it can take the passphrase and mount it and boot it normally without halting.

Steps to save the passphrase and adding it in LUKS configuration

- Make a file and store the passphrase in it.

```
#vim enphrs
```

```
kernel123
```

```
~
```

```
~
```

- Change the permission of the file (600), and add the path of the file in /etc/crypttab

**Note:** The permission of the file is changed so that groups and others may not be able to view and modify the contents of the file.

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# chmod 600 enphrs
[root@ktlinux ~]# ls -l enphrs
-rw-----. 1 root root 10 Sep 28 06:44 enphrs
[root@ktlinux ~]# vim /etc/crypttab
ktpart /dev/sda5 /enphrs
```

- Add the key in LUKS configuration

**# cryptsetup luksAddKey /dev/sda5 /enphrs and enter the passphrase of the partition**

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# cryptsetup luksAddKey /dev/sda5 /enphrs
Enter any passphrase:
[root@ktlinux ~]#
```

After making the above changes, restart the system and check whether it is halting to ask you passphrase or booting continuously. It will not ask any passphrase for sure.

### Removing the encryption

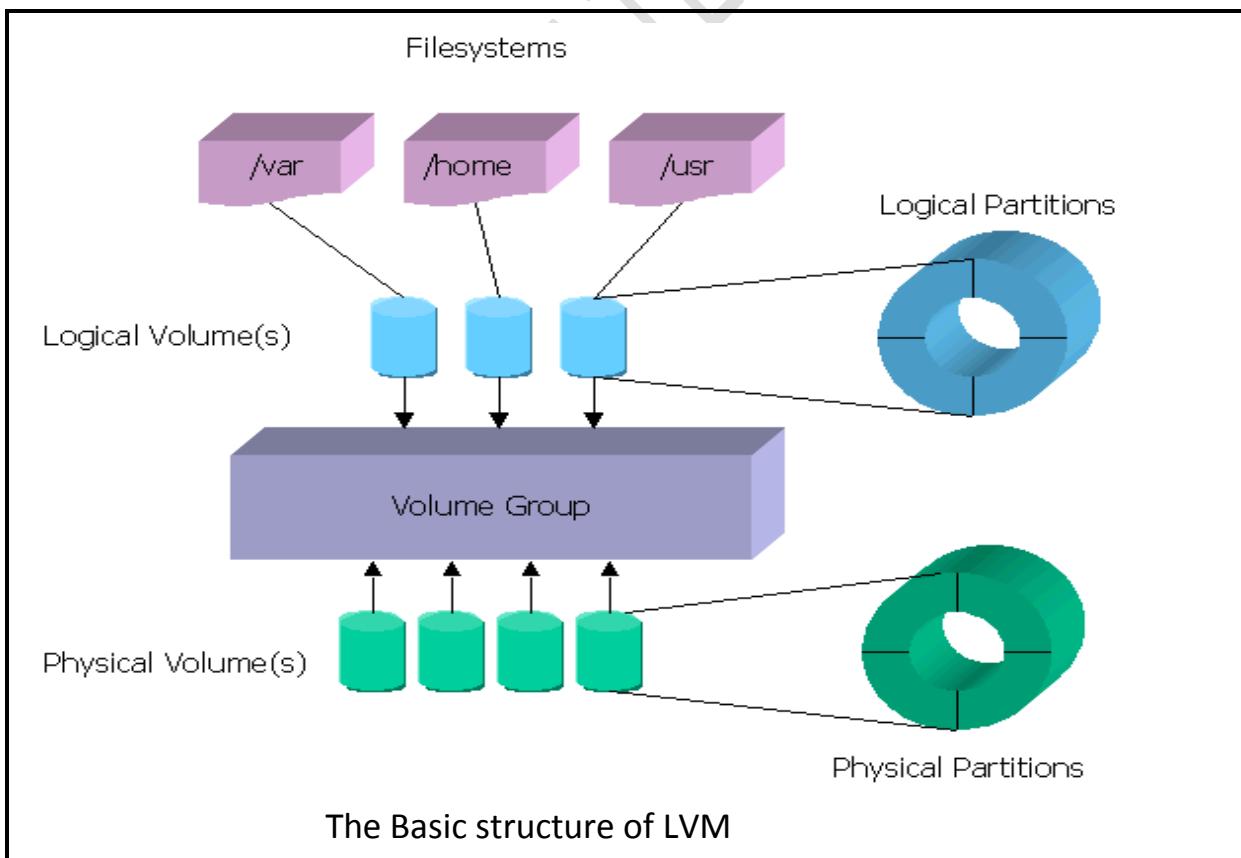
- Close the encryption as shown in **step 7** above and
  - Format the partition normally in **ext4** file system.
- #mkfs.ext4 /dev/sda5
- Encryption will be removed.

**Note:** All the data in the partition will be lost, so make sure that you have backup of it before formatting.

# Logical Volume Management

The Linux Logical Volume Manager (LVM) is a mechanism to virtualize the disks. It can create "virtual" disk partitions out of one or more physical hard drives, allowing you to grow, shrink, or move those partitions from drive to drive as your needs change. It also allows you to create larger partitions than you could achieve with a single drive. Traditional uses of LVM have included databases and company file servers, but even home users may want large partitions for music or video collections, or for storing online backups. LVM can also be convenient ways to gain redundancy without sacrificing flexibility.

A typical example for the need of LVM can be, assuming that we are having a disk of size 2GB and we start adding the data in the form of a single file, eventually it grows to the size of 2GB. In this case the possibility is, you go for another disk which is larger than 2GB, let's say 4GB. But what if the file again grows more than 4GB? How far you will be migrating file from one disk to another so on and so forth? It requires a down time as well which is not possible in real time, so to avoid these circumstances we implement LVM and store data in LV's whose size can be easily increased whenever required without a downtime.



Above picture shows the structure of LVM. LVM consists of **Physical Volumes**, **Volume Group**, **Logical Volumes** and finally **file systems**. The Physical partitions are known as **Physical Extents (PE)**, and the logical partitions are known as **logical Extents (LE)**

Components of LVM in Linux:

- Physical Volumes (PV)
- Physical Extent (PE)
- Volume Group (VG)
- Logical Volume (LV)
- Logical Extent (LE)

### **Physical Volume (PV)**

It is the standard partition that you add to the LVM. Normally, a physical volume is a standard primary or logical partition with the hex code **8e**.

### **Physical Extent (PE)**

It is a chunk of disk space. Every PV is divided into a number of equal sized PEs.

### **Volume Group (VG)**

It is composed of a group of PV's and LV's. It is the organizational group for LVM.

### **Logical Volume (LV)**

It is composed of a group of LEs. You can format and mount any file system on an LV. The size of these LV's can easily be increased or decreased as per the requirement.

### **Logical Extent (LE)**

It is also a chunk of disk space. Every LE is mapped to a specific PE.

LVM Command	Function
pvs	Displays all the physical volumes
vgs	Displays all volume groups in the system
lvs	Displays all the logical volumes in the system
pvdisplay	Displays detailed information on physical volumes
vgdisplay	Displays detailed information on volume groups

lvdisplay	Displays detailed information on logical volumes
pvcreate	Create a new physical volume
vgcreate	Create a new volume group.
lvcreate	Creates a new logical volume
vgextend	Add a new physical disk to a volume group.
lvextend	Extends a logical volume
lvresize	Resizes a logical volume
lvreduce	Reduces a logical volume
pvmove	Moves/migrates data from one physical volume to another
vgreduce	Reduces a volume group by removing a PV from it.
pvremove	Deletes a physical volume
vgremove	Removes /Deletes a volume group
lvremove	Removes /Deletes a logical volume

#### LAB WORK:-

##### Creating a Physical Volume (PV):

- Create a partition using fdisk, and change the hex code of it to **8e**.
- Save and exit the fdisk and update the partition table using **partx -a** command

Device	Boot	Start	End	Blocks	Id	System
/dev/sda1		1	3825	30720000	8e	Linux LVM
/dev/sda2	*	3825	3851	204800	83	Linux
/dev/sda3		3851	4361	4096000	82	Linux swap / Solaris
/dev/sda4		4361	6527	17406303+	5	Extended
/dev/sda5		4361	4425	521957	83	Linux
/dev/sda6		4426	4490	522081	82	Linux swap / Solaris
/dev/sda7		4491	4555	522081	83	Linux

Command (m for help):

Partition number (1-7):

Hex code (type L to list codes):

Changed system type of partition 7 to

- Create a PV on newly created partition i.e. **/dev/sda7**.
- Verify it by **pvs** or **pvdisplay** command

```
#pvcreate <partition name> i.e #pvcreate /dev/sda7
```

```
[root@ktlinux Desktop]# pvcreate /dev/sda7
Physical volume "/dev/sda7" successfully created
```

```
[root@ktlinux Desktop]# pvs
PV          VG      Fmt Attr PSize   PFree
/dev/sda1   vq_ktlinux lvm2 a-  29.29g  1.95g
/dev/sda7           lvm2 a-  509.84m 509.84m
```

```
[root@ktlinux Desktop]# pvdisplay
"/dev/sda7" is a new physical volume of "509.84 MiB"
--- NEW Physical volume ---
PV Name        /dev/sda7
VG Name
PV Size       509.84 MiB
Allocatable    NO
PE Size        0
Total PE      0
Free PE       0
Allocated PE  0
PV UUID       RzuHEg-ks6y-cvem-C5F4-tfk8-veco-mJqs46
```

- The above command will list all the PVs in the system, if you want to see the details only for a particular PV, then use

```
#pvdisplay <partition name> i.e. #pvdisplay /dev/sda7
```

#### Creating a Volume Group (VG):

- After creating a **PV**, the next step is to create a **Volume Group** or **VG**
- To create a VG the syntax is

```
#vgcreate <name for the VG> <partition name> i.e #vgcreate ktvg /dev/sda7
```

```
[root@ktlinux Desktop]# vgcreate ktvg /dev/sda7
Volume group "ktvg" successfully created
```

- Verify it by using the following command

```
#vgs or #vgdisplay <vgname>
```

```
[root@ktlinux Desktop]# vgs
  VG      #PV #LV #SN Attr   VSize   VFree
  ktvg     1   0   0 wz--n-  508.00m 508.00m
  vg_ktlinux 1   4   0 wz--n-  29.29g  1.95g
```

```
[root@ktlinux Desktop]# vgdisplay ktvg
--- Volume group ---
VG Name          ktvg
System ID
Format          lvm2
Metadata Areas    1
Metadata Sequence No 1
VG Access        read/write
VG Status        resizable
MAX LV           0
Cur LV           0
Open LV           0
Max PV           0
Cur PV           1
Act PV           1
VG Size          508.00 MiB
PE Size          4.00 MiB
Total PE         127
Alloc PE / Size  0 / 0
Free  PE / Size  127 / 508.00 MiB
VG UUID          731Qe2-fDm0-PuZz-ZrjX-eki6-lEru-vAi36c
```

- To check all the **VGs** detail you can also use the command  
**#vgdisplay**
- It will list out all the VGs in the system in detail.

#### Logical Volume Creation:

- Once we are ready with a **Volume Group** then it's the time to create a **Logical Volume LV**
- The syntax for creating an **LV** is  
**#lvcreate -L <size of LV> -n <name for LV> <VG name>** i.e  
**#lvcreate -L 300M -n ktlv ktvg (To create a LV of 200MB)**

```
[root@ktlinux Desktop]# lvcreate -L 300M -n ktlv ktvg
Logical volume "ktlv" created
[root@ktlinux Desktop]#
```

- Verify the **LV** by using the following commands
- **#lvs** or **#lvdisplay** to display all the **LVs** available in the system

**#lvdisplay <VG name>** to display the **LVs** of a particular Volume Group i.e **#lvdisplay ktvg**

```
[root@ktlinux Desktop]# lvs
  LV   VG     Attr   LSize  Origin Snap%  Move Log Copy%  Convert
  ktlv  ktvg  -wi-a- 300.00m
  homelv vg_ktlinux -wi-ao  3.91g
  rootlv vg_ktlinux -wi-ao  3.91g
  usrlv  vg_ktlinux -wi-ao  9.77g
  varlv  vg_ktlinux -wi-ao  9.77g
```

```
[root@ktlinux Desktop]# lvdisplay ktvg
--- Logical volume ---
  LV Name        /dev/ktvg/ktlv
  VG Name        ktvg
  LV UUID        x0NkZc-Qq11-6EwK-HuGj-YN1I-5vWV-XQ1JKB
  LV Write Access read/write
  LV Status      available
  # open         0
  LV Size        300.00 MiB
  Current LE    75
  Segments       1
  Allocation     inherit
  Read ahead sectors auto
  - currently set to 256
  Block device   253:4
```

- **Note:** The output for only **lvdisplay** command is very lengthy to show, it is recommended that you run the command on the system and check it out. The syntax is given above.

#### Adding File system to the LV and Mounting it.

- As per now we have our VG created so is our LV. In order make it accessible we need to format it with a file system like ext4 or ext3 or vfat.
- The syntax for formatting an LV is exactly like formatting a normal partition, Instead of **/dev/partition name** we use the path of **LV** that will be something like **/dev/vg/lv**
- **#mkfs.ext4 /dev/ktvg/ktlv**

```
[root@ktlinux Desktop]# mkfs.ext4 /dev/ktvg/ktlv
mke2fs 1.41.12 (17-May-2010)
Filesystem label=
OS type: Linux
Block size=1024 (log=0)
Fragment size=1024 (log=0)
Stride=0 blocks, Stripe width=0 blocks
76912 inodes, 307200 blocks
15360 blocks (5.00%) reserved for the super user
First data block=1
Maximum filesystem blocks=67633152
38 block groups
8192 blocks per group, 8192 fragments per group
2024 inodes per group
Superblock backups stored on blocks:
    8193, 24577, 40961, 57345, 73729, 204801, 221185

Writing inode tables: done
Creating journal (8192 blocks): done
Writing superblocks and filesystem accounting information: done

This filesystem will be automatically checked every 32 mounts or
180 days, whichever comes first.  Use tune2fs -c or -i to override.
[root@ktlinux Desktop]# █
```

#### Mounting:

- Mounting an LV is exactly same like a normal partition, again the path for mounting will be **/dev/vg/lv**
- Create a directory over which the LV should be mounted.

```
#mount </dev/vgname/lvname> /directory name
#mount /dev/ktvg/ktlv /ktdir
```

- Verify the mounting with **mount** command
- Make it a permanent mount by making an entry in **/etc/fstab**

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# mount /dev/ktvg/ktlv /ktdir
#vim /etc/fstab
sysfs          /sys           sysfs  defaults      0  0
proc           /proc          proc   defaults      0  0
/dev/mapper/ktpart   /kernel       ext4   defaults      0  0
/dev/sda6        swap          swap   defaults      0  0
/dev/ktvg/ktlv   /ktdir         ext4   defaults      0  0
```

- Now you can access it and add the data as usual.

### Extending a Volume Group:

- Extending a volume group is actually adding a new PV to the volume group.
- To extend a volume group we need to create a new partition using fdisk. Don't forget to change its **hex code** to **8e** and update the partition table using **partx -a** command
- Create a PV on the newly created partition using **pvcreate** command
- Add the partition to the **VG** using **vgextend** command, the syntax for it is

```
#vgextend <VG name> <partition name>  
#vgextend ktvg /dev/sda8
```

- Verify it **pvs** command

```
[root@ktlinux /]# pvcreate /dev/sda8  
Physical volume "/dev/sda8" successfully created  
[root@ktlinux /]# vgextend ktvg /dev/sda8  
Volume group "ktvg" successfully extended  
[root@ktlinux /]# pvs  
PV VG Fmt Attr PSize PFree  
/dev/sda1 vg_ktlinux lvm2 a- 29.29g 1.95g  
/dev/sda7 ktvg lvm2 a- 508.00m 208.00m  
/dev/sda8 ktvg lvm2 a- 508.00m 508.00m  
[root@ktlinux /]# █
```

### Increasing the size of a logical volume

- Sometimes the file system size may be full, so we need to increase the size of the LV to continue adding the data in it.
- The size of LV can be increased online, no downtime is required.
- Check the current size of the **LV** by using **#df -h** command.
- Increase the size of the LV by using **lvextend** or **lvresize** command, the syntax for it is

```
#lvextend -L <+addition size> </dev/vg/lv name> (syntax for lvresize is also same)  
#lvextend -L +200M /dev/ktvg/ktlv
```

- Update the file system by using **resize2fs** command

```
#resize2fs /dev/vg/lv name  
#resize2fs /dev/ktvg/ktlv
```

- Verify the change by using **df -h** command

```
[root@ktlinux /]# df -h
Filesystem           Size  Used Avail Use% Mounted on
/dev/mapper/vg_ktlinux-rootlv
                      3.9G  450M  3.3G  13% /
tmpfs                 1004M  300K 1004M   1% /dev/shm
/dev/sda2              194M   39M  146M  21% /boot
/dev/mapper/vg_ktlinux-homelv
                      3.9G  72M  3.6G   2% /home
/dev/mapper/vg_ktlinux-usrlv
                      9.7G  2.3G  6.9G  25% /usr
/dev/mapper/vg_ktlinux-varlv
                      9.7G  3.5G  5.7G  39% /var
/dev/mapper/ktvg-ktlv
                     291M   11M  266M   4% /ktdir
[root@ktlinux /]#
```

- Increasing the size of the LV and updating the file system

```
[root@ktlinux /]# lvextend -L +200M /dev/ktvg/ktlv
Extending logical volume ktlv to 500.00 MiB
Logical volume ktlv successfully resized
[root@ktlinux /]# resize2fs /dev/ktvg/ktlv
resize2fs 1.41.12 (17-May-2010)
Filesystem at /dev/ktvg/ktlv is mounted on /ktdir; on-line resizing required
old_desc_blocks = 2, new_desc_blocks = 2
Performing an on-line resize of /dev/ktvg/ktlv to 512000 (1k) blocks.
The filesystem on /dev/ktvg/ktlv is now 512000 blocks long.
```

- Verify it by df -h

```
[root@ktlinux /]# df -h
Filesystem           Size  Used Avail Use% Mounted on
/dev/mapper/vg_ktlinux-rootlv
                      3.9G  450M  3.3G  13% /
tmpfs                 1004M  300K 1004M   1% /dev/shm
/dev/sda2              194M   39M  146M  21% /boot
/dev/mapper/vg_ktlinux-homelv
                      3.9G  72M  3.6G   2% /home
/dev/mapper/vg_ktlinux-usrlv
                      9.7G  2.3G  6.9G  25% /usr
/dev/mapper/vg_ktlinux-varlv
                      9.7G  3.5G  5.7G  39% /var
/dev/mapper/ktvg-ktlv
                     485M   11M  450M   3% /ktdir
[root@ktlinux /]#
```

### Reducing the size of an LV:

- Reducing the size of an LV is a bit complicated task, there are few things which you need to keep in mind before reducing the size of an LV.
  - LV size cannot be reduced online, it requires a down time i.e. unmounting the file system.
  - Check the consistency of the File system.
  - Update the file system about the size. I.e. what its size will be after reduction.
  - Finally reduce the size. Huh....! Lots of things to do!!!!
- If any of the above things are missed then it will be a mess, you may corrupt the file system and LV.

### Let's start the steps carefully:

- Check the size of the lv using **df -h** command
- Unmount the LV using **umount** command
- Check the consistency of file system by using **e2fsck** command
  - #e2fsck -f /dev/ktvg/ktlv.**
- Update the file system by using **resize2fs** command

```
#resize2fs /dev/ktvg/ktlv 300M (where 300M is the approximate total size of LV after reduction)
```

- Now reduce the size by using **# lvreduce -L -200M /dev/ktvg/ktlv** command
- We know the size of LV is around 500MB, from previous picture in case of extending the size of LV.
- Or else you can run **df -h** and verify it again.
- Umount the LV by using umount command

```
[root@ktlinux /]# umount /ktdir  
[root@ktlinux /]# █
```

- Check the consistency of the file system.

```
[root@ktlinux /]# e2fsck -f /dev/ktvg/ktlv  
e2fsck 1.41.12 (17-May-2010)  
Pass 1: Checking inodes, blocks, and sizes  
Pass 2: Checking directory structure  
Pass 3: Checking directory connectivity  
Pass 4: Checking reference counts  
Pass 5: Checking group summary information  
ktlv: 11/127512 files (0.0% non-contiguous), 26603/512000 blocks  
[root@ktlinux /]# █
```

- Update the file system about the size after reduction

```
[root@ktlinux /]# resize2fs /dev/ktvg/ktlv 300M
resize2fs 1.41.12 (17-May-2010)
Resizing the filesystem on /dev/ktvg/ktlv to 307200 (1k) blocks.
The filesystem on /dev/ktvg/ktlv is now 307200 blocks long.

[root@ktlinux /]#
```

- Finally reduce the size of the **LV** using **lvreduce** command. It will prompt you about the change type **y** to continue with reduction.

```
[root@ktlinux /]# lvreduce -L -200M /dev/ktvg/ktlv
WARNING: Reducing active and open logical volume to 300.00 MiB
THIS MAY DESTROY YOUR DATA (filesystem etc.)
Do you really want to reduce ktlv? [y/n]: y
Reducing logical volume ktlv to 300.00 MiB
Logical volume ktlv successfully resized
[root@ktlinux /]#
```

- **Mount the LV** and run the command **df-h**, to verify the change in the size of LV
- **#mount -a** ( if an entry is passed in **/etc/fstab** use this command)
- **#df -h**

```
/dev/mapper/ktvg-ktlv
291M 11M 266M 4% /ktdir
[root@ktlinux /]#
```

- Moving or Migrating the LV (data) from one pv to another.

There might be a situation where the **PV** might be failing and it is required to be replaced, in such case, we need to migrate or move the data from such **PV** to the other and isolate the **PV**.

#### Migrate PV:

- The Steps to migrate the PV are
  - Access the mount point of failing **PV** and check the data in it,
  - Verify the size of the **PV** by **pvs** command or **pvdisplay** command.
  - Unmount the file system on that **PV**.
  - Add new **PV**, which should be of the same size or higher than that of the replacing **PV** to the volume group.
  - Migrate the **PVs** contents to the new **PV** using following command

### #pvmmove <Old PV> <New PV>

- Mount back the **LV**, access the mount point and verify the data in it.
- Remove the faulty **PV** from Volume Group.

Okay! So let's do the practical following above steps.

- Access the mount point of the failing PV and check the data in it,

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# cd /ktdir/
[root@ktlinux ktdir]# ls
ktdata1  ktdata2  ktdata4  ktdata6  ktdata8  lost+found
ktdata10 ktdata3  ktdata5  ktdata7  ktdata9
[root@ktlinux ktdir]# cat ktdata1
Welcome to Kernel Technologies
[root@ktlinux ktdir]#
```

- Verify the size of the PV by pvs command or pvdisplay command.

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# pvs
  PV        VG  Fmt Attr PSize  PFree
  /dev/sda1  rootvg lvm2 a-  17.57g    0
  /dev/sda6  ktvg   lvm2 a-  508.00m 208.00m
  /dev/sda7            lvm2 a-  509.84m 509.84m
[root@ktlinux ~]# pvdisplay
  --- Physical volume ---
  PV Name     /dev/sda6
  VG Name     ktvg
  PV Size    509.84 MiB / not usable 1.84 MiB
  Allocatable yes
  PE Size     4.00 MiB
  Total PE    127
  Free PE     52
  Allocated PE 75
  PV UUID    11jki4-doLN-I0DB-P8T9-itBr-Hn6V-yVrrz2
```

- Unmount the file system on that PV.

### #umount /ktdir

- Add new PV which should be of the same size or higher than that of the replacing PV to the volume group.
- In our case the size of the failing **PV** is around **500MB**, so we need to add a **PV** whose size is at least **500MB** or more
- I have created another partition from fdisk i.e. **/dev/sda7** with the size around **500MB**

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# pvs
  PV          VG   Fmt Attr PSize  PFree
  /dev/sda1    rootvg lvm2 a-  17.57g    0
  /dev/sda6    ktvg   lvm2 a-  508.00m 108.00m
  /dev/sda7          lvm2 a-  509.84m 509.84m
[root@ktlinux ~]# vgextend ktvg /dev/sda7
  Volume group "ktvg" successfully extended
[root@ktlinux ~]# █
```

- Migrate the PV's contents to the new PV using following command

```
#pvmove <Old PV> <New PV>
#pvmove /dev/sda6 /dev/sda7
```

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# pvmove /dev/sda6 /dev/sda7
/dev/sda6: Moved: 4.0%
/dev/sda6: Moved: 100.0%
[root@ktlinux ~]# █
```

- Mount back the **LV**, access the mount point and verify the data in it.

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# mount -a
[root@ktlinux ~]# cd /ktdir
[root@ktlinux ktdir]# ls
ktdata1  ktdata2  ktdata4  ktdata6  ktdata8  lost+found
ktdata10 ktdata3  ktdata5  ktdata7  ktdata9
[root@ktlinux ktdir]# cat ktdata1
Welcome to Kernel Technologies
[root@ktlinux ktdir]# █
```

- Remove the faulty PV from Volume Group.
- As the data is moved safely, now let's remove the faulty **PV** from the volume group.
- The syntax to remove a **PV** from a **VG** is

```
#vgreduce <vg name> <PV name>
#vgreduce ktvg /dev/sda6
```

```
[root@ktlinux ktdir]# vgreduce ktvg /dev/sda6
Removed "/dev/sda6" from volume group "ktvg"
```

### Deleting/Removing an LV:

- To Delete/Remove an LV, first unmount the file system.
- Remove the entry from **/etc/fstab**.
- Use the command **lvremove** i.e.

```
#lvremove <LV name>
```

### #lvremove ktlv (it will prompt to you to continue, press y to continue)

- Verify it by using lvdisplay command

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# umount /ktdir
[root@ktlinux ~]# vim /etc/fstab
[root@ktlinux ~]# lvremove /dev/ktdir/ktvg/ktlv
Do you really want to remove active logical volume ktlv? [y/n]: 
Logical volume "ktlv" successfully removed
[root@ktlinux ~]# lvdisplay ktdir
[root@ktlinux ~]# █
```

- As we were having only one LV and that is now deleted, that's why it is not showing any LVs after executing **lvdisplay** command.

### Deleting a Volume Group

- To delete the volume group, make sure that if there is any LV in it, it should not be mounted. Because while removing a VG it will also remove LV's inside it. In our case we have no LV in our volume group, so we will not be concerned about it.
- To delete a VG, use the following command.

```
#vgremove <vgname>
```

```
#vgremove ktdir
```

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# vgremove ktdir
Volume group "ktdir" successfully removed
[root@ktlinux ~]# █
```

### Deleting a Physical Volume

- Deleting a PV is very simple. The only thing we should check that the PV we are going to delete should not belong to any volume group. We can only delete a PV which is free.
- The syntax to delete a PV is

```
#pvremove <PV name>
```

- #pvremove /dev/sda6
- #pvremove /dev/sda7 OR
- #pvremove /dev/sda{6,7} (To remove multiple PVs in one command)

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# pvremove /dev/sda{6,7}
Labels on physical volume "/dev/sda6" successfully wiped
- Labels on physical volume "/dev/sda7" successfully wiped
```

- If you want you can verify it by using **pvs** or **pvdisplay** commands

-

Building anything requires lots of concentration, hard work, and patience, but to demolish it, it is just a matter of a moment. Isn't it....!

### Creating a VG by specifying the PE size:

- To create a VG with specifying an PE size,
- First create a partition and also create a pv

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# fdisk -l

Disk /dev/sda: 21.5 GB, 21474836480 bytes
255 heads, 63 sectors/track, 2610 cylinders
Units = cylinders of 16065 * 512 = 8225280 bytes
Sector size (logical/physical): 512 bytes / 512 bytes
I/O size (minimum/optimal): 512 bytes / 512 bytes
Disk identifier: 0x00003d37

      Device Boot   Start     End   Blocks  Id  System
/dev/sda1           1    1785  14336000  8e  Linux LVM
/dev/sda2    *      1785    1811    204800  83  Linux
/dev/sda3        1811    2072  2097152  82  Linux swap / Solaris
/dev/sda4        2072    2610  4325849   5  Extended
/dev/sda5        2072    2136  518412+  83  Linux
```

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# pvcreate /dev/sda5
Physical volume "/dev/sda5" successfully created
```

- To create a vg with custom PE size use

```
#vgcreate <name for the vg> -s <size of PE( 1-128)> <pv names>
#vgcreate ktvg2 -s 16 /dev/sda5
```

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# vgcreate ktvg2 -s 16 /dev/sda5
Volume group "ktvg2" successfully created
[root@ktlinux ~]# █
```

- Verify the PE size using **vgdisplay** command

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# vgdisplay ktvg2
--- Volume group ---
VG Name          ktvg2
System ID
Format           lvm2
Metadata Areas   1
Metadata Sequence No 1
VG Access        read/write
VG Status         resizable
MAX LV            0
Cur LV            0
Open LV           0
Max PV            0
Cur PV            1
Act PV            1
VG Size          496.00 MiB
PE Size          16.00 MiB
Total PE          31
Alloc PE / Size  0 / 0
Free  PE / Size  31 / 496.00 MiB
VG UUID          lacNDZ-szQ6-Fq76-lZMZ-Px3K-KQXo-llMDQV
```

Creating an LV of 400MB, specifying no. of LE instead of giving size in MB or GB.

- To create an LV using LE, the things to keep in mind are
- Size of LE=Size of PE
- In Command we are specifying the no. of LE not the size of LE, as the size of LE is based on Size of PE.
- For example if the size of PE is 16, then the size of LE will also be 16.

#### **Steps to create an LV based on LE:**

- Check the size of PE using vgdisplay command

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# vgdisplay ktvg2
--- Volume group ---
VG Name          ktvg2
System ID
Format           lvm2
Metadata Areas   1
Metadata Sequence No 1
VG Access        read/write
VG Status        resizable
MAX LV           0
Cur LV           0
Open LV          0
Max PV           0
Cur PV           1
Act PV           1
VG Size          496.00 MiB
PE Size          16.00 MiB
Total PE         31
Alloc PE / Size  0 / 0
Free  PE / Size  31 / 496.00 MiB
VG UUID          lacNDZ-szQ6-Fq76-lZMZ-Px3K-KQXo-llMDQV
```

- Okay, now then we know the size of PE is 16, lets calculate how many LE is required to create an LV of 400 MB.
- The formula for calculating no. of LE is  
 $\text{<size of LV required, in MB> divided by Size of PE}$   
 $400/16 = 25$
- If the size of LV is to be 2 GB then first we need to convert GB into MB and then calculate  
 $2 \times 1024 / 16 = 128$ .
- You can use **#bc** command to do all the calculations. Use **ctrl+d** or **Ctrl+c** to quit the calculator

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# bc
bc 1.06.95
400/16
25
2*1024/16
128
```

- So now we got the calculation done and we came to know that 25 LEs are required to create 400MB of LV.
- The syntax to create an LV with no. of LE is

```
#lvcreate -l <no. of LE> -n <name for the LV> <volume group name>
#lvcreate -l 25 -n ktlv2 ktvg2
```

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# lvcreate -l 25 -n ktlv2 ktvg2
Logical volume "ktlv2" created
[root@ktlinux ~]# █
```

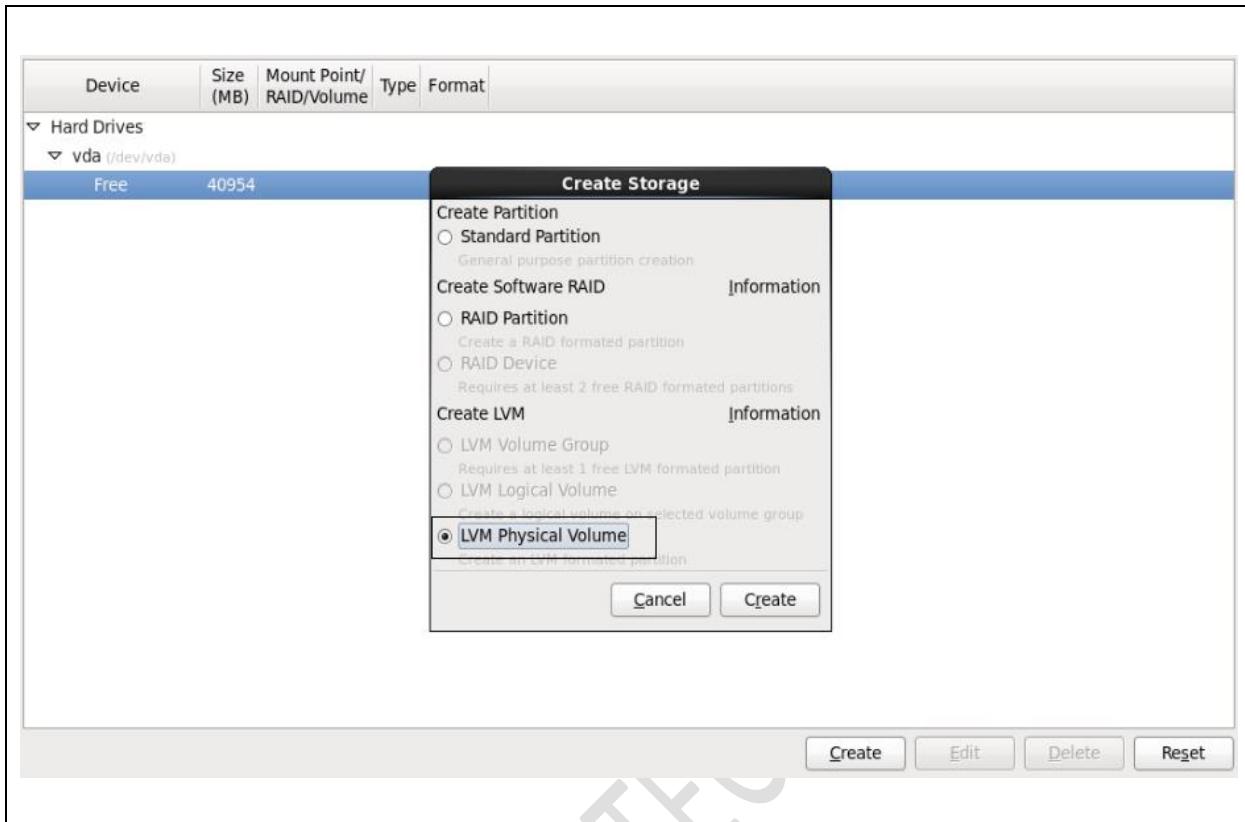
- Now check the size of the LV “ktlv2” using lvdisplay command

```
#lvdisplay ktvg
```

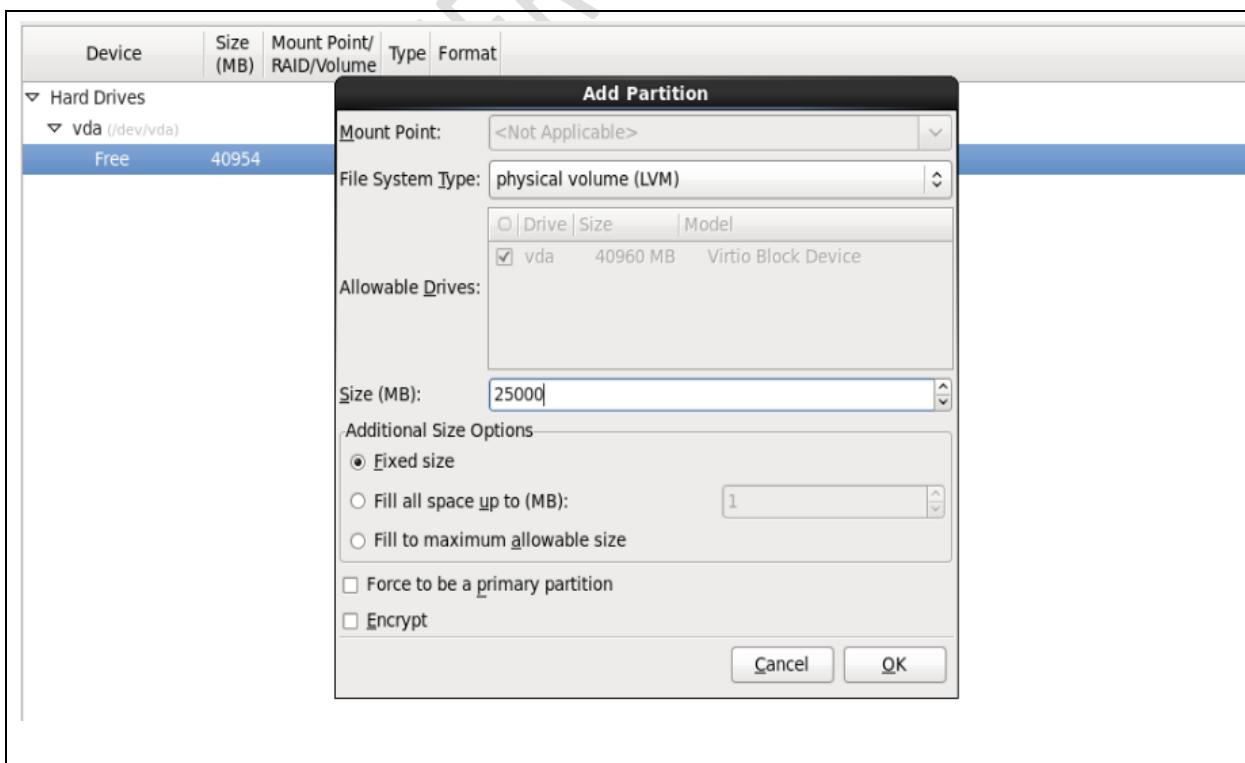
```
[root@ktlinux ~]# lvdisplay ktvg2
--- Logical volume ---
LV Name           /dev/ktvg2/ktlv2
VG Name          ktvg2
LV UUID          t83rmU-kk2z-I83a-BXpo-18LH-aDM8-F0F1iW
LV Write Access   read/write
LV Status         available
# open            0
LV Size           400.00 MiB
Current LE        25
Segments          1
Allocation        inherit
Read ahead sectors auto
- currently set to 256
Block device      253:5
```

### Installing Linux using LVM partitioning:

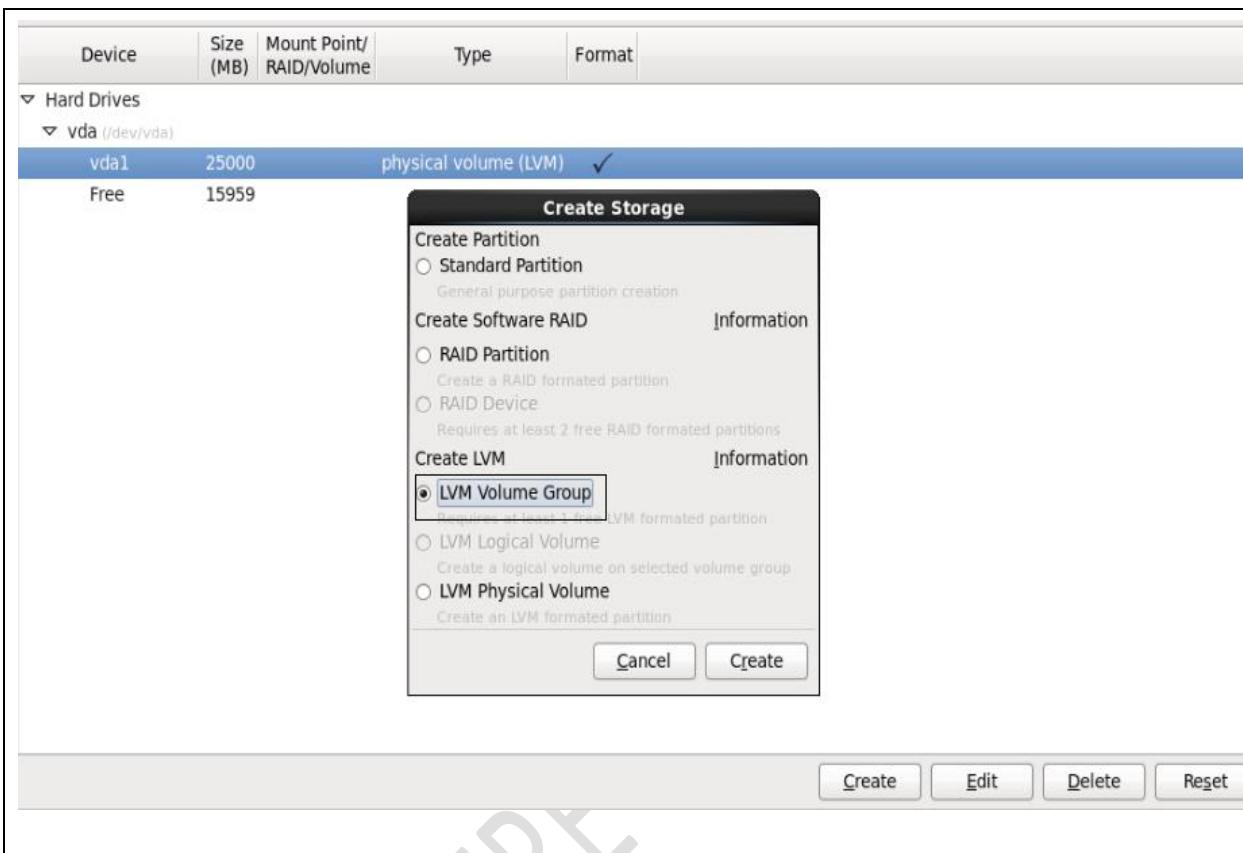
- The only difference in a normal installation and **LVM** installation is that instead of creating normal partition we will create a **VG** and then **LVs** for all partitions, except **/boot** and **swap**.
- The advantage of installing Linux using **LVM** is that, if any of system partition is running out of space and required more space, in case of normal partitioning it is not possible to increase the size of a partition once it is created. But, using LVM the space can be dynamically increased whenever it is required.
- Even if there is no space remaining in the disk some space can be borrowed from other **LVMs** and can easily be assigned to required system partition to fulfill its need.
- LVM** provides a greater scalability to the administrator and avoid uncertain down time to the server.
- LVM** ensures the possibility of increasing and decreasing the sizes whenever required and prevents unnecessary loss of time.
- Start the installation normally as done previously, but only at the time of partitioning follow the steps below.



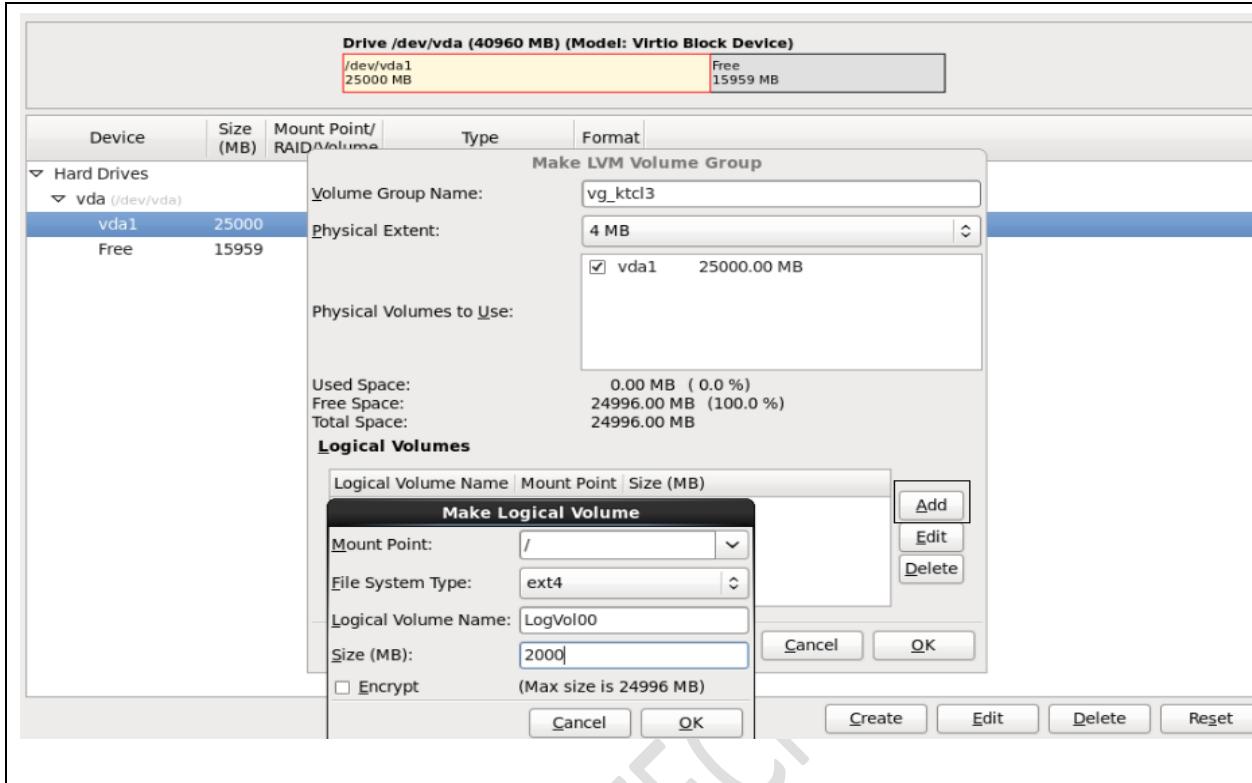
- Select the **Free** space and click on **Create**, then select **LVM Physical Volume** and click on **Create** to proceed.



- Give the maximum possible size to this **PV**, as all the partition has to be created inside it only.



- Select the created **PV**, i.e., **vda1** and this time check the box beside **LVM Volume Group** to create a volume group.

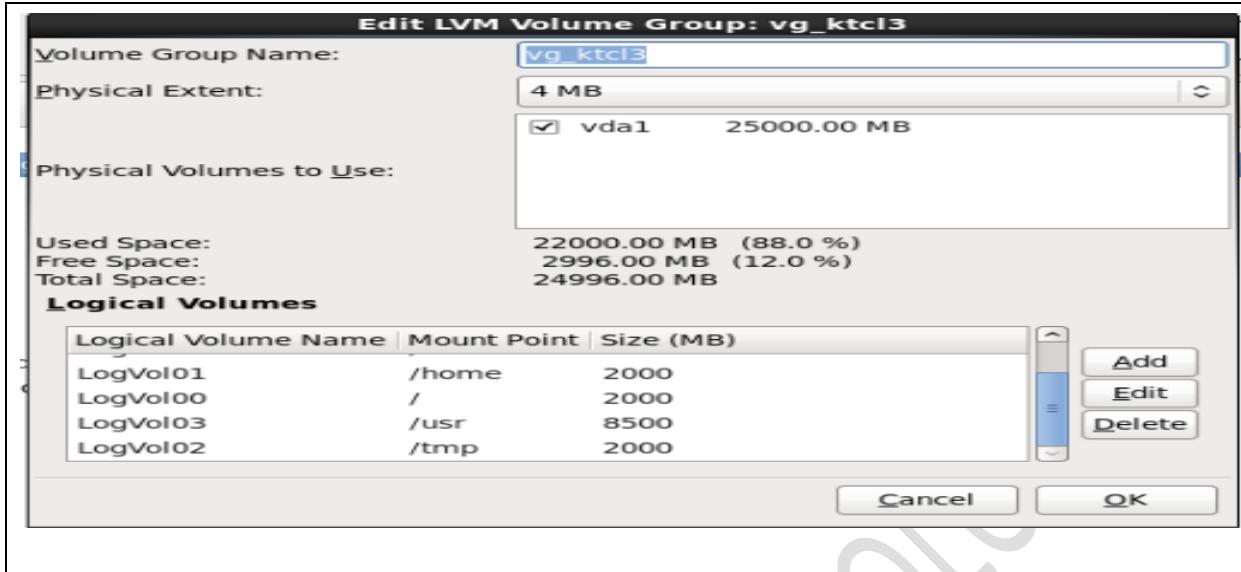


- Click on **Add** button to start adding **LVs**, Select a mount point and assign a size to it and click on **OK**

Repeat the above step and create the following partitions with the given sizes

- /usr with 8.5 GB approx
- /var with 4.5 GB approx
- /opt with 2 GB approx
- /, /tmp, /home 2 GB each approx
- /opt 3 GB approx

Note: All the sizes listed above are based on the availability of the space. It is no where a recommended or minimum sizes. The sizes can be based on your requirements. But /usr required the above given size if it is 64 bit architecture.



- Once done click on **OK** to continue

LVM Volume Groups				
vg_ktcl3	24996			
LogVol05	3000	/opt	ext4	✓
LogVol04	4500	/var	ext4	✓
LogVol01	2000	/home	ext4	✓
LogVol00	2000	/	ext4	✓
LogVol03	8500	/usr	ext4	✓
LogVol02	2000	/tmp	ext4	✓
Free	2996			
Hard Drives				
vda (/dev/vda)				
vda1	25000	vg_ktcl3	physical volume (LVM)	✓
Free	15959			

- Select the **Free** space under **Hard Drives** and create **/boot** with **200 MB** and **/Swap** with **2GB**. Make sure that you select **Standard Partition** this time, instead of **LVM**.

Please Select A Device				
Device	Size (MB)	Mount Point/ RAID/Volume	Type	Format
▼ LVM Volume Groups				
▼ vg_ktcl3	24996			
LogVol05	3000	/opt	ext4	✓
LogVol04	4500	/var	ext4	✓
LogVol01	2000	/home	ext4	✓
LogVol00	2000	/	ext4	✓
LogVol03	8500	/usr	ext4	✓
LogVol02	2000	/tmp	ext4	✓
Free	2996			
▼ Hard Drives				
▼ vda (/dev/vda)				
vda1	25000	vg_ktcl3	physical volume (LVM)	✓
vda2	200	/boot	ext4	✓
vda3	2048		swap	✓
Free	13711			

- Verify the sizes and click on Next to continue with the installation. Complete the installation as usual as we have done previously at the beginning of the course.

Practice the LVM Concept well; as it is the most important part in Linux and in any UNIX operating system as well.

That sums up the LVM concept in Linux

# USER AND GROUP ADMINISTRATION

## PART- I USER ADMINISTRATION

In Linux/Unix user is one who uses the system. There can be at least one or more than one users in Linux at a time. Users on a system are identified by a username and a userid. The username is something that users would normally refer to, but as far as the operating system is concerned this is referred to using the user id (or uid). The username is typically a user friendly string, such as your name, whereas the user id is a number. The words username and userid are often (incorrectly) used interchangeably. The user id numbers should be unique (one number per user). If you had two usernames with the same user id, effectively there permissions would be the same and the files that they create would appear to have been created by the same user. This should not be allowed and the **useradd** command will not allow usernames to share the same userid.

Some Important Points related to Users:

- Users and groups are used to control access to files and resources
  - Users login to the system by supplying their username and password
  - Every file on the system is owned by a user and associated with a group
  - Every process has an owner and group affiliation, and can only access the resources its owner or group can access.
- 
- Every user of the system is assigned a unique user ID number ( the UID)
  - Users name and UID are stored in **/etc/passwd**
  - User's password is stored in **/etc/shadow** in encrypted form.
  - Users are assigned a **home directory** and a program that is run when they login (**Usually a shell**)
  - Users cannot read, write or execute each other's files without permission.

Types of users In Linux and their attributes:

TYPE	EXAMPLE	USER ID (UID)	GROUP ID (GID)	HOME DIRECTORY	SHELL
Super User	Root	0	0	/root	/bin/bash

System User	ftp, ssh, apache nobody	1 to 499	1 to 499	/var/ftp , etc	/sbin/nologin
Normal User	Visitor, ktuser,etc	500 to 60000	500 to 60000	/home/user name	/bin/bash

**In Linux there are three types of users.**

**1. Super user or root user**

Super user or the root user is the most powerful user. He is the administrator user.

**2. System user**

System users are the users created by the softwares or applications. For example if we install Apache it will create a user apache. These kinds of users are known as system users.

**3. Normal user**

Normal users are the users created by root user. They are normal users like Rahul, Musab etc. Only the root user has the permission to create or remove a user.

Whenever a user is created in Linux things created by default:-

- A home directory is created(/home/username)
- A mail box is created(/var/spool/mail)
- unique UID & GID are given to user

Linux uses UPG (User Private Group) scheme

- It means that whenever a user is created it has its own private group
- For Example if a user is created with the name **Rahul**, then a primary group for that user will be **Rahul** only

There are two important files a user administrator should be aware of.

1. "/etc/passwd"
2. "/etc/shadow"

**Each of the above mentioned files have specific formats.**

**1. /etc/passwd**

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# head /etc/passwd
root:x:0:0:root:/root:/bin/bash
bin:x:1:1:bin:/bin:/sbin/nologin
```

The above fields are

- **root** = name
- **x** = link to password file i.e. /etc/shadow
- **0 or 1** = UID (user id)
- **0 or 1** = GID (group id)
- **root or bin** = comment (brief information about the user)
- **/root or /bin** = home directory of the user
- **/bin/bash or /sbin/nologin** = shell

## 2. /etc/shadow

```
root:$1fdgsdfsdksdkffefje:14757:0:99999:7:::
```

The above fields are

- **root** = User name
- **\$1fdgsdfsdksdkffefje** = Encrypted password
- **14757** = Days since that password was last changed.
- **0** = Days after which password must be changed.
- **99999** = Days before password is to expire that user is warned.
- **7** = Days after the password is expires that the user is disabled.
- A reserved field.

### Password Complexity Requirements:

- A root user can change password of self and of any user in the system, there are no rules for root to assign a password. Root can assign any length of password either long or short, it can be alphabet or numeric or both. On the whole there is no limitation for root for assigning a password.
- A normal user can change only its password. Valid password for a normal user should adhere to the following rules
  - It should be at least **7** characters but not more than **255** characters.
  - At least one character should be **Upper case**
  - At least one character should be **Lower case**
  - At least one character should be a **symbol**, and one character should be a **number**.
  - It should not match the previous password.
  - It cannot have a sequence (ex: **123456** or **abcdef**)

- The **login name** and the **password** cannot be same.

**Note:** For security reasons don't keep the password based on **date of birth** because it can easily be hacked.

#### LAB WORK:-

##### Creating a user

- The syntax for creating a user in Linux is

```
# useradd <option> <username>
```

Options are:

- -u user id
- -G Secondary group id
- -g primary group id
- -d home directory
- -c comment
- -s shell

##### Let's create a user with default attributes.

- When no option is used with **useradd** command the options like **UID**, **GID**, **home dir** and **shell** will be assigned default.

```
#useradd <username>
```

- #useradd ktusr

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# useradd ktusr
[root@ktlinux ~]# tail /etc/passwd
avahi:x:70:70:Avahi mDNS/DNS-SD Stack:/var/run/avahi-daemon:/sbin/nologin
ntp:x:38:38::/etc/ntp:/sbin/nologin
pulse:x:496:494:PulseAudio System Daemon:/var/run/pulse:/sbin/nologin
gdm:x:42:42::/var/lib/gdm:/sbin/nologin
sshd:x:74:74:Privilege-separated SSH:/var/empty/sshd:/sbin/nologin
tcpdump:x:72:72::/sbin/nologin
visitor:x:500:500:visitor:/home/visitor:/bin/bash
ktuser:x:501:502::/home/ktuser:/bin/bash
named:x:25:25:Named:/var/named:/sbin/nologin
ktusr:x:502:503::/home/ktusr:/bin/bash
[root@ktlinux ~]#
```

Observe that the uid, gid, home dir, and shell is assigned automatically.

##### Let's create a user with our own attributes

- Create a user with following attributes
  - Name = ktuser2
  - uid=505

- o home dir = /home/kernel
- o comment =salesman

```
#useradd ktuser2 -u 505 -g 505 -d /home/kernel -c salesman
```

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# useradd ktuser2 -u 505 -d /home/kernel -c salesman
[root@ktlinux ~]# tail /etc/passwd
ntp:x:38:38::/etc/ntp:/sbin/nologin
pulse:x:496:494:PulseAudio System Daemon:/var/run/pulse:/sbin/nologin
gdm:x:42:42::/var/lib/gdm:/sbin/nologin
sshd:x:74:74:Privilege-separated SSH:/var/empty/sshd:/sbin/nologin
tcpdump:x:72:72::/sbin/nologin
visitor:x:500:500:visitor:/home/visitor:/bin/bash
ktuser:x:501:502::/home/ktuser:/bin/bash
named:x:25:25:Named:/var/named:/sbin/nologin
ktusr:x:502:503::/home/ktusr:/bin/bash
ktuser2:x:505:505:salesman:/home/kernel:/bin/bash
[root@ktlinux ~]#
```

#### Assigning password to the user:

- As a root user we can assign any password to any user
- The syntax for assigning a password is
- **#passwd** to assign password to current user ( the one with which you have logged in, if it is root then root's password will be changed)
- **#passwd <user name>** to assign a password to a specific user, only root can assign password to other user.

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# passwd ktuser2
Changing password for user ktuser2.
New password:
BAD PASSWORD: it is based on a dictionary word
BAD PASSWORD: is too simple
Retype new password:
passwd: all authentication tokens updated successfully.
[root@ktlinux ~]#
```

#### Modifying the user's attributes:

- After creating a user if we need to modify the attributes of user like changing uid, changing secondary group id or adding a comment, locking or unlocking the user account, can be done by following command

#### # usermod <options> <username>

- Options are:
  - all the options which are used with useradd command can be used and also the following,
    - -l to change login name
    - -L to LOCK account
    - -U to UNLOCK account
- ex. # usermod -l newname oldname (changing the name of the user)
- ex. # usermod -L newname to lock the user account
- ex. # usermod -U newname to unlock the user account
- Note: - when an account is locked it will show! (Exclamation mark) in /etc/shadow file.

#### Locking and unlocking a user account:

- To lock a user a/c use the following

#### #usermod -L < user name>

- #usermod -L ktuser2
- Verify it in **/etc/shadow file**, it shows exclamation mark before user a/c or try login as ktuser2

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# usermod -L ktuser2
[root@ktlinux ~]# tail /etc/shadow
ntp:!!!:14923::::::
pulse:!!!:14923::::::
gdm:!!!:14923::::::
sshd:!!!:14923::::::
tcpdump:!!!:14923::::::
visitor:$6$ONwZFaSl6WerWm2i$ULgPvVbt3.E8Ge.6jwTDQKTaQLvX5d
0Kiqj/6rq9DP1xelZIFyM6Mbwhy35GGem0:14923:0:99999:7:::
ktuser:$6$jAEv8c9$j9VTJ1LPwD0uCuMIm6S2I7k3KdfAJktHGNB1akE:
eCLDS3DA0vq0740FwIUxYWS2/:15234:0:99999:7:::
named:!!!:15239::::::
ktusr:!!!:15250:0:99999:7:::
ktuser2:!!$sygiWqG7$uTphGmvQhScKQ8acThAMhbJuGiK9eRNBuBV4al
.bhMNMZQA6GSTxP1XSRyeTpKph.:15250:0:99999:7:::
[root@ktlinux ~]#
```

- **Unlock the above user:**

#### #usermod -U < user name >

- #usermod -U ktuser2
- Verify it in **/etc/shadow file**, it shows exclamation mark before user a/c or try login as ktuser2

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# usermod -U ktuser2
[root@ktlinux ~]# tail /etc/shadow
ntp:!!!:14923::::::
pulse:!!!:14923::::::
gdm:!!!:14923::::::
sshd:!!!:14923::::::
tcpdump:!!!:14923::::::
visitor:$6$ONwZFaSl6WerWm2i$ULgPvVbt3.E8Ge.6jwTDQKtQLvX5i
0Kiqj/6rq9DP1xelZIFyM6Mbwhy35GGem0:14923:0:99999:7:::
ktuser:$6$6jAEv8c9$j9VTJ1LpwDOuCuMIm6S2I7k3KdfAJktHGNB1akl
ecLDS3DA0vq0740FwIUxWS2/:15234:0:99999:7:::
named:!!!:15239::::::
ktusr:!!!:15250:0:99999:7:::
ktuser2:$6$XbHuW6gS$N04lvd4XbZ76ZdvZFIUXxwBhQ080sshf664zg
asNnhz0zDKrt39Q50JZnKaj6G1:15254:0:99999:7:::
[root@ktlinux ~]# █
```

- Observe in both pictures that once the account is unlocked the exclamation is gone.

#### The password parameters:

- For any user we can set the parameters for the password, like **min** and **max password age**, **password expiration warnings** and **a/c expiration date** etc.
- To view the advanced parameters of the user, use

```
#chage -l < user name>
```

```
#chage -l ktusr
```

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# chage -l ktusr
Last password change : Oct 03, 2011
Password expires     : never
Password inactive    : never
Account expires      : never
Minimum number of days between password change : 0
Maximum number of days between password change : 99999
Number of days of warning before password expires: 7
[root@ktlinux ~]# █
```

- **Last password change:** When the password was changed last time.
- **Password expires:** Password expiry date
- **Password inactive:** After password expiry grace period before the account gets locked.
- **Account expires:** Date on which the account expires.
- **Minimum number of days b/w password change:** Once the password is changed, it cannot be changed until a min period of specified date. [0] means never.

- **Max number of days b/w password change:** After changing the password how long it will be valid for.
- **Number of days of warning before password expires:** start of warnings to change the password, no. of days before the password expires.

### Changing the password parameters:

- Changing of the password parameters can be done by two ways.

```
#chage <user name>
#chage <option> <value> <username>
```

- Let's see the first method and then the other.
- To set the password parameters of a user "ktusr" to
  - Min password age : 2 days
  - Max password age: 7 days
  - Password expiration warnings: 2 days before password expires
  - Password inactive [-1]: 0 same day account is locked after password expiry.
  - A/C expiration date: 2011-12-31 (dec 31<sup>st</sup> 2011)

```
#chage ktusr
```

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# chage ktusr
Changing the aging information for ktusr
Enter the new value, or press ENTER for the default

        Minimum Password Age [2]: 2
        Maximum Password Age [7]: 7
        Last Password Change (YYYY-MM-DD) [2011-10-03]:
        Password Expiration Warning [2]: 2
        Password Inactive [-1]: 0
        Account Expiration Date (YYYY-MM-DD) [1969-12-31]: 2011-12-31
[root@ktlinux ~]# chage -l ktusr
Last password change : Oct 03, 2011
Password expires     : Oct 10, 2011
Password inactive    : Oct 10, 2011
Account expires       : Dec 31, 2011
Minimum number of days between password change : 2
Maximum number of days between password change : 7
Number of days of warning before password expires : 2
[root@ktlinux ~]#
```

- The second method is for, if you want to change a particular field of password aging policy

### #chage <option> <value> <username>

- The options which can be used are as follows
  - **-m** for Min password age
  - **-M** for Max password age
  - **-d** for last time the password is changed.
  - **-W** Password expiration warnings
  - **-I** Password inactive [-1 means inactive].
  - **-E** A/C expiration date
- Let's see how to change only the account expiration date

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# chage -E 2012-1-5 ktusr
[root@ktlinux ~]# chage -l ktusr
Last password change : Oct 03, 2011
Password expires      : Oct 10, 2011
Password inactive     : Oct 10, 2011
Account expires        : Jan 05, 2012
Minimum number of days between password change : 2
Maximum number of days between password change : 7
Number of days of warning before password expires : 2
[root@ktlinux ~]# █
```

Likewise you can use any option listed above and change any particular field in password aging parameters.

### Deleting a User:

- To delete a user the syntax used is
- **#userdel <username>** it will only delete the user but home directory will be there. To delete the user with its home directory use the following command.

### #userdel -r < user name >

- **#userdel -r ktuser2**

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# userdel -r ktuser2
[root@ktlinux ~]# tree /home
/home
├── ktuser
│   ├── kernel1
│   ├── kernel2
│   ├── kernel3
│   ├── kernel4
│   └── kernel5
└── ktusr
    └── lost+found
└── visitor

4 directories, 5 files
[root@ktlinux ~]#
```

We're now done with user administration, let's see what's in part-II

## PART-II GROUP ADMINISTRATION

### GROUPS:

- Users are assigned to groups with unique group ID numbers (the GID)
- The group name and GID are stored in **/etc/group**
- Each user is given their own private group
- They can also be added to their groups to gain additional access
- All users in a group can share files that belong to the group

Each user is a member of at least one group, called a primary group. In addition, a user can be a member of an unlimited number of secondary groups. Group membership can be used to control the files that a user can read and edit. For example, if two users are working on the same project you might put them in the same group so they can edit a particular file that other users cannot access.

- A user's primary group is defined in the **/etc/passwd** file and Secondary groups are defined in the **/etc/group** file.
- The primary group is important because files created by this user will inherit that group affiliation.

### Creating a Group with default options:

- To create a group the syntax is

```
#groupadd <name for the group>
```

- #groupadd ktgroup

```
[root@ktlinux Desktop]# groupadd ktgroup
[root@ktlinux Desktop]# tail /etc/group
stapdev:x:491:
stapusr:x:490:
sshd:x:74:
tcpdump:x:72:
slocate:x:21:
visitor:x:500:
ktuser:x:501:
named:x:25:
ktusr:x:503:
ktgroup:x:504:
[root@ktlinux Desktop]#
```

#### **Creating a group with user specified group id (GID)**

- #groupadd <option> <name for the group>
- #groupadd -g 595 ktgroup
- Verify it in /etc/group

```
[root@ktlinux Desktop]# groupadd -g 595 ktgroup
[root@ktlinux Desktop]# tail /etc/group
stapdev:x:491:
stapusr:x:490:
sshd:x:74:
tcpdump:x:72:
slocate:x:21:
visitor:x:500:
ktuser:x:501:
named:x:25:
ktusr:x:503:
ktgroup:x:595:
[root@ktlinux Desktop]#
```

#### **Modifying the properties of the group:**

- To modify the group properties the syntax is

```
#groupmod <option> <arguments> <group name>
```

The options are

- -g to change the group id
- -o to override the previous assigned id, if it matches with the new one.
- -n to change the group name

### Changing the GID of the group

- #groupmod -g 600 ktgroup
- Verify it in /etc/group

```
[root@ktlinux Desktop]# groupmod -g 600 ktgroup
[root@ktlinux Desktop]# tail /etc/group
stapdev:x:491:
stapusr:x:490:
sshd:x:74:
tcpdump:x:72:
slocate:x:21:
visitor:x:500:
ktuser:x:501:
named:x:25:
ktusr:x:503:
ktgroup:x:600:
[root@ktlinux Desktop]# █
```

### Changing the name of the group

- The syntax for changing the group name is

```
#groupmod -n <new name> < existing name >
```

- #groupmod -n kernelgrp ktgroup

```
[root@ktlinux Desktop]# groupmod -n kernelgrp ktgroup
[root@ktlinux Desktop]# tail -5 /etc/group
visitor:x:500:
ktuser:x:501:
named:x:25:
ktusr:x:503:
kernelgrp:x:600:
[root@ktlinux Desktop]# █
```

### Adding and Removing Members to a Group:

- Adding the members to the group is to add users to the group. To add the members to the group the syntaxes are
- To add single user to the group

```
#usermod -G <group name> < user name>
```

- #usermod -G ktgroup ktuser

```
[root@ktlinux Desktop]# usermod -G ktgroup ktuser
[root@ktlinux Desktop]# grep ktgroup /etc/group
ktgroup:x:600:ktuser
[root@ktlinux Desktop]# █
```

#### Adding multiple single or multiple users to the group with various attributes

```
#gpasswd < option> <arguments> <group name>
```

- Options:
- -M For Adding Multiple users to a group
- -A for Adding a group Administrator
- -a for Adding a single user to a group
- -d removing a user from a group

```
#gpasswd -M <user>,<user>,<user> <group>
```

- #gpasswd -M ktuser2,ktuser3,ktuser4 ktgroup

```
[root@ktlinux Desktop]# gpasswd -M ktuser2,ktuser3,ktuser4 ktgroup
[root@ktlinux Desktop]# tail -5 /etc/group
ktusr:x:503:
ktuser2:x:601:
ktuser3:x:504:
ktuser4:x:505:
ktgroup:x:600:ktuser2,ktuser3,ktuser4
[root@ktlinux Desktop]# █
```

#### Adding a single user using gpasswd

```
#gpasswd -a ktuser ktgroup (verify it in /etc/group)
```

```
[root@ktlinux Desktop]# gpasswd -a ktuser ktgroup
Adding user ktuser to group ktgroup
[root@ktlinux Desktop]# grep ktgroup /etc/group
ktgroup:x:600:ktuser2,ktuser3,ktuser4,ktuser
[root@ktlinux Desktop]# █
```

#### Making a user as a administrator

```
#gpasswd -A ktuser ktgroup (verify it in /etc/gshadow)
```

```
[root@ktlinux Desktop]# gpasswd -A ktuser ktgroup
[root@ktlinux Desktop]# grep ktgroup /etc/gshadow
ktgroup:!:ktuser:ktuser2,ktuser3,ktuser4,ktuser
[root@ktlinux Desktop]#
```

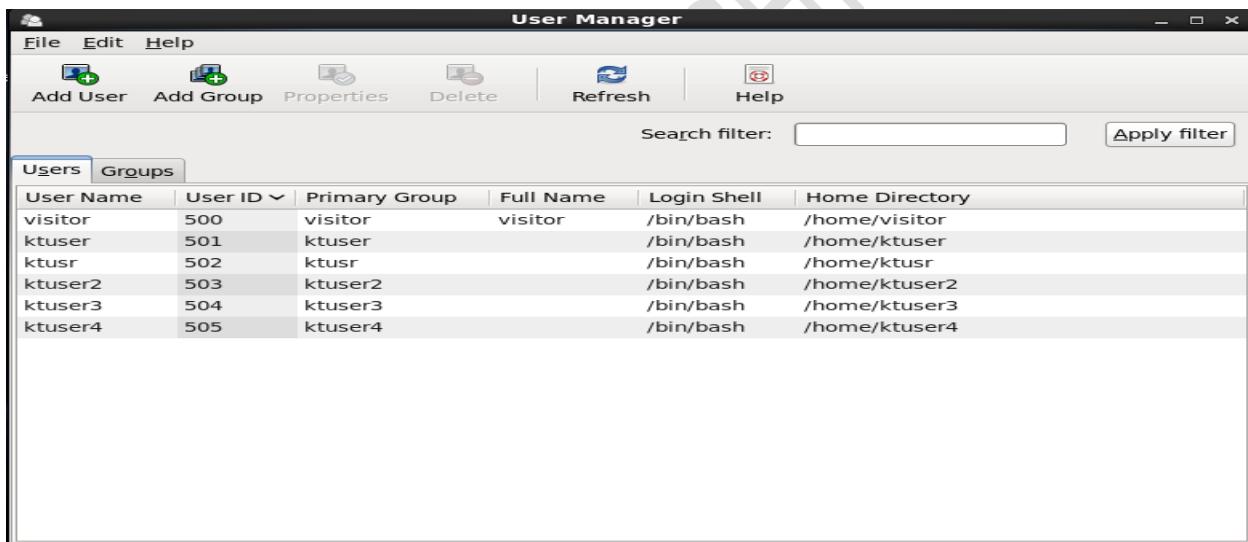
### Removing a user from the group

```
#gpasswd -d ktuser2 ktgroup
```

```
[root@ktlinux Desktop]# grep ktgroup /etc/group
ktgroup:x:600:[ktuser2]ktuser3,ktuser4,ktuser
[root@ktlinux Desktop]# gpasswd -d ktuser2 ktgroup
Removing user ktuser2 from group ktgroup
[root@ktlinux Desktop]# grep ktgroup /etc/group
ktgroup:x:600:ktuser3,ktuser4,ktuser
[root@ktlinux Desktop]#
```

To add and remove groups use can also use the graphical tool in linux

```
#system-config-users &
```



# CONTROLLING ACCESS TO FILES

In this chapter we will be dealing with two things.

- Special Permissions or Advanced Permission
- Access Control List (ACL)

Let's first begin with Special Permissions

## SPECIAL PERMISSIONS OR ADVANCED PERMISSION:

There are three special permissions that can be assigned to a file or directory apart from basic file permissions (rwx), they are:

1. **SUID – SET USER ID**
2. **SGID – SET GROUP ID**
3. **STICKY BIT**

Permission	Symbolic Form	Numeric Form	Syntax
SETUID	s or S	4	#chmod u+s or #chmod 4766
SETGID	s or S	2	#chmod g+s or #chmod 2766
STICKY BIT	t or T	1	#chmod o+t or chmod 1766

Note: Where s= setuid + execute permission and S= setuid only. Same is for SGID and also for sticky bit .

### SUID – SET USER ID

Change user ID on execution. If SETUID bit is set, when the file will be executed by a user, the process will have the same rights as the owner of the file being executed. Many of the system commands are the best example for SUID, basically the owner of the commands will be root, but still a normal user can execute it.

#### Example

By default ping command is having uid, so all users can run that command but if uid is removed and a normal user wants to user execute it, then it will show '**operation not permitted**'

```
[root@ktlinux Desktop]# which ping  
/bin/ping  
[root@ktlinux Desktop]# ls -l /bin/ping  
[rws]r-xr-x. 1 root root 41432 Jul 27 2010 /bin/ping  
[root@ktlinux Desktop]# ■
```

**Note:** observe that in the permissions “**rwsr-xr-x**” it contains an “**s**”, which means SUID is placed.

Let's remove SUID on Ping command and logged in as normal user and check the results

```
[root@ktlinux Desktop]# chmod u-s /bin/ping  
[root@ktlinux Desktop]# su - ktuser2  
[ktuser2@ktlinux ~]$ ping 192.168.10.95  
ping: icmp open socket: Operation not permitted  
[ktuser2@ktlinux ~]$ ■
```

### **SGID – SET GROUP ID**

Set group ID, used on executable files to allow the file to be run as if logged into the group (like SUID but uses file group permissions)

SGID can also be used on a directory so that every file created in that directory will have the directory group owner rather than the group owner of the user creating the file.

#### Example

When a directory is created and its group is set to some group. Now if SGID is applied to it, and the group member creates files and directory inside it, then it will get the same group rather than getting user's primary group

Let's see it practically.

```
[root@ktlinux /]# mkdir ktsdir
[root@ktlinux /]# chgrp ktgroup ktsdir
[root@ktlinux /]# ls -ld ktsdir
drwxr-xr-x 2 root ktgroup 4096 Oct  8 07:32 ktsdir
[root@ktlinux /]# chmod g+s ktsdir
[root@ktlinux /]# ls -ld ktsdir
drwxr-Sr-x 2 root ktgroup 4096 Oct  8 07:32 ktsdir
[root@ktlinux /]# chmod go+w ktsdir
[root@ktlinux /]# su - ktuser3
[ktuser3@ktlinux ~]$ cd /ktsdir
[ktuser3@ktlinux ktsdir]$ touch file{1..5}
[ktuser3@ktlinux ktsdir]$ ls -l
total 0
-rw-rw-r-- 1 ktuser3 ktgroup 0 Oct  8 07:34 file1
-rw-rw-r-- 1 ktuser3 ktgroup 0 Oct  8 07:34 file2
-rw-rw-r-- 1 ktuser3 ktgroup 0 Oct  8 07:34 file3
-rw-rw-r-- 1 ktuser3 ktgroup 0 Oct  8 07:34 file4
-rw-rw-r-- 1 ktuser3 ktgroup 0 Oct  8 07:34 file5
[ktuser3@ktlinux ktsdir]$ █
```

Note: when a file is created by any user it will get the group as primary group of the owner which is usually owner's private group with same name.

### STICKY BIT

If sticky bit is applied on a file or directory, then only root and owner of that file or directory can delete it. Even if others are having full permissions they cannot delete the file or directory.

Let see it practically.

```
[root@ktlinux /]# chmod o+t ktsdir
[root@ktlinux /]# ls -ld ktsdir
drwxrwsrwt 2 root ktgroup 4096 Oct  8 07:34 ktsdir
[root@ktlinux /]# su - wshr
[wshr@ktlinux ~]$ cd /ktsdir
[wshr@ktlinux ktsdir]$ ls
file1 file2 file3 file4 file5
[wshr@ktlinux ktsdir]$ rm file1
rm: remove write-protected regular empty file `file1'? y
rm: cannot remove `file1': Operation not permitted
[wshr@ktlinux ktsdir]$ █
```

## ACCESS CONTROL LIST (ACL)

Define more fine-grained discretionary access rights for files and directories.

Often, you want to share files among certain groups and specific users. It is a good practice to designate a directory for that purpose. You want to allow those groups and users to read, and

write files in that directory, as well as create new files into the directory. Such special permissions can be given using ACL.

ACL can be applied on ACL enabled partition that means you need to enable ACL while mounting the partition.

### Steps to implement ACL:

1. Create a partition and format it with ext4 file system
2. Mount a file system with ACL
3. Apply ACL on it.

Let's implement it practically.

Create a partition and format it with ext4 file system

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# parted -l /dev/sda
Model: VMware Virtual disk (scsi)
Disk /dev/sda: 53.7GB
Sector size (logical/physical): 512B/512B
Partition Table: msdos

Number  Start   End     Size    Type      File system    Flags
 1      1049kB  31.5GB  31.5GB  primary    ext4          lvm
 2      31.5GB   31.7GB  210MB   primary    ext4          boot
 3      31.7GB   35.9GB  4194MB  primary    linux-swap(v1)
 4      35.9GB   53.7GB  17.8GB  extended
 5      35.9GB   36.4GB  534MB   logical
 6      36.4GB   36.9GB  535MB   logical    linux-swap(v1)
 7      36.9GB   37.5GB  535MB   logical
 8      37.5GB   38.0GB  535MB   logical
```

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# mkfs.ext4 /dev/sda7
mke2fs 1.41.12 (17-May-2010)
```

Mount it with ACL option

```
#mount -o acl /dev/sda7 /ktdir
```

If the partition is already mounted and you want add acl on it use following command

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# mount -o acl /dev/sda7 /ktdir
[root@ktlinux ~]# mount
/var/named on /var/named/chroot/var/named type none (rw,bind)
sunrpc on /var/lib/nfs/rpc_pipefs type rpc_pipefs (rw)
/dev/sda2 on /boot type ext4 (rw)
/dev/mapper/vg_ktlinux-homelv on /home type ext4 (rw)
/dev/mapper/ktpart on /kernel type ext4 (rw)
/dev/sda7 on /ktdir type ext4 (rw,acl)
[root@ktlinux ~]#
```

To make it permanent make following entry in /etc/fstab

/dev/mapper/ktpart	/kernel	ext4	defaults	0 0
/dev/sda6	swap	swap	defaults	0 0
/dev/sda7	/ktdir	ext4	defaults,acl	0 0

If your partition already exists, then just add an acl after defaults as shown above and use the following command.

```
#mount -o remount /dev/sda7
```

Now check the default permission and acl permission on /ktdir

```
#ls -ld /ktdir
```

To check the acl permission syntax is

```
#getfacl <option> <dir/file name>
```

Options:

- d              Displays the default ACL
- R              Recurses into subdirectories

```
#getfacl /ktdir
```

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# ls -ld /ktdir
drwxr-xr-x 3 root root 1024 Oct 10 02:42 /ktdir
[root@ktlinux ~]# getfacl /ktdir
getfacl: Removing leading '/' from absolute path names
# file: ktdir
# owner: root
# group: root
user::rwx
group::r-x
other::r-x
```

Now let's assign full permission to the directory and then apply acl on it, so that we can analyze how acl will work.

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# chmod 777 /ktdir
[root@ktlinux ~]# ls -ld /ktdir
drwxrwxrwx 3 root root 1024 Oct 10 02:42 /ktdir
[root@ktlinux ~]#
```

Okay, now we are ready to apply acl, but first let's understand the command and option in details.

The syntax to apply acl is

```
#setfacl <option> < argument > < file or directory name >
```

The options are,

- **-m** Modifies an ACL
- **-x** Removes an ACL
- **-R** Recurses into subdirectories

The possible arguments are

- u: user
- g: group
- o: others

**Note:** Whatever ACL permissions assigned to a user or group or others, it will be treated as Normal Permissions minus ACL

To assign read and execute permission to a particular user the syntax could be

```
#setfacl -m u: <username>: <permissions> <file or dir name>
```

```
#setfacl -m u:ktuser: rx ktdir
```

Verify it by using getfacl command

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# setfacl -m u:ktuser:rx /ktdir
[root@ktlinux ~]# getfacl /ktdir
getfacl: Removing leading '/' from absolute path names
# file: ktdir
# owner: root
# group: root
user::rwx
user:ktuser:r-x
group::rwx
mask::rwx
other::rwx
```

Now login as ktuser and try to create a file inside ktdir, as we have not assigned write permission to ktuser, though it is having full permissions, still it will not allow ktuser to create a file inside it.

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# su - ktuser
[ktuser@ktlinux ~]$ cd /ktdir
[ktuser@ktlinux ktdir]$ touch file1
touch: cannot touch `file1': Permission denied
[ktuser@ktlinux ktdir]$ ls -ld /ktdir
drwxrwxrwx+ 3 root root 1024 Oct 10 02:42 /ktdir
[ktuser@ktlinux ktdir]$
```

Observe that when you check for the permissions it is showing a + sign after normal permission, that indicate that ACL is applied on this directory.

To assign read write and execute permission to a particular group

```
#setfacl -m g:<group name>:<permissions> <file or directory name>
#setfacl -m g:ktgroup:rwx /ktdir
```

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# setfacl -m g:ktgroup:rwx /ktdir
[root@ktlinux ~]# getfacl ktdir
# file: ktdir
# owner: root
# group: root
user::rwx
user:ktuser:r-x
group::rwx
group:ktgroup:rwx
mask::rwx
other::rwx
```

Now you know how to apply acl on any file or directory, let me just give one more examples which you can broaden your understandings.

Assigning read and execute permission for a user and a group at same time.

```
#setfacl -m u:ktuser:rx,g:ktgroup:rx /ktdir
```

```
[root@ktlinux /]# setfacl -m u:ktuser:rx,g:ktgroup:rx /ktdir
[root@ktlinux /]# getfacl ktdir
# file: ktdir
# owner: root
# group: root
user::rwx
user:ktuser:r-x
group::rwx
group:ktgroup:r-x
mask::rwx
other::rwx
```

Likewise you can explore applying acl to any user, group, or others in many ways.

#### Removing acl for a particular user:

```
#setfacl -x u:<username> <dir name>
```

```
#setfacl -x u:ktuser /ktdir
```

```
[root@ktlinux /]# setfacl -x u:ktuser /ktdir
[root@ktlinux /]# getfacl ktdir
# file: ktdir
# owner: root
# group: root
user::rwx
group::rwx
group:ktgroup:r-x
mask::rwx
other::rwx
```

#### Removing acl for a particular group:

```
#setfacl -x g:<group name> <directory name>
```

```
#setfacl -x g: ktgroup /ktdir
```

```
[root@ktlinux /]# setfacl -x g:ktgroup /ktdir
[root@ktlinux /]# getfacl ktdir
# file: ktdir
# owner: root
# group: root
user::rwx
group::rwx
mask::rwx
other::rwx
```

#### Removing all ACL permissions from a file or directory

```
#setfacl -b <dir name>
```

**#setfacl -b /ktdir**

As we have removed acl for a group and a user, let's apply back some acl on ktdir and remove it using above command

```
[root@ktlinux ]# setfacl -m u:ktuser:rx,g:ktgroup:rx /ktdir
[root@ktlinux ]# getfacl ktdir
# file: ktdir
# owner: root
# group: root
user::rwx
user:ktuser:r-x
group::rwx
group:ktgroup:r-x
mask::rwx
other::rwx

[root@ktlinux ]# setfacl -b /ktdir
[root@ktlinux ]# getfacl ktdir
# file: ktdir
# owner: root
# group: root
user::rwx
group::rwx
other::rwx

[root@ktlinux ]# █
```

ACL can also be applied to a file in exactly similar way as we did for a directory.

This part confirms the end of USER ADMINISTRATION

# Network Configuration & Troubleshooting

## NETWORKING:

It is a connection between two or more machines to communicate with each other.

The basic requirements for Networking are:

- NIC (Network Interface Controller or Card)
- Media
- Topology
- Protocol
- IP Addresses

### **NIC (Network Interface Controller or Card)**

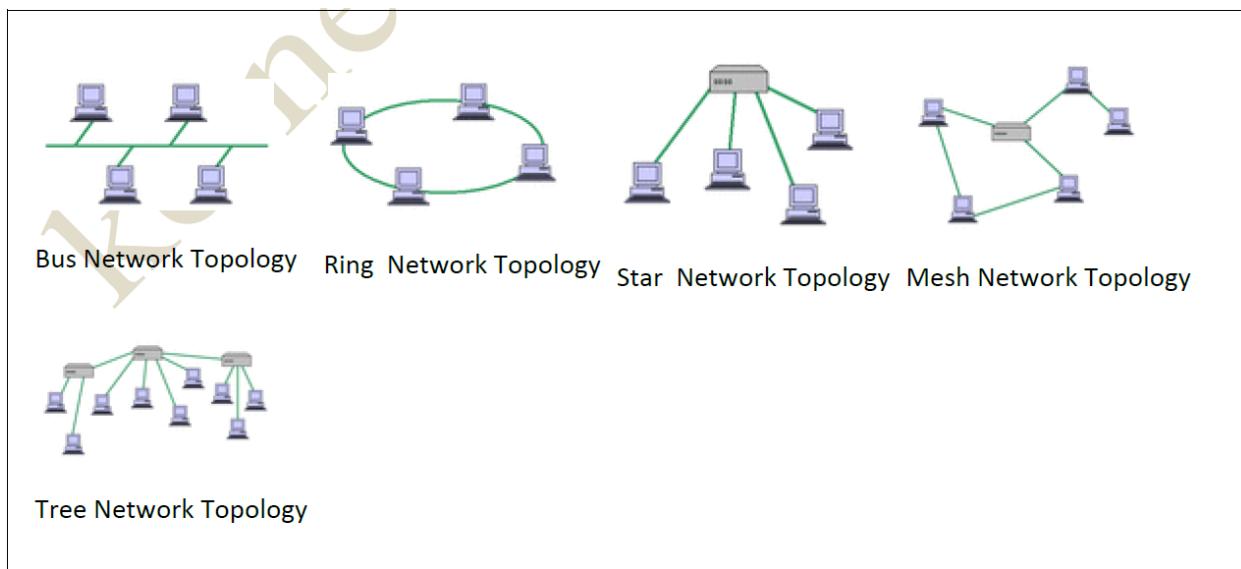
A network interface controller (also known as a network interface card, network adapter, LAN adapter and by similar terms) is a computer hardware component that connects a computer to a computer network. Each NIC will be having a unique MAC addresses (Media Access Control address) to avoid conflicts between same NIC adapters. In Linux these NIC adapter is represented by the word “eth”. Example if there are two Ethernet adapters in the system then it will be denoted as eth0, eth1, etc.

### **Media**

Media is the medium via which two different computer's NIC card will be connected. The best example for media is Cable. Example RJ 45, CAT 5 etc.

### **Topology**

Topology is the scheme or design in which the computers in the network will be connected to each other. Example for topology is Bus, Ring, star, mesh, tree topologies. The following pictures explain it better.



## 1. Protocol

A **network protocol** defines rules and conventions for communication between network devices. Protocols for computer networking all generally use packet switching techniques to send and receive messages in the form of *packets*.

Network protocols include mechanisms for devices to identify and make connections with each other, as well as formatting rules that specify how data is packaged into messages sent and received. Some protocols also support message acknowledgement and data compression designed for reliable and/or high-performance network communication. Hundreds of different computer network protocols have been developed each designed for specific purposes and environments.

Example for Protocols are **TCP/IP (Transmission Control Protocol)**, **UDP (User Datagram Protocol)**, **HTTP**. The most widely and regularly used protocols for transferring data are TCP and UDP. Let's analyze some basic differences between **TCP/IP** and **UDP**.

TCP/IP	UDP
Transmission Control Protocol	User Datagram Protocol
It is connection Oriented	Connectionless
Reliable	Non-Reliable
TCP Acknowledgement will be sent/received	No Acknowledgement for UDP
Slow Communication	Faster Communication
Protocol Number for TCP is <b>6</b>	Protocol Number for UDP is <b>17</b>
HTTP, FTP, SMTP uses TCP	DNS, DHCP uses UDP

## 2. IP ADDRESS

An IP address can be thought of as being similar to a phone number. Just as every person who communicates with a telephone is using a phone with a unique phone number, every computer that is on the Internet has a unique IP address. Not only on internet but within an organization every computer is assigned an IP address so that they can communicate with each other. Basically IP addressing is very deep concept. To understand the concept of IP address we need to understand some important aspect of IP Address which is

- IP Address Classes
- Subnet mask
- Gateway

The above concepts in IP Addressing are very important to understand networking clearly.

- IP Address Classes

The IP addresses are further broken down into classes. These classes are A, B, C, D, E and their possible ranges can be seen in Figure below.

Class	Start	End	Default subnet mask	CIDR
Class A	0.0.0.0	127.255.255.255	255.0.0.0	/8
Class B	128.0.0.0	191.255.255.255	255.255.0.0	/16
Class C	192.0.0.0	223.255.255.255	255.255.255.0	/24
Class D (multicast)	224.0.0.0	239.255.255.255		
Class E (reserved)	240.0.0.0	255.255.255.255		

\*CIDR - Classless Inter-Domain Routing

\* 127.0.0.0 to 127.255.255.255 is reserved for loopback address

### Loopback:

A special IP number (127.0.0.1), that is designated for the software loopback interface of a machine. 127.0.0.0 Through 127.255.255.255 is also reserved for loopback and is used for internal testing on local machines.

### Multicast:

Multicasting allows a single message to be sent to a group of recipients. **Emailing**, **teleconferencing**, are examples of multicasting. It uses the network infrastructure and standards to send messages.

### Subnet Mask:

A subnet mask allows users to identify which part of an IP address is reserved for the network and which part is available for host use. By looking at the IP address alone, especially now with classless inter-domain routing, users cannot tell which part of the address is which. Adding the subnet mask or netmask gives users all the information needed to calculate network and host portions of the address with ease. In summary, knowing the subnet mask can allow users to easily calculate whether IP addresses are on the same subnet or not.

A commonly used netmask is a 24-bit netmask as seen below.

Netmask:	255.	255.	255.	0
Binary:	11111111	11111111	11111111	00000000
Netmask length	8	16	24	--

### Gateway:

A gateway is a network point that provides entrance into another network. On the Internet, a node or stopping point can be either a gateway node or a host (end-point) node. Both the computers of Internet users and the computers that serve pages to users are host nodes. The computers that control traffic within your company's network or at your local Internet service provider (ISP) are gateway nodes.

For example let's say our network is 192.168. something and we want to send a file to other computer on 10.10.network, so we need a gateway to communicate between two computers of different networks.

Some Important configuration files/directories of network configurations

**#/etc/sysconfig/network-scripts** is the directory which keeps the configuration of network devices connected to the system.

```
[root@ktlinux network-scripts]# ls
ifcfg-eth0  ifdown-isdn  ifup-aliases  ifup-plusb  init.ipv6-global
ifcfg-lo    ifdown-post   ifup-bnep    ifup-post   net.hotplug
ifdown      ifdown-ppp   ifup-eth     ifup-ppp   network-functions
ifdown-bnep ifdown-routes  ifup-ippp   ifup-routes  network-functions-ipv6
ifdown-eth  ifdown-sit    ifup-ipv6   ifup-sit
ifdown-ippp ifdown-tunnel  ifup-isdn   ifup-tunnel
ifdown-ipv6 ifup          ifup-plip   ifup-wireless
```

**#/etc/sysconfig/network** is a file which keeps the information about the hostname assigned to the system. If you want to change the hostname permanently, you need to change the hostname in this file.

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# cat /etc/sysconfig/network
NETWORKING=yes
HOSTNAME=ktlinux.kt.com
[root@ktlinux ~]# █
```

**#/etc/hosts** a file which is responsible for resolving hostname into IP locally, in other word it acts as local DNS if DNS server is not accessible.

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# cat /etc/hosts
192.168.10.98  ktlinux.kt.com  ktlinux # Added by NetworkManager
127.0.0.1      localhost.localdomain  localhost
::1            ktlinux.kt.com  ktlinux localhost6.localdomain6 localhost6
```

**#/etc/resolv.conf** is a file which keeps the address of DNS server to which the clients will be accessing to resolve IP to hostname and hostname to IP.

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# cat /etc/resolv.conf
# Generated by NetworkManager
search kt.com
nameserver 192.168.10.98
```

#### LAB WORK:-

- To check the ip address assign to all the interfaces

**#ifconfig**

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# ifconfig
eth0      Link encap:Ethernet HWaddr 00:0C:29:3C:2F:1E
          inet addr:192.168.10.98 Bcast:192.168.10.255 Mask:255.255.255.0
          inet6 addr: fe80::20c:29ff:fe3c:2f1e/64 Scope:Link
            UP BROADCAST RUNNING MULTICAST MTU:1500 Metric:1
            RX packets:29686 errors:0 dropped:0 overruns:0 frame:0
            TX packets:1866 errors:0 dropped:0 overruns:0 carrier:0
            collisions:0 txqueuelen:1000
            RX bytes:2102329 (2.0 MiB) TX bytes:15481314 (14.7 MiB)

lo       Link encap:Local Loopback
          inet addr:127.0.0.1 Mask:255.0.0.0
          inet6 addr: ::1/128 Scope:Host
            UP LOOPBACK RUNNING MTU:16436 Metric:1
            RX packets:252 errors:0 dropped:0 overruns:0 frame:0
            TX packets:252 errors:0 dropped:0 overruns:0 carrier:0
            collisions:0 txqueuelen:0
            RX bytes:19656 (19.1 KiB) TX bytes:19656 (19.1 KiB)
```

- To check the IP of a particular interface

```
#ifconfig < adapter name >
```

```
#ifconfig eth0
```

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# ifconfig eth0
eth0      Link encap:Ethernet HWaddr 00:0C:29:3C:2F:1E
          inet addr:192.168.10.98 Bcast:192.168.10.255 Mask:255.255.255.0
          inet6 addr: fe80::20c:29ff:fe3c:2f1e/64 Scope:Link
            UP BROADCAST RUNNING MULTICAST MTU:1500 Metric:1
            RX packets:36560 errors:0 dropped:0 overruns:0 frame:0
            TX packets:3780 errors:0 dropped:0 overruns:0 carrier:0
            collisions:0 txqueuelen:1000
            RX bytes:2550422 (2.4 MiB) TX bytes:24606368 (23.4 MiB)
```

- To check the hostname of the system.

```
#hostname
```

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# hostname
ktlinux.kt.com
```

- To check IP of the host

```
#hostname -i
```

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# hostname -i
192.168.10.98 127.0.0.1
```

- To check whether DNS is resolving or not

**#host < ip address >**

**#host 192.168.10.95**

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# host 192.168.10.98
98.10.168.192.in-addr.arpa domain name pointer linux.kt.com.
```

**#host <hostname>**

**#host ktlinux.kt.com**

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# host ktlinux.kt.com.
ktlinux.kt.com has address 192.168.10.98
```

- Same with “nslookup” command

**#nslookup < ip address >**

**#nslookup < hostname >**

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# nslookup 192.168.10.98
Server:      192.168.10.98
Address:     192.168.10.98#53

98.10.168.192.in-addr.arpa      name = kt.com.
98.10.168.192.in-addr.arpa      name = linux.kt.com.
```

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# nlookup ktlinux.kt.com
bash: nlookup: command not found
[root@ktlinux ~]# nslookup ktlinux.kt.com
Server:      192.168.10.98
Address:     192.168.10.98#53

Name:    ktlinux.kt.com
Address: 192.168.10.98
```

- The most common command used to check DNS function is “**dig**”

**#dig <hostname>**

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# dig ktlinux.kt.com

; <>> DiG 9.7.0-P2-RedHat-9.7.0-5.P2.el6 <>> ktlinux.kt.com
;; global options: +cmd
;; Got answer:
;; ->>HEADER<<- opcode: QUERY, status: NOERROR, id: 11898
;; flags: qr aa rd ra; QUERY: 1, ANSWER: 1, AUTHORITY: 1, ADDITIONAL: 0

;; QUESTION SECTION:
;ktlinux.kt.com.           IN      A

;; ANSWER SECTION:
ktlinux.kt.com.      10800   IN      A      192.168.10.98

;; AUTHORITY SECTION:
ktlinux.kt.com.      10800   IN      NS     ktlinux.kt.com.
```

With ip address

**#dig -x <ip address>**

**#dig -x 192.168.10.98**

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# dig -x 192.168.10.98

; <>> DiG 9.7.0-P2-RedHat-9.7.0-5.P2.el6 <>> -x 192.168.10.98
;; global options: +cmd
;; Got answer:
;; ->>HEADER<<- opcode: QUERY, status: NOERROR, id: 4532
;; flags: qr aa rd ra; QUERY: 1, ANSWER: 2, AUTHORITY: 1, ADDITIONAL: 0

;; QUESTION SECTION:
;98.10.168.192.in-addr.arpa.    IN      PTR

;; ANSWER SECTION:
98.10.168.192.in-addr.arpa. 10800 IN      PTR      linux.kt.com.
98.10.168.192.in-addr.arpa. 10800 IN      PTR      kt.com.

;; AUTHORITY SECTION:
10.168.192.in-addr.arpa. 10800  IN      NS      linux.kt.com.
```

- Checking network connectivity using ping command

**#ping < ip address >**

**#ping 192.168.10.95**

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# ping 192.168.10.95
PING 192.168.10.95 (192.168.10.95) 56(84) bytes of data.
64 bytes from 192.168.10.95: icmp_seq=1 ttl=64 time=0.115 ms
64 bytes from 192.168.10.95: icmp_seq=2 ttl=64 time=0.140 ms
64 bytes from 192.168.10.95: icmp_seq=3 ttl=64 time=0.099 ms
64 bytes from 192.168.10.95: icmp_seq=4 ttl=64 time=0.111 ms
64 bytes from 192.168.10.95: icmp_seq=5 ttl=64 time=0.110 ms
^C
--- 192.168.10.95 ping statistics ---
5 packets transmitted, 5 received, 0% packet loss, time 4431ms
rtt min/avg/max/mdev = 0.099/0.115/0.140/0.013 ms
```

**Note:** use **ctrl + c** to stop pinging.

- To limit the pinging for specific number of counts

```
#ping -c <counts> <ip address>
```

```
#ping -c 2 192.168.10.95
```

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# ping -c 2 192.168.10.95
PING 192.168.10.95 (192.168.10.95) 56(84) bytes of data.
64 bytes from 192.168.10.95: icmp_seq=1 ttl=64 time=0.100 ms
64 bytes from 192.168.10.95: icmp_seq=2 ttl=64 time=0.106 ms

--- 192.168.10.95 ping statistics ---
2 packets transmitted, 2 received, 0% packet loss, time 1000ms
rtt min/avg/max/mdev = 0.100/0.103/0.106/0.003 ms
```

### Changing the hostname

- Check the current hostname with **hostname** command
- The syntax for changing the hostname is

```
#hostname <new name>
```

```
#hostname kernellinux.kt.com
```

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# hostname
ktlinux.kt.com
[root@ktlinux ~]# hostname kernellinux.kt.com
[root@ktlinux ~]# hostname
kernellinux.kt.com
[root@ktlinux ~]# █
```

**Note:** The above change is temporary and will be last only till you are logged in, if you want to change it permanently edit the **/etc/sysconfig/network** file and then logout and login to confirm the change.

**#vim /etc/sysconfig/network** delete the previous hostname and add the new name.

```
NETWORKING=yes  
HOSTNAME=kernellinux.kt.com
```

- Now logoff and logon and check the hostname

```
[root@kernellinux ~]# hostname  
kernellinux.kt.com  
[root@kernellinux ~]#
```

**Note:** Once you logout and login again the change will be permanent, observe the highlighted region above.

#### Assigning /Changing the IP Address:

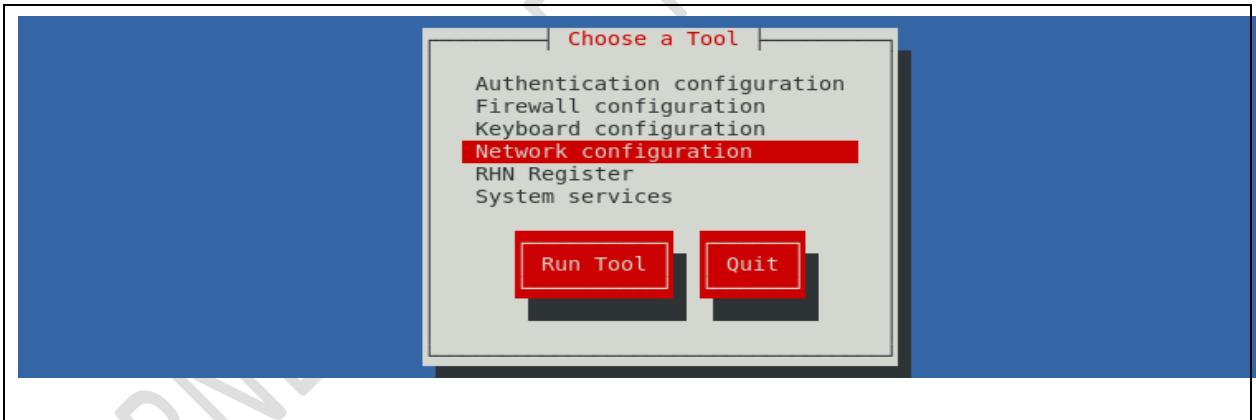
Steps for changing the IP Address.

- To change the IP Address use the following utility

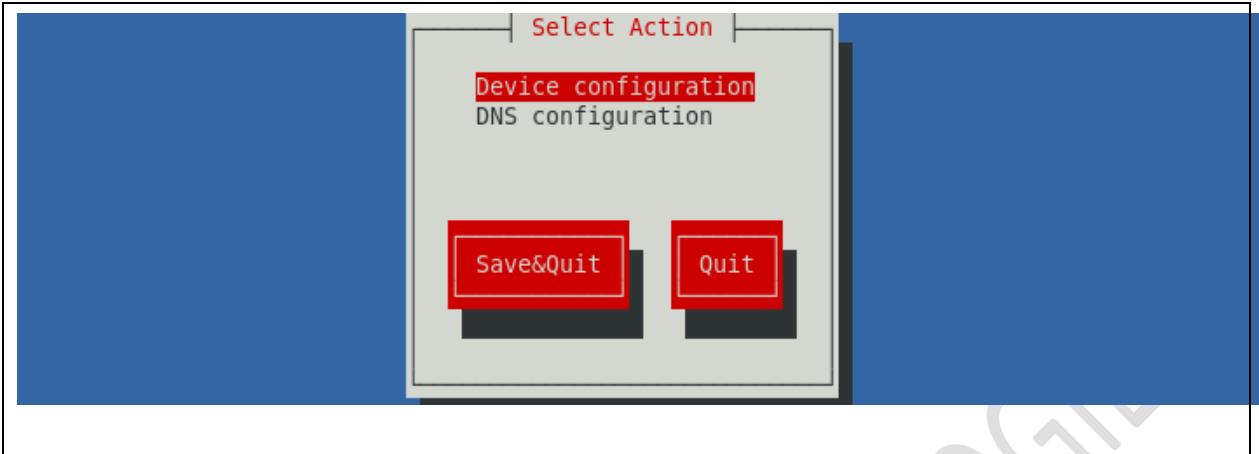
```
#setup or #system-config-network
```

- It will open a text base utility follow the steps below and change the ip address
- Restart the network service to apply the changes
- Make the network service starts after reboot.
- Let's begin with **setup**

```
#setup
```

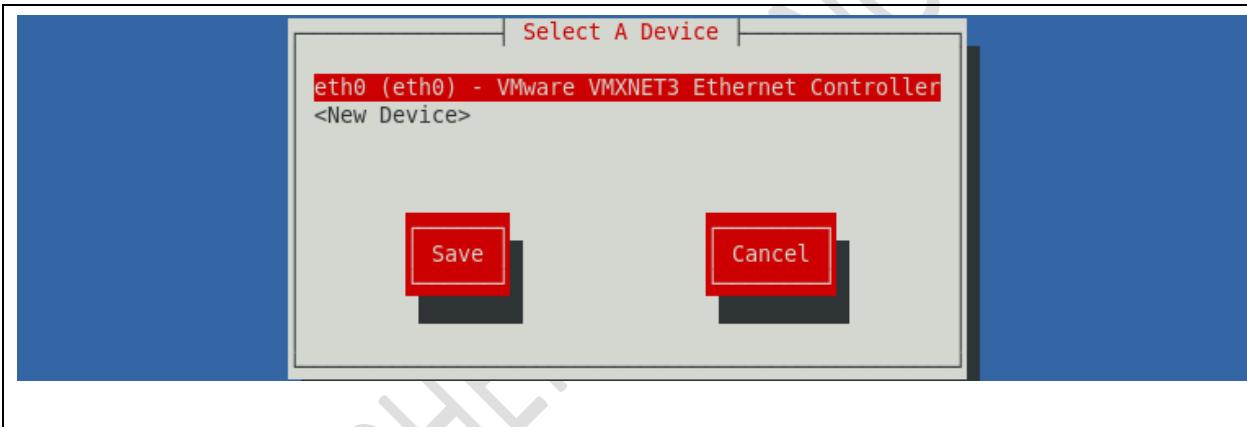


Move the cursor to Network configuration and press Enter

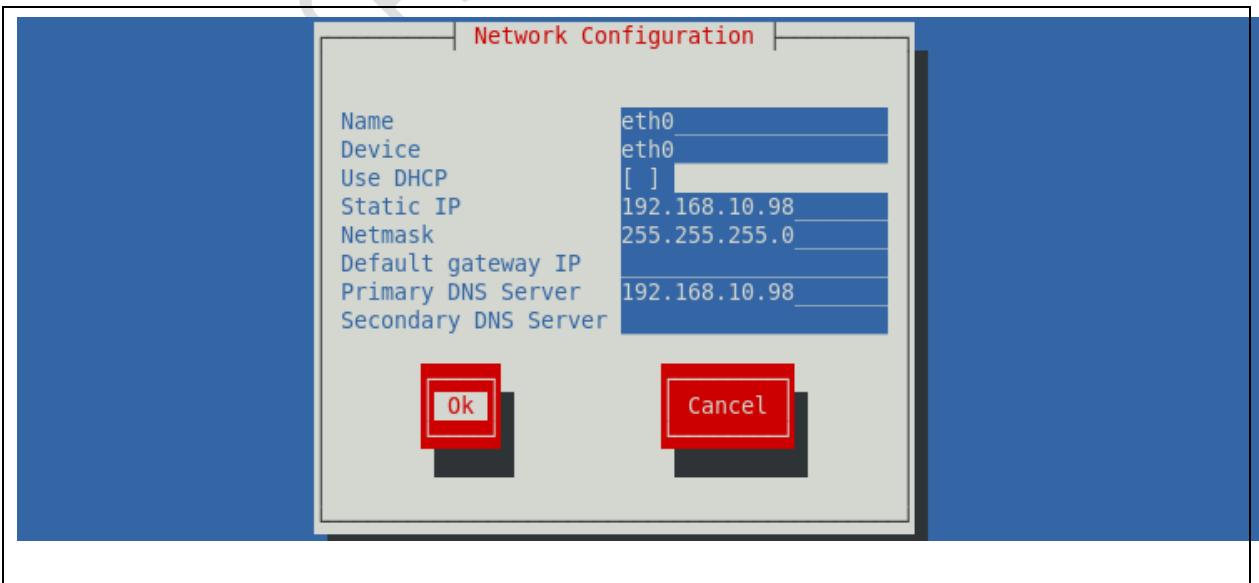


Move the cursor to Device configuration and press Enter

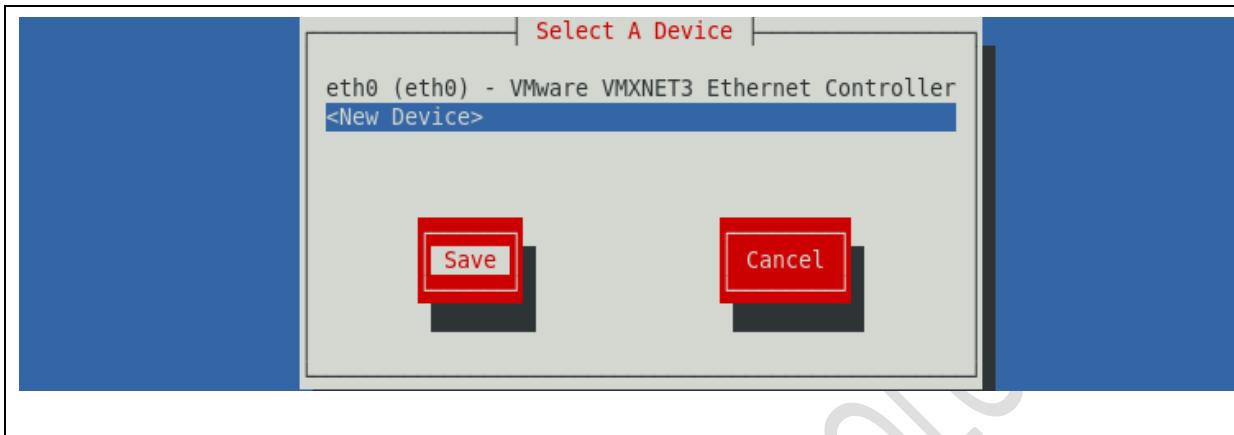
**Note:** If **system-config-network** command is used, it will directly take you to above position.



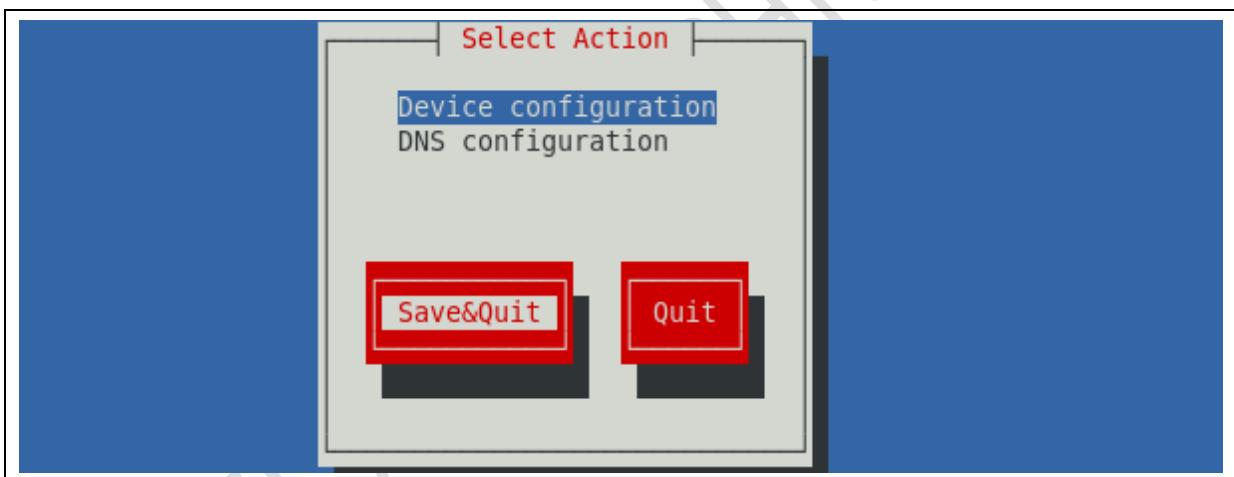
Now select the NIC adapter i.e. eth0 and press Enter



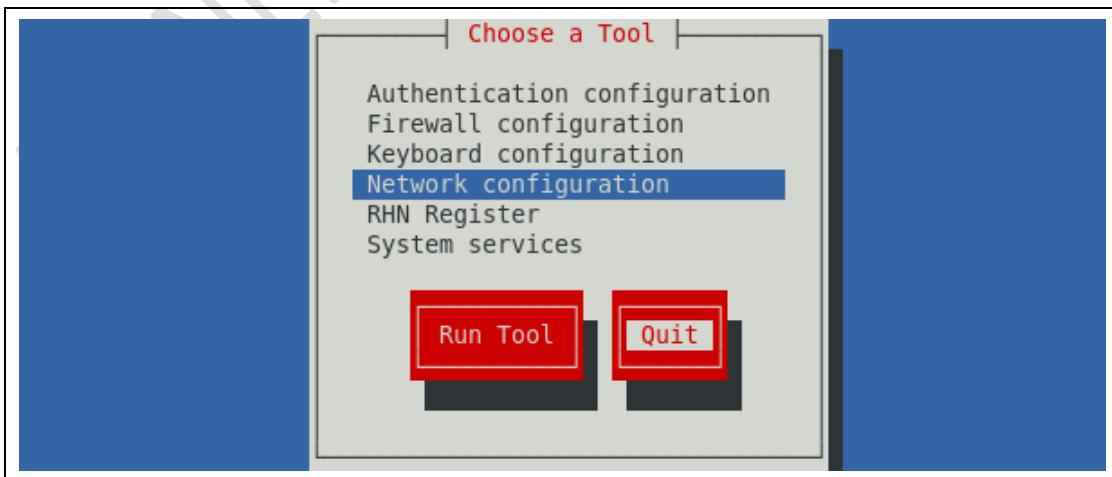
Assign the above ip address and other details as per your requirement, move the cursor to “OK” and press Enter



Move the cursor to “save” to save the changes in device configuration and press Enter.



Once again move the cursor to “Save&Quit” button and press Enter



Finally Move the cursor to “Quit” button and Press Enter to quit the utility.

- Now restart the network service and check for the ip address

**#service network restart**

If the change is not reflected with above service restart, restart the network manager

**#service NetworkManager restart (N and M are case sensitive)**

```
[root@kernellinux Desktop]# service network restart
Shutting down interface eth0: Device state: 3 (disconnected)
                                                [ OK ]
Shutting down loopback interface:          [ OK ]
Bringing up loopback interface:           [ OK ]
Bringing up interface eth0: Active connection state: activated
Active connection path: /org/freedesktop/NetworkManager/ActiveConnection/1
                                                [ OK ]
[root@kernellinux Desktop]# service NetworkManager restart
Stopping NetworkManager daemon:          [ OK ]
Setting network parameters...           [ OK ]
Starting NetworkManager daemon:          [ OK ]
[root@kernellinux Desktop]# ifconfig eth0
eth0      Link encap:Ethernet HWaddr 00:0C:29:3C:2F:1E
          inet addr:192.168.10.98 Bcast:192.168.10.255 Mask:255.255.255.0
          inet6 addr: fe80::20c:29ff:fe3c:2f1e/64 Scope:Link
            UP BROADCAST RUNNING MULTICAST MTU:1500 Metric:1
            RX packets:72158 errors:0 dropped:0 overruns:0 frame:0
            TX packets:17208 errors:0 dropped:0 overruns:0 carrier:0
            collisions:0 txqueuelen:1000
            RX bytes:4877336 (4.6 MiB) TX bytes:73419371 (70.0 MiB)
```

- The above picture confirms that we have successfully assigned an IP address to a machine.
- You can also check the functioning of newly assigned IP address by pinging it from other machines in the network.
- If it is not pinging from outside then check whether the cable is connected properly or not.
- If the server is in the remote location use **#mii-tool** to check whether the cable is connected or not

```
[root@kernellinux]# mii-tool
eth0: negotiated 100baseTx-FD, link ok
```

- To Know more about the NIC card/adapter use

**#ethtool <adapter name>**

```
[root@kernellinux Desktop]# ethtool eth0
Settings for eth0:
  Supported ports: [ TP ]
  Supported link modes:  1000baseT/Full
                         10000baseT/Full
  Supports auto-negotiation: No
  Advertised link modes:  Not reported
  Advertised pause frame use: No
  Advertised auto-negotiation: No
  Speed: 10000Mb/s
  Duplex: Full
  Port: Twisted Pair
  PHYAD: 0
  Transceiver: internal
  Auto-negotiation: off
  MDI-X: Unknown
  Supports Wake-on: uag
  Wake-on: d
  Link detected: yes ] _
```

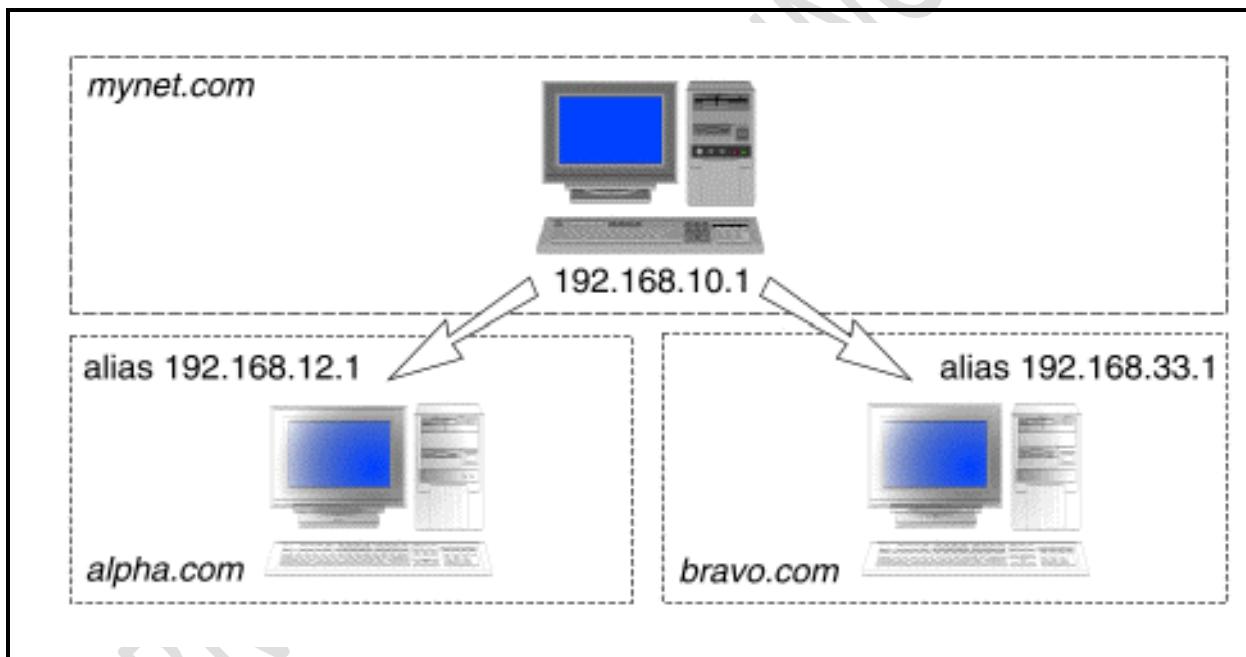
This sums up the Networking Chapter

# ADVANCED NETWORK CONFIGURATION

## IP ALIASING:

On a Linux server, one IP address is typically assigned to a NIC (Network Interface Card), i.e. ethernet card. The IP address assigned to the NIC serves as the primary IP. In a situation where you'll need multiple IP addresses (that connect to a same network), you may use IP aliasing feature of the Linux to map multiple IP addresses to a single NIC.

If your server has more than one IP address or is on more than one network interface, you can use the IP Aliasing function in order to control IP Aliasing on system network interfaces.



## Lab Work:-

To create an Alias Ip

- Turn off the Network Manager, as NM will not support IP Aliasing.

```
#service NetworkManager stop  
#chkconfig NetworkManager off
```

```
[root@ktcl1 ~]# service NetworkManager stop  
Stopping NetworkManager daemon:  
[root@ktcl1 ~]# service NetworkManager status  
NetworkManager is stopped
```

[ OK ]

```
[root@ktcl1 ~]# chkconfig NetworkManager off  
[root@ktcl1 ~]# chkconfig --list NetworkManager  
NetworkManager 0:off 1:off 2:off 3:off 4:off 5:off 6:off
```

- Create the Alias Ip by using following Command

```
#ifconfig eth0:0 192.168.10.45 netmask 255.255.255.0 up
```

```
[root@ktcl1 ~]# ifconfig eth0:0 192.168.10.45 netmask 255.255.255.0 up  
[root@ktcl1 ~]# ifconfig eth0:0  
eth0:0      Link encap:Ethernet HWaddr 52:54:00:4F:56:82  
            inet addr:192.168.10.45 Bcast:192.168.10.255 Mask:255.255.255.0  
            UP BROADCAST RUNNING MULTICAST MTU:1500 Metric:1  
            Interrupt:11
```

```
[root@ktcl1 ~]# ping 192.168.10.45  
PING 192.168.10.45 (192.168.10.45) 56(84) bytes of data.  
64 bytes from 192.168.10.45: icmp_seq=1 ttl=64 time=0.037 ms  
64 bytes from 192.168.10.45: icmp_seq=2 ttl=64 time=0.040 ms
```

- Make the changes permanent, else the configuration will be lost If the system is restarted
- Navigate to /etc/sysconfig/network-scripts and create a configuration file for alias ip

```
[root@ktcl1 ~]# cd /etc/sysconfig/network-scripts/  
[root@ktcl1 network-scripts]# ls  
ifcfg-eth0  ifdown-eth  ifdown-post  ifdown-tunnel  ifup-eth  ifup-ppp  
ifcfg-lo   ifdown-ipp  ifdown-ppp   ifup        ifup-ipp  ifup-pluso  
ifdown    ifdown-ipv6  ifdown-routes  ifup-aliases  ifup-ipv6 ifup-post  
ifdown-bnep ifdown-isdn  ifdown-sit   ifup-bnep    ifup-isdn ifup-ppp  
[root@ktcl1 network-scripts]# cp -p ifcfg-eth0 ifcfg-eth0:0
```

- Once copied edit it as follows

```
[root@ktcl1 network-scripts]# cat ifcfg-eth0:0
DEVICE="eth0:0"
NM_CONTROLLED="no"
ONBOOT=yes
TYPE=Ethernet
BOOTPROTO=none
IPADDR=192.168.10.45
PREFIX=24
DEFROUTE=yes
IPV4_FAILURE_FATAL=yes
IPV6INIT=no
```

- Reboot the system and check whether the ip address will be activated or not

```
eth0:0      Link encap:Ethernet  HWaddr 52:54:00:4F:56:82
            inet addr:192.168.10.45  Bcast:192.168.10.255  Mask:255.255.255.0
                      UP BROADCAST RUNNING MULTICAST  MTU:1500  Metric:1
                      Interrupt:11
```

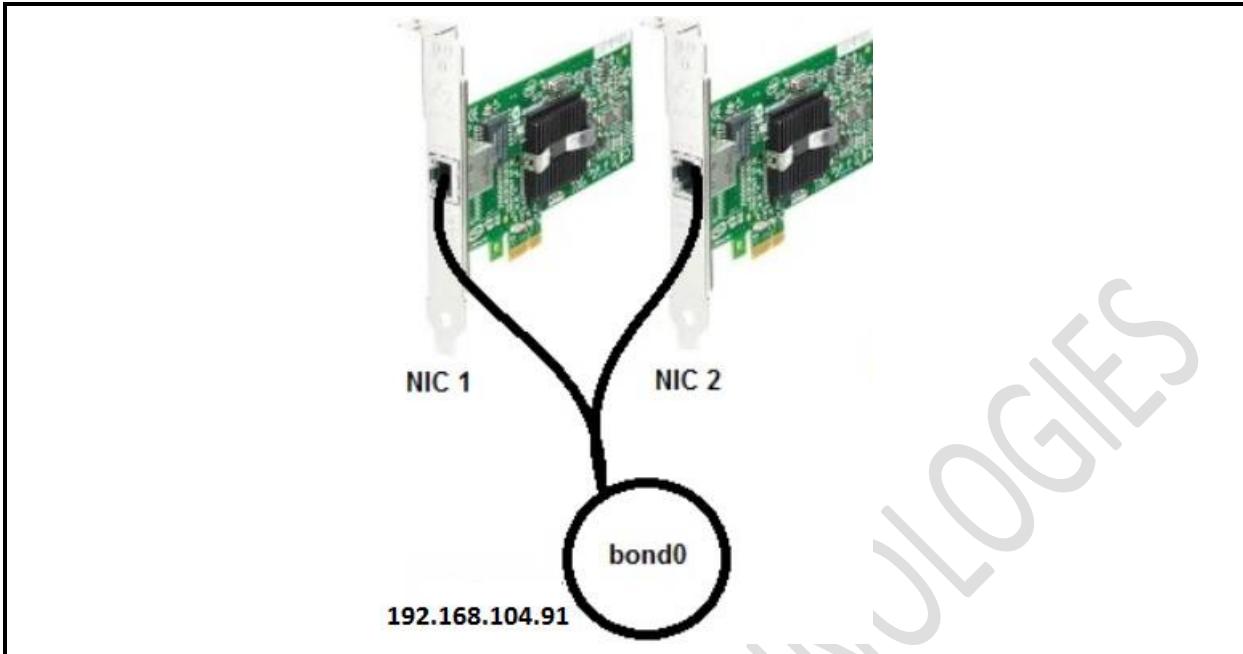
- Likewise you can make any number of aliases needed.

## NETWORK INTERFACE CONTROLLER (NIC) BONDING:

Using more than one hard drive to achieve better performance and fault tolerance is very common. Less well known is that it's also possible to aggregate more than one network interface into a single logical interface. In Linux, this is handled by the **bonding** driver. Benefits of doing this are much the same as the benefits of aggregating discs using RAID: if one device dies, your server carries on working and by using two devices in parallel, performance can be improved.

The first thing you need is two network interfaces. It's not entirely uncommon for a server to come with two: one gigabit card on the motherboard and a separate 100 Mb PCI card. You will need to ensure that the Linux kernel has recognised both interfaces. Running /sbin/ifconfig lists network interfaces.

Typically, you should see both *eth0* and *eth1* interfaces. If not, make sure that the modules for both interfaces have been compiled for your kernel and loaded. You may need to do something special if both devices use the same driver.



### Modes of Bonding (Types):

#### **mode=<value>**

Allows you to specify the bonding policy. The <value> can be one of:

- **balance-rr** or **0** — Sets a round-robin policy for fault tolerance and load balancing. Transmissions are received and sent out sequentially on each bonded slave interface beginning with the first one available.
- **active-backup** or **1** — Sets an active-backup policy for fault tolerance. Transmissions are received and sent out via the first available bonded slave interface. Another bonded slave interface is only used if the active bonded slave interface fails.
- **balance-xor** or **2** — Sets an XOR (exclusive-or) policy for fault tolerance and load balancing. Using this method, the interface matches up the incoming request's MAC address with the MAC address for one of the slave NICs. Once this link is established, transmissions are sent out sequentially beginning with the first available interface.
- **broadcast** or **3** — Sets a broadcast policy for fault tolerance. All transmissions are sent on all slave interfaces.
- **802.3ad** or **4** — Sets an IEEE 802.3ad dynamic link aggregation policy. Creates aggregation groups that share the same speed and duplex settings. Transmits and receives on all slaves in the active aggregator. Requires a switch that is 802.3ad compliant.

- **balance-tlb or 5** — Sets a Transmit Load Balancing (TLB) policy for fault tolerance and load balancing. The outgoing traffic is distributed according to the current load on each slave interface. Incoming traffic is received by the current slave. If the receiving slave fails, another slave takes over the MAC address of the failed slave.
- **balance-alb or 6** — Sets an Active Load Balancing (ALB) policy for fault tolerance and load balancing. Includes transmit and receive load balancing for IPV4 traffic. Receive load balancing is achieved through ARP negotiation

#### Lab Work:-

Step 1: Check whether the server is having two Ethernet adapters or not.

```
[root@ktcl8 ~]# ifconfig |grep -i eth*
[  eth0      Link encap:Ethernet HWaddr 52:54:00:A5:84:68
      inet addr:192.168.10.98 Bcast:192.168.10.255 Mask:255.255.255.0
      inet6 addr: fe80::5054:ff:fea5:8468/64 Scope:Link
            UP BROADCAST RUNNING MULTICAST MTU:1500 Metric:1
            RX packets:44139 errors:0 dropped:0 overruns:0 frame:0
            TX packets:199 errors:0 dropped:0 overruns:0 carrier:0
            Link encap:Ethernet HWaddr 52:54:00:35:F6:E2
            inet addr:192.168.1.98 Bcast:192.168.1.255 Mask:255.255.255.0
            inet6 addr: fe80::5054:ff:fe35:f6e2/64 Scope:Link
                  UP BROADCAST RUNNING MULTICAST MTU:1500 Metric:1
```

Step 2: Make sure that Network Manager is not running, if running stop the services for it and make it permanent.

```
[root@ktcl8 ~]# service NetworkManager status
NetworkManager (pid 27418) is running...
[root@ktcl8 ~]# service NetworkManager stop
Stopping NetworkManager daemon: [OK]
[root@ktcl8 ~]# chkconfig NetworkManager off
```

Step 3: Create a Bonding configuration file, say bond0 in /etc/sysconfig/network-scripts

```
[root@ktcl8 ~]# cd /etc/sysconfig/network-scripts/
[root@ktcl8 network-scripts]# vim ifcfg-bond0
```

```
DEVICE=bond0
TYPE=Ethernet
ONBOOT=yes
NM_CONTROLLED=no
BOOTPROTO=none
IPADDR=192.168.104.98
NETMASK=255.255.255.0
GATEWAY=192.168.104.1
IPV6INIT=no
USERCTL=no
BONDING_OPTS="mode=1 miimon=100"
```

#### **miimon=<time\_in\_milliseconds>**

Specifies (in milliseconds) how often MII link monitoring occurs. This is useful if high availability is required because MII is used to verify that the NIC is active.

To verify that the driver for a particular NIC supports the MII tool, type the following command as root:

```
# ethtool <interface_name> | grep "Link detected:"
[root@ktcl8 network-scripts]# ethtool eth0 | grep "Link detected:"
Link detected: yes
```

Step 4: Modify the eth0 and eth1 configuration file to make it participant of bond0

```
[root@ktcl8 ~]# vim /etc/sysconfig/network-scripts/ifcfg-eth0
DEVICE="eth0"
NM_CONTROLLED="yes"
ONBOOT=yes
HWADDR=52:54:00:A5:84:68
TYPE=Ethernet
MASTER=bond0
SLAVE=yes
BOOTPROTO=none
DEFROUTE=yes
IPV4_FAILURE_FATAL=yes
IPV6INIT=no
NAME="System eth0"
UUID=5fb06bd0-0bb0-7ffb-45f1-d6edd65f3e03
```

The same for eth1 as well

```
[root@ktcl8 ~]# vim /etc/sysconfig/network-scripts/ifcfg-eth1
```

```
DEVICE=eth1
HWADDR=52:54:00:35:f6:e2
NM_CONTROLLED=no
TYPE=Ethernet
BOOTPROTO=none
MASTER=bond0
SLAVE=yes
IPV4_FAILURE_FATAL=yes
IPV6INIT=no
NAME="System eth1"
UUID=bc516273-bb72-4263-9b2c-cb3bdffb3eed
ONBOOT=yes
USERCTL=no
```

Step 5: Load bond driver/module by creating the following file.

```
# vim /etc/modprobe.d/bonding.conf
```

```
[root@ktcl8 ~]# vim /etc/modprobe.d/bonding.conf
alias bond0 bonding
```

Step 6: Restart the network services and check on which adapter ip address is assigned

```
[root@ktcl8 ~]# service network restart
Shutting down interface bond0: [ OK ]
Shutting down loopback interface: [ OK ]
Bringing up loopback interface: [ OK ]
Bringing up interface bond0: [ OK ]
```

Find the ip address using ifconfig command

```
[root@ktcl8 ~]# ifconfig
bond0      Link encap:Ethernet HWaddr 52:54:00:A5:84:68
           inet addr:192.168.10.98 Bcast:192.168.10.255 Mask:255.255.255.0
                     inet6 addr: fe80::5054:ff:fea5:8468/64 Scope:Link
                           UP BROADCAST RUNNING MASTER MULTICAST MTU:1500 Metric:1
                           RX packets:127295 errors:0 dropped:0 overruns:0 frame:0
                           TX packets:2394 errors:0 dropped:0 overruns:0 carrier:0
                           collisions:0 txqueuelen:0
                           RX bytes:7650376 (7.2 MiB) TX bytes:319351 (311.8 KiB)

eth0       Link encap:Ethernet HWaddr 52:54:00:A5:84:68
           UP BROADCAST RUNNING SLAVE MULTICAST MTU:1500 Metric:1
           RX packets:84761 errors:0 dropped:0 overruns:0 frame:0
           TX packets:1585 errors:0 dropped:0 overruns:0 carrier:0
           collisions:0 txqueuelen:1000
           RX bytes:5168863 (4.9 MiB) TX bytes:216528 (211.4 KiB)
           Interrupt:11

eth1       Link encap:Ethernet HWaddr 52:54:00:A5:84:68
           UP BROADCAST RUNNING SLAVE MULTICAST MTU:1500 Metric:1
           RX packets:42534 errors:0 dropped:0 overruns:0 frame:0
           TX packets:809 errors:0 dropped:0 overruns:0 carrier:0
           collisions:0 txqueuelen:1000
```

Step 7: check the status of bonding in **/proc/net/bonding/bond0** file

```
[root@ktcl8 ~]# cat /proc/net/bonding/bond0
```

Ethernet Channel Bonding Driver: v3.6.0 (September 26, 2009)

Bonding Mode: fault-tolerance (active-backup)

Primary Slave: None

Currently Active Slave: eth0

MII Status: up

MII Polling Interval (ms): 100

Up Delay (ms): 0

Down Delay (ms): 0

Slave Interface: eth0

MII Status: up

Speed: 100 Mbps

Duplex: full

Link Failure Count: 0

Permanent HW addr: 52:54:00:32:59:ea

Slave queue ID: 0

Slave Interface: eth1

MII Status: up

Speed: 100 Mbps

Duplex: full

Link Failure Count: 0

Permanent HW addr: 52:54:00:11:44:ff

Slave queue ID: 0

Slave Interface: eth2

MII Status: up

Speed: 100 Mbps

Duplex: full

Link Failure Count: 0

Permanent HW addr: 52:54:00:13:e8:cf

Slave queue ID: 0

To Change the active slave use the following command,

**#ifenslave -c bond0 eth1**

```
[root@ktcl8 ~]# cat /proc/net/bonding/bond0
Ethernet Channel Bonding Driver: v3.6.0 (September 26, 2009)

Bonding Mode: fault-tolerance (active-backup)
Primary Slave: None
Currently Active Slave: eth0
MII Status: up
MII Polling Interval (ms): 100
Up Delay (ms): 0
Down Delay (ms): 0
```

```
[root@ktcl8 ~]# ifenslave -c bond0 eth1
[root@ktcl8 ~]# cat /proc/net/bonding/bond0
Ethernet Channel Bonding Driver: v3.6.0 (September 26, 2009)

Bonding Mode: fault-tolerance (active-backup)
Primary Slave: None
Currently Active Slave: eth1
MII Status: up
MII Polling Interval (ms): 100
Up Delay (ms): 0
Down Delay (ms): 0
```

To detach or remove a adapter from bonding use

**#ifenslave -d bond0 eth1**

```
[root@ktcl8 ~]# ifenslave -d bond0 eth1
[root@ktcl8 ~]# cat /proc/net/bonding/bond0
Ethernet Channel Bonding Driver: v3.6.0 (September 26, 2009)

Bonding Mode: fault-tolerance (active-backup)
Primary Slave: None
Currently Active Slave: eth0
MII Status: up
MII Polling Interval (ms): 100
Up Delay (ms): 0
Down Delay (ms): 0
```

Observe the active slave has changed from eth1 to eth0

To attach the adapter, reload or restart the network service. Downtime of some milliseconds may be experienced when the service is reloaded/restarted.

```
[root@ktcl8 ~]# service network reload
[root@ktcl8 ~]# cat /proc/net/bonding/bond0
Ethernet Channel Bonding Driver: v3.6.0 (September 26, 2009)

Bonding Mode: fault-tolerance (active-backup)
Primary Slave: None
Currently Active Slave: eth0
MII Status: up
MII Polling Interval (ms): 100
Up Delay (ms): 0
Down Delay (ms): 0

Slave Interface: eth0
MII Status: up
Speed: 100 Mbps
Duplex: full
Link Failure Count: 0
Permanent HW addr: 52:54:00:32:59:ea
Slave queue ID: 0

Slave Interface: eth1
MII Status: up
Speed: 100 Mbps
Duplex: full
Link Failure Count: 0
Permanent HW addr: 52:54:00:11:44:ff
Slave queue ID: 0

Slave Interface: eth2
MII Status: up
Speed: 100 Mbps
Duplex: full
Link Failure Count: 0
Permanent HW addr: 52:54:00:13:e8:cf
Slave queue ID: 0
```

To set a round-robin policy for fault tolerance and load balancing, the only change will be in the ifcfg-bond0 file:

```
[root@ktcl8 ~]# cd /etc/sysconfig/network-scripts/
[root@ktcl8 network-scripts]# vim ifcfg-bond0

DEVICE=bond0
TYPE=Ethernet
ONBOOT=yes
NM_CONTROLLED=no
BOOTPROTO=none
IPADDR=192.168.104.81
NETMASK=255.255.255.0
GATEWAY=192.168.104.1
IPV6INIT=no
USERCTL=no
BONDING_OPTS="mode=0 miimon=100"
```

**Check the bond0 configuration:**

```
[root@ktcl8 ~]# cat /proc/net/bonding/bond0
Ethernet Channel Bonding Driver: v3.6.0 (September 26, 2009)

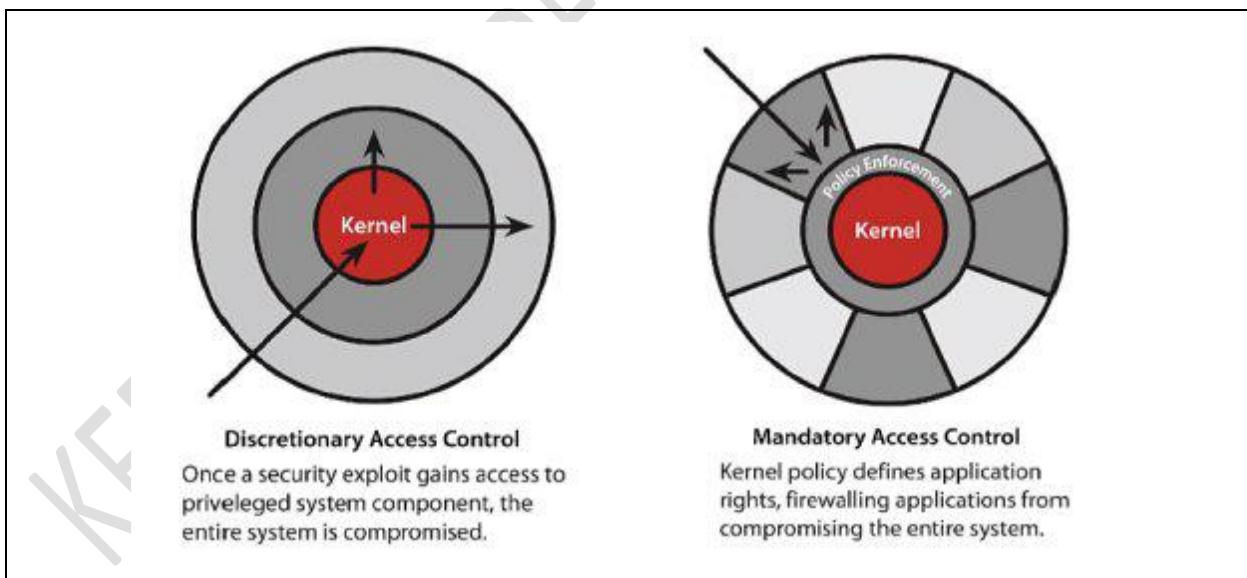
Bonding Mode: load balancing (round-robin)
MII Status: up
MII Polling Interval (ms): 0
Up Delay (ms): 0
Down Delay (ms): 0

Slave Interface: eth0
MII Status: up
Speed: 100 Mbps
Duplex: full
Link Failure Count: 0
Permanent HW addr: 52:54:00:fd:06:81
Slave queue ID: 0

Slave Interface: eth1
MII Status: up
Speed: 100 Mbps
Duplex: full
Link Failure Count: 0
Permanent HW addr: 52:54:00:a7:22:c7
Slave queue ID: 0
```

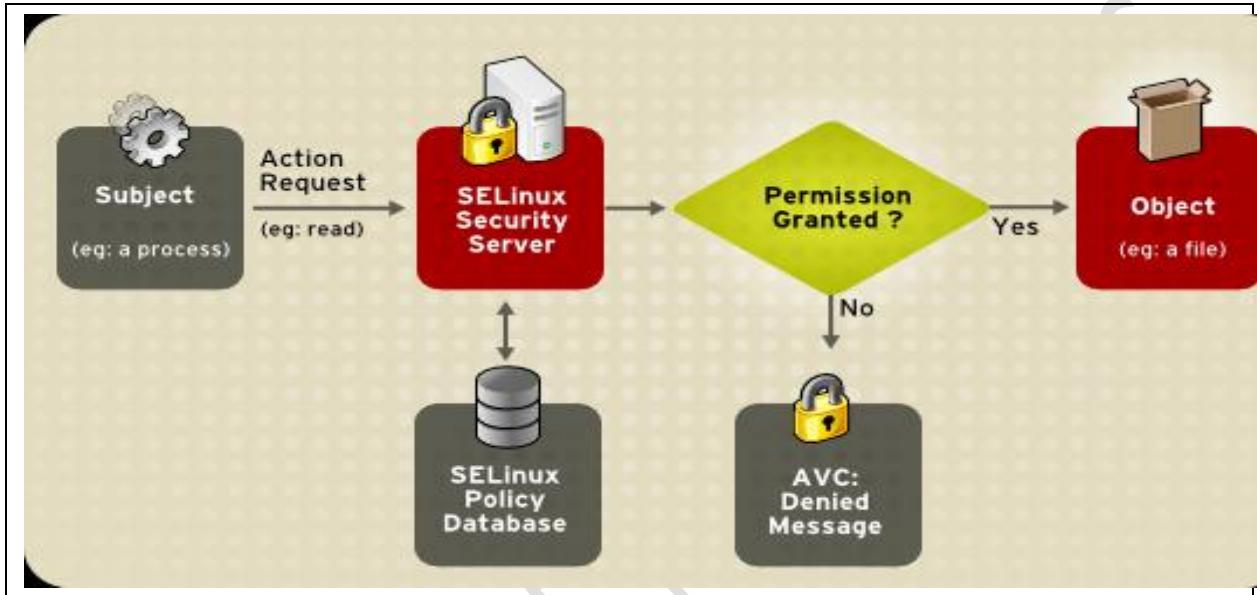
### Basic SELinux Security Concepts:

- SELinux is a security enhancement to Linux that allows users and administrators more control over which users and applications can access which resources, such as files. Standard Linux access controls, such as file modes (-rwxr-xr-x) are modifiable by the user and applications that the user runs, whereas SELinux access controls are determined by a policy loaded on the system and not changeable by careless users or misbehaving applications.
- SELinux also adds finer granularity to access controls. Instead of only being able to specify who can read, write or execute a file, for example, SELinux lets you specify who can unlink, append only, and move a file and so on. SELinux allows you to specify access to many resources other than files as well, such as network resources and inter-process communication (IPC).
- SELinux provides a flexible **Mandatory Access Control (MAC)** system built into the Linux kernel. Under standard Linux **Discretionary Access Control (DAC)**, an application or process running as a user (UID or SUID) has the user's permissions to objects such as files, sockets, and other processes. Running a MAC kernel protects the system from malicious or flawed applications that can damage or destroy the system. The following picture explains more detailed about both Access controls.



- The SELinux Decision Making Process  
When a subject, (for example, an application), attempts to access an object (for example, a file), the policy enforcement server in the kernel checks an *access vector*

*cache* (AVC), where subject and object permissions are cached. If a decision cannot be made based on data in the AVC, the request continues to the security server, which looks up the *security context* of the application and the file in a matrix. Permission is then granted or denied, with an avc: denied message detailed in /var/log/messages if permission is denied. The security context of subjects and objects is applied from the installed policy, which also provides the information to populate the security server's matrix.



- Important SELinux configuration Files
  - /etc/selinux/config** is the main configuration file of **SELinux**.
  - /etc/sysconfig/selinux** contains a symbolic link to the actual configuration file, **/etc/selinux/config**.

**Note:** If you want to turn on or off the SELinux security you need to make changes in the main configuration file i.e. **/etc/selinux/config** file. Well we'll see it later in this chapter.

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# cat /etc/selinux/config

# This file controls the state of SELinux on the system.
# SELINUX= can take one of these three values:
#       enforcing - SELinux security policy is enforced.
#       permissive - SELinux prints warnings instead of enforcing.
#       disabled - No SELinux policy is loaded.
SELINUX=enforcing
# SELINUXTYPE= can take one of these two values:
#       targeted - Targeted processes are protected,
#       mls - Multi Level Security protection.
SELINUXTYPE=targeted
```

#### Modes of SELinux:

- There are three modes in which SELinux can be at a time, they are Enforcing, Permissive and Disabled
  - Enforcing  
Enable and enforce the SELinux security policy on the system, denying access and logging actions
  - Permissive  
Permissive mode is similar to Debugging Mode. In Permissive Mode, SELinux policies and rules are applied to subjects and objects, but actions (for example, Access Control denials) are not affected. The biggest advantage of Permissive Mode is that log files and error messages are generated based on the SELinux policy implemented.
  - Disabled  
SELinux is turned off and no warn and log messages will be generated and stored.

#### **Booleans:**

- Booleans are variables that can either be set as true or false. Booleans enhance the effect of SELinux policies by letting the system administrator fine tune a policy. A policy may protect a certain daemon or service by applying various access control rules. In real world scenarios, a system administrator would not like to implement all the access controls specified in the policy.

#### **SELinux Policy:**

- The SELinux Policy is the set of rules that guide the SELinux security engine. It defines *types* for file objects and *domains* for processes. It uses roles to limit the domains that can be entered, and has user identities to specify the roles that can be attained. In essence, types and domains are equivalent, the difference being that types apply to objects while domains apply to processes.

#### **SELinux Context:**

- Processes and files are labeled with a SELinux context that contains additional information, such as a SELinux user, role, type, and, optionally, a level.

#### **LAB WORK:-**

To check the SELinux Mode

```
#getenforce
```

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# getenforce  
Enforcing  
[root@ktlinux ~]# █
```

### #sestatus

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# sestatus  
SELinux status:                 enabled  
SELinuxfs mount:               /selinux  
Current mode:                  enforcing  
Mode from config file:        enforcing  
Policy version:                24  
Policy from config file:      targeted  
[root@ktlinux ~]# █
```

Display the SELinux context of a file or directory.

- To display the context of a file the syntax is

### #ls -Z <filename>

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# ls  
anaconda-ks.cfg  Documents  install.log          ktfile  Pictures  Templates  
Desktop          Downloads  install.log.syslog    Music   Public   Videos  
[root@ktlinux ~]# ls -Z ktfile  
-rw-r--r--. root root unconfined_u:object_r:admin_home_t:s0 ktfile  
[root@ktlinux ~]# █
```

- To display the context of a directory the syntax is

### #ls -ldZ <directory name>

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# ls -ldZ Documents  
drwxr-xr-x. root root unconfined_u:object_r:admin_home_t:s0 Documents  
[root@ktlinux ~]# █
```

Displaying the SELinux Context of a Process

- To display the context of a process running in the system, the syntax is

### #ps -efZ |grep <process name>

```
#ps -efZ |grep http
```

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# ps -efZ |grep http  
unconfined_u:unconfined_r:unconfined_t:s0-s0:c0.c1023 root 24940 10112 0 17:37 pts/0 00:00:00 grep http  
[root@ktlinux ~]#
```

### Changing the SELinux Context of a file or directory

- To change the context of the file the steps are
  - Check the existing context of the file by

```
#ls -ldZ <filename>
```

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# ls -ldZ ktfile  
-rw-r--r--. root root unconfined_u:object_r:admin_home_t:s0 ktfile
```

Observe that the type is **admin\_home\_t**, let's change it to **public\_content\_t**, so that it will be available for all users.

- To change the context of a file or directory the syntax is

```
#chcon -t <argument> <file/dir name>
```

```
#chcon -t public_content_t ktfile
```

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# chcon -t public_content_t ktfile  
[root@ktlinux ~]# ls -ldZ ktfile  
-rw-r--r--. root root unconfined_u:object_r:public_content_t:s0 ktfile  
[root@ktlinux ~]#
```

- To change the context for a directory and its contents
- Check the context of both directory and its contents

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# ls -ldZ ktdir  
drwxr-xr-x. root root system_u:object_r:admin_home_t:s0 ktdir  
[root@ktlinux ~]# ls -lZ ktdir  
-rw-r--r--. root root system_u:object_r:admin_home_t:s0 file1  
-rw-r--r--. root root system_u:object_r:admin_home_t:s0 file2  
-rw-r--r--. root root system_u:object_r:admin_home_t:s0 file3  
-rw-r--r--. root root system_u:object_r:admin_home_t:s0 file4  
-rw-r--r--. root root system_u:object_r:admin_home_t:s0 file5  
[root@ktlinux ~]#
```

- To change the context for a directory and its contents, the syntax is

```
#chcon -R -t <argument> <dir name>
```

```
#chcon -R -t public_content_t ktdir
```

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# chcon -R -t public_content_t ktdir
[root@ktlinux ~]# ls -ldZ ktdir
drwxr-xr-x. root root system_u:object_r:public_content_t:s0 ktdir
[root@ktlinux ~]# ls -lZ ktdir
-rw-r--r--. root root system_u:object_r:public_content_t:s0 file1
-rw-r--r--. root root system_u:object_r:public_content_t:s0 file2
-rw-r--r--. root root system_u:object_r:public_content_t:s0 file3
-rw-r--r--. root root system_u:object_r:public_content_t:s0 file4
-rw-r--r--. root root system_u:object_r:public_content_t:s0 file5
[root@ktlinux ~]# █
```

### Restoring back the modified SELinux context to its default value

- To restore the modified/changed SELinux context of a file to its default form, the syntax is

```
#restorecon -v <filename>
```

```
#restorecon -v ktfile
```

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# ls -ldZ ktfile
-rw-r--r--. root root unconfined_u:object_r:public_content_t:s0 ktfile
[root@ktlinux ~]# restorecon -v ktfile
restorecon reset /root/ktfile context unconfined_u:object_r:public_content_t:s0->system_u:object_r:admin_home_t:s0
[root@ktlinux ~]# ls -ldZ ktfile
-rw-r--r--. root root system_u:object_r:admin_home_t:s0 ktfile
[root@ktlinux ~]# █
```

- To restore back the same of a directory with its contents, the syntax is

```
#restorecon -Rv <dir name >
```

```
#restorecon -Rv ktdir
```

```
drwxr-xr-x. root root system_u:object_r:public_content_t:s0 ktdir
[root@ktlinux ~]# ls -lZ ktdir
-rw-r--r--. root root system_u:object_r:public_content_t:s0 file1
-rw-r--r--. root root system_u:object_r:public_content_t:s0 file2
-rw-r--r--. root root system_u:object_r:public_content_t:s0 file3
-rw-r--r--. root root system_u:object_r:public_content_t:s0 file4
-rw-r--r--. root root system_u:object_r:public_content_t:s0 file5
[root@ktlinux ~]# restorecon -Rv ktdir
restorecon reset /root/ktdir context system_u:object_r:public_content_t:s0->system_u:object_r:admin_home_t:s0
restorecon reset /root/ktdir/file4 context system_u:object_r:public_content_t:s0->system_u:object_r:admin_home_t:s0
restorecon reset /root/ktdir/file3 context system_u:object_r:public_content_t:s0->system_u:object_r:admin_home_t:s0
restorecon reset /root/ktdir/file1 context system_u:object_r:public_content_t:s0->system_u:object_r:admin_home_t:s0
restorecon reset /root/ktdir/file5 context system_u:object_r:public_content_t:s0->system_u:object_r:admin_home_t:s0
restorecon reset /root/ktdir/file2 context system_u:object_r:public_content_t:s0->system_u:object_r:admin_home_t:s0
[root@ktlinux ~]# ls -ldZ ktdir
drwxr-xr-x. root root system_u:object_r:admin_home_t:s0 ktdir
[root@ktlinux ~]# ls -lZ ktdir
-rw-r--r--. root root system_u:object_r:admin_home_t:s0 file1
-rw-r--r--. root root system_u:object_r:admin_home_t:s0 file2
-rw-r--r--. root root system_u:object_r:admin_home_t:s0 file3
-rw-r--r--. root root system_u:object_r:admin_home_t:s0 file4
-rw-r--r--. root root system_u:object_r:admin_home_t:s0 file5
```

**Note:** For restoring the context of only the dir except its contents do not add “R” in the command.

### Changing the Modes of SELinux

- To change the mode of SELinux the syntax is

```
#setenforce <option>
```

Options used are 0 or 1 (Where 0 means Permissive and 1 means Enforcing)

- To change the SELinux Mode to permissive

```
#setenforce 0
```

- Verify it by **getenforce** or **sestatus** command.

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# getenforce  
Enforcing  
[root@ktlinux ~]# setenforce 0  
[root@ktlinux ~]# getenforce  
Permissive  
[root@ktlinux ~]# sestatus  
SELinux status:          enabled  
SELinuxfs mount:         /selinux  
Current mode:            permissive  
Mode from config file:  enforcing  
Policy version:          24  
Policy from config file: targeted  
[root@ktlinux ~]# █
```

- To change the SELinux Mode back to Enforcing mode

**#setenforce 1**

- Verify the change

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# getenforce  
Permissive  
[root@ktlinux ~]# setenforce 1  
[root@ktlinux ~]# getenforce  
Enforcing  
[root@ktlinux ~]# sestatus  
SELinux status:          enabled  
SELinuxfs mount:         /selinux  
Current mode:            enforcing  
Mode from config file:  enforcing  
Policy version:          24  
Policy from config file: targeted  
[root@ktlinux ~]# █
```

#### Disabling and Enabling the SELinux Security:

- To disable the SELinux protection or to change it to **disabled** Mode
- Edit the `/etc/selinux/config` file and change `SELINUX=disabled`
- Whenever changing the mode of **SELinux** from **Enforcing/Permissive** to **Disabled** or **Disabled** to **Permissive/Enforcing**, you need to restart the system so that the changes can take effect.
- First check the current status of **SELinux** and the configuration file.

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# getenforce  
Enforcing  
[root@ktlinux ~]# cat /etc/selinux/config  
  
# This file controls the state of SELinux on the system.  
# SELINUX= can take one of these three values:  
#       enforcing - SELinux security policy is enforced.  
#       permissive - SELinux prints warnings instead of enforcing.  
#       disabled - No SELinux policy is loaded.  
SELINUX=enforcing  
# SELINUXTYPE= can take one of these two values:  
#       targeted - Targeted processes are protected,  
#       mls - Multi Level Security protection.  
SELINUXTYPE=targeted
```

- Now, edit the configuration file, restart the computer and check the status.

```
#vim /etc/selinux/config
```

```
#init 6 (to reboot the system)
```

```
# This file controls the state of SELinux on the system.  
# SELINUX= can take one of these three values:  
#       enforcing - SELinux security policy is enforced.  
#       permissive - SELinux prints warnings instead of enforcing.  
#       disabled - No SELinux policy is loaded.  
SELINUX=disabled  
# SELINUXTYPE= can take one of these two values:  
#       targeted - Targeted processes are protected,  
#       mls - Multi Level Security protection.  
SELINUXTYPE=targeted
```

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# getenforce  
Disabled  
[root@ktlinux ~]# sestatus  
SELinux status:                 disabled  
[root@ktlinux ~]#
```

To Enable it back the procedure is exactly same as above, instead of **SELINUX=disabled** change it to **SELINUX=enforcing** or **permissive**. Don't forget to restart the system, unless the system is rebooted the changes will not take effect.

#### Checking the Booleans and modifying it:

- To see the Booleans of a particular service, the syntax is

```
#getsebool -a |grep <service name >
```

```
#getsebool -a |grep ftp
```

**Note1:** if **grep** is not used it will list Booleans for all the services in the system and output will be very lengthy.

**Note2:** Booleans can only be checked and changed when **SELinux** is in enforcing or Permissive modes; if the SELinux is in disabled mode Booleans cannot be modified.

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# getenforce  
Enforcing  
[root@ktlinux ~]# getsebool -a |grep ftp  
allow_ftpd_anon_write --> off  
allow_ftpd_full_access --> off  
allow_ftpd_use_cifs --> off  
allow_ftpd_use_nfs --> off  
ftp_home_dir --> off  
ftpd_connect_db --> off  
httpd_enable_ftp_server --> off  
sftpd_anon_write --> off  
sftpd_enable_homedirs --> off  
sftpd_full_access --> off  
sftpd_write_ssh_home --> off  
tftp_anon_write --> off  
[root@ktlinux ~]# █
```

- To change any Boolean just copy the Boolean and give the option (the only possible option for a Boolean to enable and disable is **on/off**). The syntax for changing Boolean value is

```
#setsebool < Boolean > < option (on/off) >
```

```
#setsebool allow_ftpd_anon_write on
```

Verify the change with **getsebool** command.

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# setsebool allow_ftpd_anon_write on  
[root@ktlinux ~]# getsebool -a |grep ftp  
allow_ftpd_anon_write --> on  
allow_ftpd_full_access --> off  
allow_ftpd_use_cifs --> off  
allow_ftpd_use_nfs --> off  
ftp_home_dir --> off  
ftpd_connect_db --> off  
httpd_enable_ftp_server --> off  
sftpd_anon_write --> off  
sftpd_enable_homedirs --> off  
sftpd_full_access --> off  
sftpd_write_ssh_home --> off  
tftp_anon_write --> off  
[root@ktlinux ~]# █
```

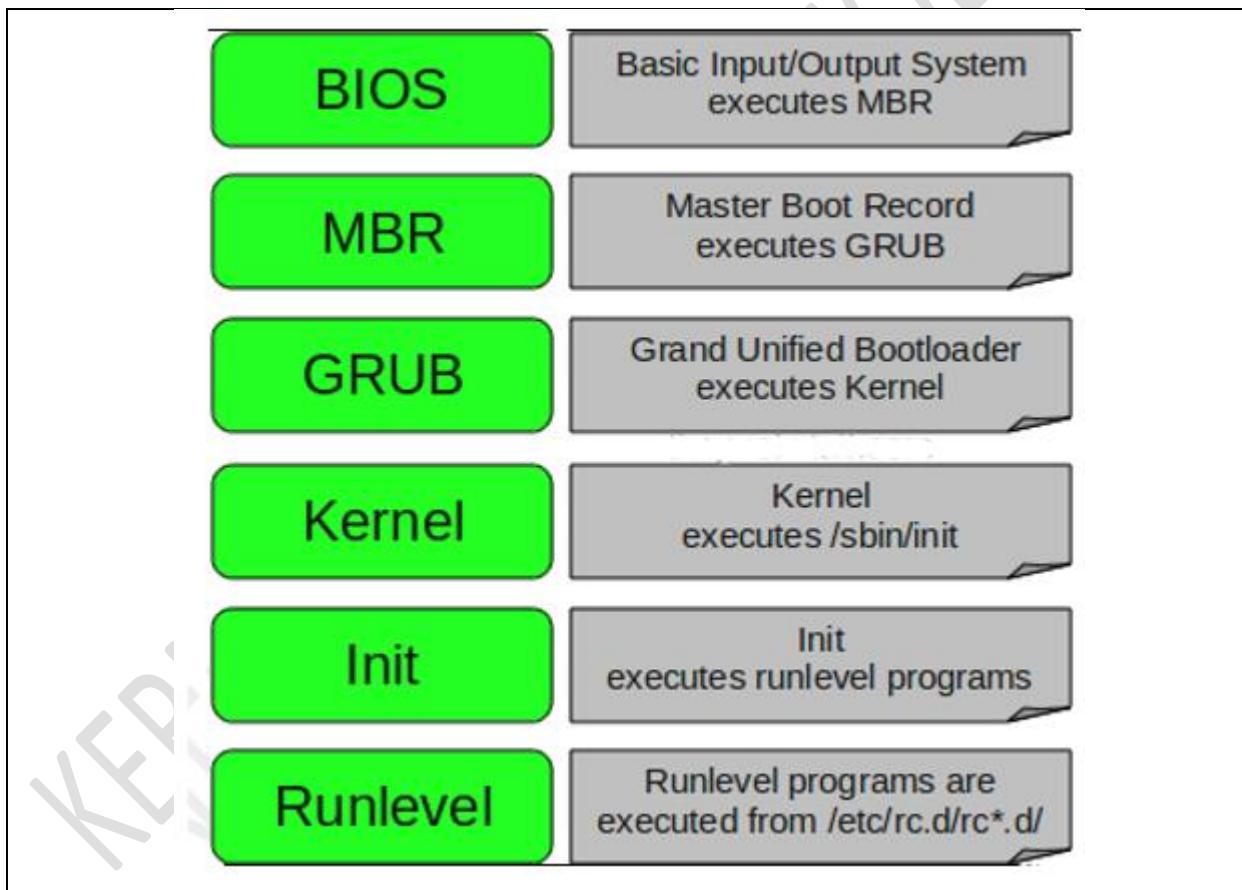
Hope you got the SELinux concept cleared by this time. Keep working on it

# BOOTING PROCEDURE AND KERNEL PARAMETER

Press the power button on your system, and after few moments you see the Linux login prompt.

Have you ever wondered what happens behind the scenes from the time you press the power button until the Linux login prompt appears?

The following are the 6 high level stages of a typical Linux boot process.



## 1. BIOS

- BIOS stands for Basic Input/Output System

- Performs some system integrity checks
- Searches, loads, and executes the boot loader program.
- It looks for boot loader in floppy, cd-rom, or hard drive. You can press a key (typically F12 or F2, but it depends on your system) during the BIOS startup to change the boot sequence.
- Once the boot loader program is detected and loaded into the memory, BIOS gives the control to it.
- So, in simple terms BIOS loads and executes the MBR boot loader.

---

## 2. MBR

- MBR stands for Master Boot Record.
- It is located in the 1st sector of the bootable disk. Typically /dev/hda, or /dev/sda
- MBR is less than 512 bytes in size. This has three components 1) primary boot loader info in 1st 446 bytes 2) partition table info in next 64 bytes 3) mbr validation check in last 2 bytes.
- It contains information about GRUB (or LILO in old systems).
- So, in simple terms MBR loads and executes the GRUB boot loader.

---

## 3. GRUB

- GRUB stands for Grand Unified Bootloader.
- If you have multiple kernel images installed on your system, you can choose which one to be executed.
- GRUB displays a splash screen, waits for few seconds, if you don't enter anything, it loads the default kernel image as specified in the grub configuration file.
- GRUB has the knowledge of the filesystem (the older Linux loader LILO didn't understand filesystem).
- Grub configuration file is /boot/grub/grub.conf (/etc/grub.conf is a link to this). The following is sample grub.conf

```
# grub.conf generated by anaconda
#
# Note that you do not have to rerun grub after making changes to this file
# NOTICE: You have a /boot partition. This means that
#          all kernel and initrd paths are relative to /boot/, eg.
#          root (hd0,1)
#          kernel /vmlinuz-version ro root=/dev/mapper/vg_ktadm-rootlv
#          initrd /initrd-[generic]-version.img
#boot=/dev/sda
default=0
timeout=5
splashimage=(hd0,1)/grub/splash.xpm.gz
hiddenmenu
title Red Hat Enterprise Linux (2.6.32-131.0.15.el6.x86_64)
    root (hd0,1)
    kernel /vmlinuz-2.6.32-131.0.15.el6.x86_64 ro root=/dev/mapper/vg_ktadm-
rootlv rd_LVM_LV=vg_ktadm/rootlv rd_NO_LUKS rd_NO_MD rd_NO_DM LANG=en_US.UTF-8 S
YSFONT=latarcyrheb-sun16 KEYBOARDTYPE=pc KEYTABLE=us rhgb quiet
    initrd /initramfs-2.6.32-131.0.15.el6.x86_64.img
~
```

- As you notice from the above info, it contains kernel and initrd image.
- So, in simple terms GRUB just loads and executes Kernel and initrd images.

#### 4. KERNEL

- Mounts the root file system as specified in the “root=” in grub.conf
- Kernel executes the /sbin/init program

Since init was the 1st program to be executed by Linux Kernel, it has the process id (PID) of 1.

Do a ‘ps -ef | grep init’ and check the pid.

- initrd stands for Initial RAM Disk.
- initrd is used by kernel as temporary root file system until kernel is booted and the real root file system is mounted. It also contains necessary drivers compiled inside, which helps it to access the hard drive partitions, and other hardware.

#### 5. INIT

1. Looks at the /etc/inittab file to decide the Linux run level.
2. Following are the available run levels
  - 0 – halt
  - 1 – Single user mode
  - 2 – Multiuser, without NFS
  - 3 – Full multiuser mode
  - 4 – unused
  - 5 – X11

- 6 – reboot
- 3. Init identifies the default initlevel from /etc/inittab and uses that to load all appropriate program.
- 4. Execute ‘grep initdefault /etc/inittab’ on your system to identify the default run level
- 5. If you want to get into trouble, you can set the default run level to 0 or 6. Since you know what 0 and 6 means, probably you might not do that.
- 6. Typically you would set the default run level to either 3 or 5.

## 6. RUNLEVEL PROGRAMS

- When the Linux system is booting up, you might see various services getting started. For example, it might say “starting sendmail .... OK”. Those are the run level programs, executed from the run level directory as defined by your run level.
- Depending on your default init level setting, the system will execute the programs from one of the following directories.
  - Run level 0 – /etc/rc.d/rc0.d/
  - Run level 1 – /etc/rc.d/rc1.d/
  - Run level 2 – /etc/rc.d/rc2.d/
  - Run level 3 – /etc/rc.d/rc3.d/
  - Run level 4 – /etc/rc.d/rc4.d/
  - Run level 5 – /etc/rc.d/rc5.d/
  - Run level 6 – /etc/rc.d/rc6.d/
- Please note that there are also symbolic links available for these directory under /etc directly. So, /etc/rc0.d is linked to /etc/rc.d/rc0.d.

### LAB WORK:-

To check the default run level in linux

- To see the default run level in linux the command is

**#who -r**

```
[root@ktadm ~]# who -r
run-level 5 2011-11-01 12:39
[root@ktadm ~]# █
```

Changing the default run level to some other like 3

- To change the run level edit the **/etc/inittab** and make the following changes  
#vim /etc/inittab

```
# System initialization is started by /etc/init/rcS.conf
#
# Individual runlevels are started by /etc/init/rc.conf
#
# Ctrl-Alt-Delete is handled by /etc/init/control-alt-delete.conf
#
# Terminal gettys are handled by /etc/init/tty.conf and /etc/init/serial.conf,
# with configuration in /etc/sysconfig/init.
#
# For information on how to write upstart event handlers, or how
# upstart works, see init(5), init(8), and initctl(8).
#
# Default runlevel. The runlevels used are:
#   0 - halt (Do NOT set initdefault to this)
#   1 - Single user mode
#   2 - Multiuser, without NFS (The same as 3, if you do not have networking)
#   3 - Full multiuser mode
#   4 - unused
#   5 - X11
#   6 - reboot (Do NOT set initdefault to this)
#
id:3:initdefault:
```

- Now reboot the system and check in which runlevel it is.

```
#init 6
```

```
Red Hat Enterprise Linux Server release 6.1 (Santiago)
Kernel 2.6.32-131.0.15.el6.x86_64 on an x86_64

ktc13 login: root
Password:
[root@ktc13 ~]# who -r
      run-level 3  2011-11-01 17:21
[root@ktc13 ~]# _
```

- To start the graphical interface when you are in runlevel **3**, use the following command
- #startx
- Change it back to runlevel **5** and reboot the system.

**To see the details regarding the kernel installed:**

- To see the version of the kernel use

```
#uname -r
```

```
[root@ktcl3 ~]# uname -r  
2.6.32-131.0.15.el6.x86_64  
[root@ktcl3 ~]#
```

- To see the same thing with more details use

```
#uname -a
```

```
[root@ktcl3 ~]# uname -a  
Linux ktcl3.kt.com 2.6.32-131.0.15.el6.x86_64 #1 SMP Tue May 10 15:42:40 EDT 2011 x86_64 x86_64 x86_64 GNU/Linux  
[root@ktcl3 ~]#
```

Note: The same information can be seen in /boot/grub/grub.conf

```
# grub.conf generated by anaconda  
#  
# Note that you do not have to rerun grub after making changes to this file  
# NOTICE: You have a /boot partition. This means that  
# all kernel and initrd paths are relative to /boot/, eg.  
# root (hd0,1)  
#       kernel /vmlinuz-version ro root=/dev/mapper/vg_ktadm-rootlv  
#       initrd /initrd-[generic]-version.img  
#boot=/dev/sda  
default=0  
timeout=5  
splashimage=(hd0,1)/grub/splash.xpm.gz  
hiddenmenu  
title Red Hat Enterprise Linux (2.6.32-131.0.15.el6.x86_64)  
    root (hd0,1)  
    kernel /vmlinuz-2.6.32-131.0.15.el6.x86_64 ro root=/dev/mapper/vg_ktadm-  
rootlv rd_LVM_LV=vg_ktadm/rootlv rd_NO_LUKS rd_NO_MD rd_NO_DM LANG=en_US.UTF-8 $  
YSFONT=latarcyrheb-sun16 KEYBOARDTYPE=pc KEYTABLE=us rhgb quiet  
    initrd /initramfs-2.6.32-131.0.15.el6.x86_64.img
```

To check the architecture of the O/S

- To check the architecture of the O/S the command is

```
#arch
```

```
#uname -m
```

```
[root@ktadm Desktop]# arch  
x86_64  
[root@ktadm Desktop]# uname -m  
x86_64  
[root@ktadm Desktop]# ]
```

To check the version of the O/S in the system

- To check the O/S version you have to navigate to the following file

```
# cat /etc/redhat-release
```

```
[root@ktadm Desktop]# cat /etc/redhat-release  
Red Hat Enterprise Linux Server release 6.1 (Santiago)  
[root@ktadm Desktop]# ]
```

## RESETTING THE LOST PASSWORD IN RHEL 6:

To reset the lost password the steps are

- Disturb the normal boot by pressing any when RHEL 6 booting screen is displayed

```
Press any key to enter the menu
```

```
Booting Red Hat Enterprise Linux (2.6.32-131.0.15.el6.x86_64) in 4 seconds.
```

- You will be inside the menu like the following

```
GNU GRUB version 0.97 (631K lower / 1047540K upper memory)
```

```
Red Hat Enterprise Linux (2.6.32-131.0.15.el6.x86_64)
```

```
Use the ↑ and ↓ keys to select which entry is highlighted.  
Press enter to boot the selected OS, 'e' to edit the  
commands before booting, 'a' to modify the kernel arguments  
before booting, or 'c' for a command-line.
```

```
GNU GRUB version 0.97 (631K lower / 1047540K upper memory)
```

```
root (hd0,1)
kernel /vmlinuz-2.6.32-131.0.15.el6.x86_64 ro root=/dev/mapper/vg_ktc-
initrd /initramfs-2.6.32-131.0.15.el6.x86_64.img
```

Use the ↑ and ↓ keys to select which entry is highlighted.  
Press 'b' to boot, 'e' to edit the selected command in the  
boot sequence, 'c' for a command-line, 'o' to open a new line  
after ('0' for before) the selected line, 'd' to remove the  
selected line, or escape to go back to the main menu.

- Move the cursor to 2<sup>nd</sup> line (line of Kernel) and press 'e' to edit the kernel parameter

```
[ Minimal BASH-like line editing is supported. For the first word, TAB
lists possible command completions. Anywhere else TAB lists the possible
completions of a device/filename. ESC at any time cancels. ENTER
at any time accepts your changes.]
```

```
<PE=pc KEYTABLE=us crashkernel=auto rhgb quiet 1
```

- Type "1" after the line to boot in maintenance level and press enter to continue

```
GNU GRUB version 0.97 (631K lower / 1047540K upper memory)
```

```
root (hd0,1)
kernel /vmlinuz-2.6.32-131.0.15.el6.x86_64 ro root=/dev/mapper/vg_ktc-
initrd /initramfs-2.6.32-131.0.15.el6.x86_64.img
```

Use the ↑ and ↓ keys to select which entry is highlighted.  
Press 'b' to boot, 'e' to edit the selected command in the  
boot sequence, 'c' for a command-line, 'o' to open a new line  
after ('O' for before) the selected line, 'd' to remove the  
selected line, or escape to go back to the main menu.

- Now, type “**b**” to boot it in single user mode. Then you will be in single user mode

```
Telling INIT to go to single user mode.
init: rc main process (1069) killed by TERM signal
[root@ktc13 ~]# _
```

- Now without being prompted for password you will be logged in the single user mode

```
[root@ktc15 ~]# passwd
[root@ktc15 ~]# _
```

- To change the password use command **#passwd**, but as you can see it will not work because of SELinux.
- Check the **SELinux** mode by using **#getenforce** command

```
[root@ktc15 ~]# getenforce
Enforcing
```

- As we can see that **SELinux** is in **Enforcing** mode, change it to **Permissive** and then try changing the password

- Change the SELinux Mode to Permissive, using

```
#setenforce 0
```

- Now try changing the password using **#passwd** command

```
[root@ktc15 ~]# setenforce 0
[root@ktc15 ~]# getenforce
Permissive
[root@ktc15 ~]# passwd
Changing password for user root.
New password:
BAD PASSWORD: it is based on a dictionary word
BAD PASSWORD: is too simple
Retype new password:
passwd: all authentication tokens updated successfully.
[root@ktc15 ~]# _
```

- Okay, Now we are successfully changed the password, now just type exit or reboot, to reboot the system and try the new password for root.

#### REPAIRING THE CORRUPTED BOOT LOADER AND RECOVERING IT:

- There might be a situation where your boot loader i.e., **GRub** might got corrupted and you want to recover it or in other word repair it. Basically the repairing of **GRub** means installing a new grub on the existing one from **RHEL 6 DVD**.
- To recover the grub the steps are:
  - Insert the **RHEL 6 DVD** and make the system boot from **CD/DVD**
  - Boot the system in Rescue installed system Mode.



- Select the language with which you want to continue and move cursor on OK, press Enter.



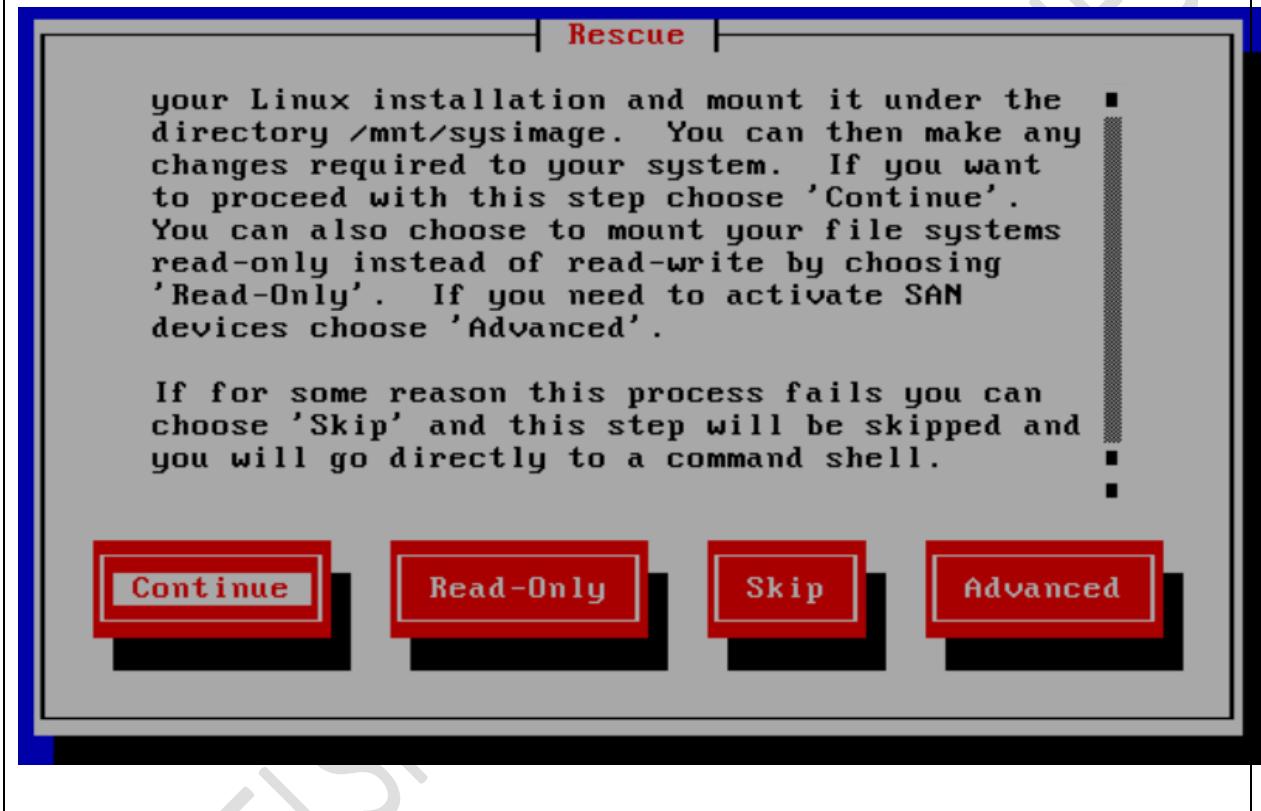
- Select the keyboard Type and move cursor to OK and press Enter to continue.



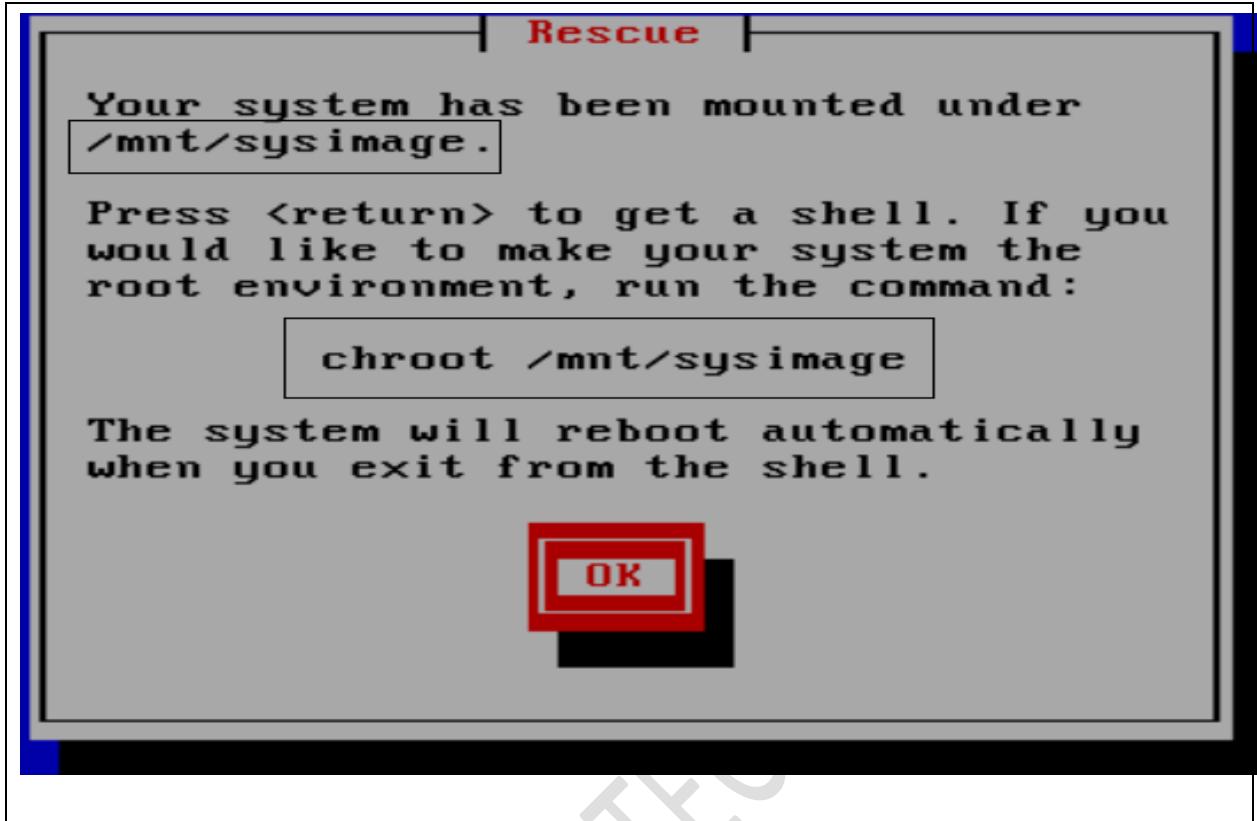
- Select Local CD/DVD to make the system boot from it. As the system's bootloader is corrupt.



- Move cursor to NO to ignore the networking and also to continue



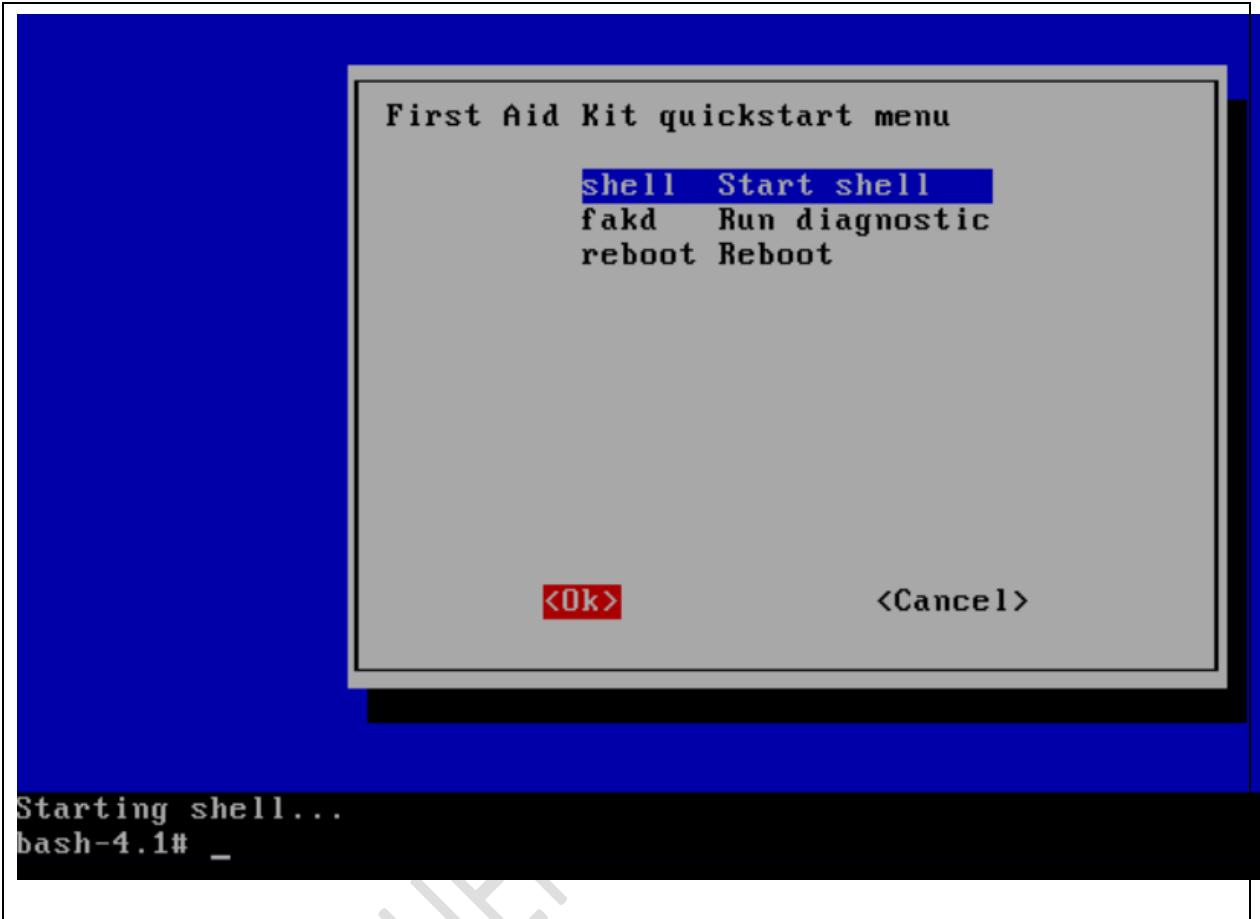
- Move the cursor to Continue tab, to mount the 'root' from CD/DVD. Press Enter



- Observe from above pic, that now your system has been mounted on `/mnt/sysimage`. It means where our system root is residing
- Move the cursor to OK and press Enter to continue.



- Press Enter to continue.



- Select 'shell start shell' and move cursor to OK to start the shell
- You can observe that a shell prompt is displayed
- Change the DVD root to system root by using following command

```
#chroot /mnt/sysimage
```



```
Disk /dev/vda: 42.9 GB, 42949672960 bytes
255 heads, 63 sectors/track, 5221 cylinders
Units = cylinders of 16065 * 512 = 8225280 bytes
Sector size (logical/physical): 512 bytes / 512 bytes
I/O size (minimum/optimal): 512 bytes / 512 bytes
Disk identifier: 0x000150a1

Device Boot Start End Blocks Id System
/dev/vda1 1 3188 25600000 8e Linux LVM
/dev/vda2 * 3188 3213 204800 83 Linux
/dev/vda3 3213 3474 2097152 82 Linux swap
```

- Check that on which partition does your '/boot' is using

```
#fdisk -l or parted -l
```

```
sh-4.1# grub-install /dev/vda2
Installation finished. No error reported.
This is the contents of the device map /boot/grub/device.map.
Check if this is correct or not. If any of the lines is incorrect,
fix it and re-run the script 'grub-install'.

# this device map was generated by anaconda
(hd0)      /dev/vda
```

- Install the grub on the /boot device i.e. /dev/vda2 by using following command

```
#grub-install <device name>
```

```
#grub-install /dev/vda2
```

- If it shows no error reported, that means we have successfully recovered the grub.

```
sh-4.1# exit
exit
bash-4.1# reboot_
```

- Type "exit" to exit from system root
- Again type "exit" or "reboot" to reboot the system.

## LISTING OUT THE MODULES (DRIVERS) AND BLACKLISTING THE USB AND CD-ROM DRIVER:

- The drivers in Linux are known as Modules or Kernel Modules.
- These modules are assigned by kernel basing upon the hardware.
- Hardware can only be communicated and can work efficiently when the proper module is loaded in the kernel.

To find all the kernel Modules

- All the kernel modules will be residing in **/etc/lib/modules** directory
- Navigate to the directory **/etc/lib/modules** and check it with **uname -r**

```
[root@ktadm ~]# cd /lib/modules/  
[root@ktadm modules]# ls  
2.6.32-131.0.15.el6.x86_64  
[root@ktadm modules]# uname -r  
2.6.32-131.0.15.el6.x86_64  
[root@ktadm modules]#
```

To search all the kernel modules in the system using find command

- All the kernel modules in the system will be ending with **.ko** extension, so let's search it using find command

**#find / -name \*.ko**

```
[root@ktadm modules]# find / -name *.ko  
/lib/modules/2.6.32-131.0.15.el6.x86_64/kernel/lib/libcrc32c.ko  
/lib/modules/2.6.32-131.0.15.el6.x86_64/kernel/lib/raid6/raid6_pq.ko  
/lib/modules/2.6.32-131.0.15.el6.x86_64/kernel/lib/crc-t10dif.ko  
/lib/modules/2.6.32-131.0.15.el6.x86_64/kernel/lib/zlib_deflate/zlib_deflate.ko  
/lib/modules/2.6.32-131.0.15.el6.x86_64/kernel/lib/reed_solomon/reed_solomon.ko  
/lib/modules/2.6.32-131.0.15.el6.x86_64/kernel/lib/crc_ccitt.ko  
/lib/modules/2.6.32-131.0.15.el6.x86_64/kernel/lib/lzo/lzo_compress.ko  
/lib/modules/2.6.32-131.0.15.el6.x86_64/kernel/lib/lzo/lzo_decompress.ko  
/lib/modules/2.6.32-131.0.15.el6.x86_64/kernel/lib/ts_fsm.ko  
/lib/modules/2.6.32-131.0.15.el6.x86_64/kernel/mm/hwpoison-inject.ko  
/lib/modules/2.6.32-131.0.15.el6.x86_64/kernel/sound/drivers/snd-aloop.ko  
/lib/modules/2.6.32-131.0.15.el6.x86_64/kernel/sound/drivers/snd-dummy.ko  
/lib/modules/2.6.32-131.0.15.el6.x86_64/kernel/sound/drivers/snd-mtpav.ko  
/lib/modules/2.6.32-131.0.15.el6.x86_64/kernel/sound/drivers/vx/snd-vx-lib.ko  
/lib/modules/2.6.32-131.0.15.el6.x86_64/kernel/sound/drivers/snd-virmidi.ko  
/lib/modules/2.6.32-131.0.15.el6.x86_64/kernel/sound/drivers/pcsp/snd_pcsp.ko  
/lib/modules/2.6.32-131.0.15.el6.x86_64/kernel/sound/drivers/mpu401/snd_mpu401.ko
```

Note:- Observe that all the modules listed are in /lib/modules only. All modules may be supported or currently loaded modules.

To list all the currently loaded modules:

**#lsmod**

```
[root@ktadm ~]# lsmod
Module           Size  Used by
vfat            10646  0
fat             55054  1 vfat
usb_storage     49418  0
fuse            66138  2
ip6table_filter 2855   0
ip6_tables      19424  1 ip6table_filter
ebtable_nat     1975   0
ebtables         18101  1 ebtable_nat
ipt_MASQUERADE 2400   3
iptable_nat     6124   1
nf_nat          22788  2 ipt_MASQUERADE,iptable_nat
nf_conntrack_ip4 9440   4 iptable_nat,nf_nat
nf_defrag_ip4   1449   1 nf_conntrack_ip4
xt_state         1458   1
nf_conntrack    79643  5 ipt_MASQUERADE,iptable_nat,nf_nat,nf_conntrack_i
pv4,xt_state
ipt_REJECT       2349   2
xt_CHECKSUM      1269   1
iptable_mangle   3283   1
iptable_filter   2759   1
ip_tables        17765  3 iptable_nat,iptable_mangle,iptable_filter
autofs4          27683  3
```

To check whether a particular module is loaded or not

- To see the particular module use

**#lsmod |grep -i module name**

```
#lsmod |grep -i fat
#lsmod |grep -i cdrom
```

```
[root@ktadm ~]# lsmod |grep -i fat
vfat            10646  0
fat             55054  1 vfat
[root@ktadm ~]# lsmod |grep -i cdrom
cdrom           39769  1 sr_mod
[root@ktadm ~]# ■
```

To remove the loaded module

- There might be a situation where your module is not working properly, in that case we need to remove the module and reinstall it. Let's see how to remove a module first
- From previous task we know that **vfat** module is installed let's remove it

**#modprobe -r < mod name>**

```
#modprobe -r vfat
```

```
[root@ktadm ~]# modprobe -r vfat
[root@ktadm ~]# lsmod |grep -i fat
[root@ktadm ~]# lsmod |grep -i vfat
```

To install/re-install a module

- To install a module use the following command

**#modprobe <mod name>**

```
#modprobe fat
```

```
[root@ktadm ~]# lsmod |grep -i fat
[root@ktadm ~]# modprobe vfat
[root@ktadm ~]# lsmod |grep -i fat
vfat                  10646  0
fat                   55054  1 vfat
```

To see the information about the module

- To see the information about a module the syntax is

**#modinfo < mod name>**

```
#modinfo cdrom
```

```
[root@ktadm ~]# modinfo cdrom
filename:      /lib/modules/2.6.32-131.0.15.el6.x86_64/kernel/drivers/cdrom/cdrom.ko
license:       GPL
srcversion:    EA46535D273499C0A0C54A3
depends:
vermagic:     2.6.32-131.0.15.el6.x86_64 SMP mod_unload modversions
parm:          debug:bool
parm:          autoclose:bool
parm:          autoeject:bool
parm:          lockdoor:bool
parm:          check_media_type:bool
parm:          mrw_format_restart:bool
[root@ktadm ~]# █
```

## DISABLING OR BLACKLISTING A USB/CD-ROM DRIVER

- To disable a USB/CD-ROM drive driver, first check whether a driver is loaded or not

```
#lsmod |grep -i usb
```

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# lsmod |grep -i usb
[root@ktlinux ~]# ■
```

- If it is not loaded, connect the USB drive to the system and wait for it to get loaded, then check it again whether the module is loaded or not

```
#lsmod |grep -i usb
```

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# lsmod |grep -i usb
usb_storage      39114  1
```

- Also check where it is mounted

```
#mount
```

```
/dev/sdb1 on /media/E817-24C0 type vfat (rw,nosuid,nodev,uhelper=udisks,uid=0,gid=0,shortname=mixed_,dmask=0077,utf8=1,flush)
```

- You can navigate through /media/E817..... and verify whether it is correct device or not.
- Now as we know the module name just remove the module

```
#modprobe -r usb_storage
```

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# modprobe -r usb_storage
FATAL: Module usb_storage is in use.
```

The error showing above is because the drive is mounted, unmount it and try removing module again

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# umount /media/E817-24C0/
[root@ktlinux ~]# lsmod |grep -i usb
usb_storage      39114  0
[root@ktlinux ~]# modprobe -r usb_storage
[root@ktlinux ~]# lsmod |grep -i usb
[root@ktlinux ~]# ■
```

- As we have successfully removed the module, now place the module name in /etc/modprobe.d/blacklist.conf file so that it may not be loaded in future.

```
#vim /etc/modprobe.d/blacklist.conf
```

```
# Listing a module here prevents the hotplug scripts from loading it.  
# Usually that'd be so that some other driver will bind it instead,  
# no matter which driver happens to get probed first. Sometimes user  
# mode tools can also control driver binding.  
#  
# Syntax: see modprobe.conf(5).  
#  
#USB  
blacklist usb_storage  
  
# watchdog drivers  
blacklist i8xx_tco
```

Now save the file and quit the vim editor

- Now again try connecting the drive and check whether the USB is loading or not

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# lsmod |grep -i usb  
[root@ktlinux ~]# █
```

Note: - The procedure for black listing CD-ROM is exactly same. Try it yourselves

To remove the USB/CD-ROM from black list

- Remove the entry from /etc/modprobe.d/blacklist.conf
- Connect the drive and install the module for USB and check whether it is mounting or not

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# lsmod |grep -i usb  
[root@ktlinux ~]# modprobe usb_storage  
[root@ktlinux ~]# mount  
/dev/sdb1 on /media/E817-24C0 type vfat (rw,nosuid,nodev,uhelper=udisks,uid=0,gid=0,shortname=mixed,dmask=0077,utf8=1,flush)  
[root@ktlinux ~]# █
```

# JOB AUTOMATION

## CRON JOB:

- In any operating system, it is possible to create jobs that you want to reoccur. This process, known as **job scheduling**, is usually done based on user-defined jobs. For Red Hat or any other Linux, this process is handled by the cron service or a daemon called **crond**, which can be used to schedule tasks (also called *jobs*). By default, Red Hat comes with a set of predefined jobs that occur on the system (hourly, daily, weekly, monthly, and with arbitrary periodicity). As an administrator, however, you can define your own jobs and allow your users to create them as well.
- The importance of the job scheduling is that the critical tasks like taking backups, which the clients usually wants to be taken in nights, can easily be performed without the intervention of the administrator by scheduling a cron job. If the cron job is scheduled carefully than the backup will be taken at any given time of the client and there will be no need for the administrator to remain back at nights to take the backup.

Important Files related to cron and at

- **/etc/crontab** is the file which stores all scheduled jobs
- **/etc/cron.deny** is the file used to restrict the users from using cron jobs.
- **/etc/cron.allow** is used to allow only users whose names are mentioned in this file to use cron jobs. (this file does not exist by default)
- **/etc/at.deny** same as cron.deny for restricting at jobs
- **/etc/at.allow** same as cron.allow for allowing user to use at jobs.

Crontab format

- To assign a job in the Crontab file the format used is the following



20739

Options	Explanation
*	Is treated as a wild card. Meaning any possible value.
*/5	Is treated as every 5 minutes, hours, days, or months. Replacing the 5 with another numerical value will change this option.
2,4,6	Treated as an OR, so if placed in the hours, this could mean at 2, 4, or 6 o-clock.
9-17	Treats for any value between 9 and 17. So if placed in day of month this would be days 9 through 17. Or if put in hours it would be between 9 and 5.

## CRONTAB COMMANDS

Command	Explanation
crontab -e	Edit your crontab file, or create one if it doesn't already exist.
crontab -l	Display your crontab file.
crontab -r	Remove your crontab file.
crontab -u	If combined with <b>-e</b> , edit a particular user's Crontab file and if combined with <b>-l</b> , display a particular user's crontab file. If combined with <b>-r</b> , deletes a particular user's Crontab file

## LAB WORK:-

To check the assigned cron jobs of currently logged in user

- To check the cron jobs the command is

**#crontab -l**

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# crontab -l  
no crontab for root  
[root@ktlinux ~]# █
```

To check the cron jobs of a particular user

- To check a user's cron jobs, the syntax is

**#crontab -l -u <user name>**

**#crontab -l -u ktuser**

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# crontab -l -u ktuser  
no crontab for ktuser  
[root@ktlinux ~]# crontab -lu ktuser  
no crontab for ktuser  
[root@ktlinux ~]# █
```

Setting a job to display the current date for every minute on present console

- To set the above job the steps are
- Check the console on which you are working by following command

**#tty**

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# tty  
/dev/pts/1  
[root@ktlinux ~]# █
```

**Note:** /dev/pts/1 is the console address

- Schedule the task as shown below

**#crontab -e** and enter the field as shown below and save it as in **VI editor**

```
*/* * * * date > /dev/pts/1  
~  
[root@ktlinux ~]# crontab -e  
crontab: installing new crontab
```

**Note:** where \* means every possible value.

- Restart the cron services

```
#service crond restart
```

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# service crond restart
Stopping crond: [ OK ]
Starting crond: [ OK ]
[root@ktlinux ~]#
```

- Wait for a minute and check whether time is displaying or not. Every min time will be displayed as below.

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# Thu Oct 13 15:24:01 IST 2011
Thu Oct 13 15:25:01 IST 2011
Thu Oct 13 15:26:01 IST 2011
```

**Schedule a cron job to create a directory “ktdir” under “/root” on “Sunday 22 October at 1:30 AM”**

- To schedule above job edit the crontab file as shown below and restart the service

```
#crontab -e
```

```
30 1 22 10 0 mkdir /root/ktdir
~
:wq!
```

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# crontab -e
crontab: installing new crontab
[root@ktlinux ~]#
```

**Note:** you can use **0** or **7** for Sunday.

Check whether it got created or not on scheduled day, if it created you can see the directory otherwise an error mail will be sent at your mail.

**Schedule a job to run the backup script “bkpscript.sh” on every “Saturday 12:30 PM”**

- In order to schedule above job the steps are.
- Check the location of script and also check whether it is having execute permission or not. If not then add the execute permissions to all user on it.

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# ls
anaconda-ks.cfg  Desktop  Downloads  install.log.syslog
bkpscript.sh  Documents  install.log  ktdir
[root@ktlinux ~]# pwd
/root
[root@ktlinux ~]# ls -l bkpscript.sh
-rw-r--r--. 1 root root 0 Oct 13 15:47 bkpscript.sh
[root@ktlinux ~]# chmod a+x bkpscript.sh
[root@ktlinux ~]# ls -l bkpscript.sh
-rwxr-xr-x. 1 root root 0 Oct 13 15:47 bkpscript.sh
[root@ktlinux ~]# █
```

- Apply the job in **crontab** and restart the service

#crontab -l

```
30 1 22 10 0 mkdir /root/ktdir
30 12 * * 6 /root/bkpscript.sh
~
:wq!█
[root@ktlinux ~]# crontab -e
crontab: installing new crontab
[root@ktlinux ~]# !ser
service crond restart
Stopping crond: [ OK ]
Starting crond: [ OK ]
```

Note: !ser is the command to restart the last restarted service

Schedule a job so that a user “ktuser” should get a mail regarding meeting on 24<sup>th</sup>, 29<sup>th</sup> and 31<sup>st</sup> October at 2:25 PM.

- To set above task edit the crontab in following passion, and restart the service

#crontab -e -u <user name>

```
#crontab -e -u ktuser
25 14 27,29,31 10 * echo "Meeting at 3:00 PM Today"
~
:wq!█
```

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# crontab -e -u ktuser
no crontab for ktuser - using an empty one
crontab: installing new crontab
[root@ktlinux ~]# !ser
service crond restart
Stopping crond:
Starting crond:
[root@ktlinux ~]# [OK] [OK]
```

**Schedule a job so that a user “ktuser” should get the mail from 15<sup>th</sup> to 20<sup>th</sup> and 25<sup>th</sup> to 30<sup>st</sup> November as a reminder of some session at 2:25 PM**

- This task is very much similar to the previous one but there is only a small change in format.

```
#crontab -e -u ktuser
```

```
25 14 27,29,31 10 * echo "Meeting at 3:00 PM Today"
25 14 15-20,25-30 11 * echo "Class at study hall 3:00 PM Today"
```

```
~
```

```
~
```

```
:wq! [OK]
```

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# crontab -e -u ktuser
crontab: installing new crontab
[root@ktlinux ~]# service crond restart
Stopping crond:
Starting crond: [OK]
```

- There are still various method you can schedule the cron jobs, Do some **R&D** on it to find out more.

**Restrict users “ktuser” “amit” “vivek” from using cron jobs**

- To restrict any user from using cron job facility, enter their names in **/etc/cron.deny** and save it

```
#vim /etc/cron.deny
```

```
ktuser
amit
vivek
~
```

```
~
```

```
~
```

```
:wq! [OK]
```

- Now login as one of those users and try to use crontab.

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# vim /etc/cron.deny
[root@ktlinux ~]# su - ktuser
[ktuser@ktlinux ~]$ crontab -l
You (ktuser) are not allowed to use this program (crontab)
See crontab(1) for more information
[ktuser@ktlinux ~]$ crontab -e
You (ktuser) are not allowed to use this program (crontab)
See crontab(1) for more information
[ktuser@ktlinux ~]$ █
```

- If again want to allow them to use cron job facilities just remove their names from **/etc/cron.deny** file.

Allow only two users “musab” and “rahul” to use cron jobs out of all the users in the system

- Assuming that we have 100 users in our system, putting all 98 names in **/etc/cron.deny** file is a time consuming process. Instead of that, we can create one more file **/etc/cron.allow**, in which we can assign names of those users who are allowed to use cron jobs.
- Remove the **/etc/cron.deny** file and create **/etc/cron.allow**, still if both files are existing **cron.allow** file will be having precedence over **cron.deny** file. Just to avoid confusion it is good to remove **cron.deny** file

**Note:** **/etc/cron.deny** file exists by default, but we need to create **/cron.allow** file. If your name is not there in **cron.allow** file then you will not be allowed to use cron jobs, and as mentioned above, if both files are existing **cron.allow** file will be having precedence over **cron.deny** file. If neither **cron.deny** nor **cron.allow** files exists then only **root** can use cron jobs.

- Now, let's put those two users “musab” and “rahul” name in **/etc/cron.allow** file and check the results.

```
#vim /etc/cron.allow
```

```
musab
rahul
~
~
:wq! █
```

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# vim /etc/cron.allow
[root@ktlinux ~]# rm -f /etc/cron.deny
[root@ktlinux ~]# su - vivek
[vivek@ktlinux ~]$ crontab -l
You (vivek) are not allowed to use this program (crontab)
See crontab(1) for more information
[vivek@ktlinux ~]$ exit
logout
[root@ktlinux ~]# su - musab
[musab@ktlinux ~]$ crontab -l
no crontab for musab
[musab@ktlinux ~]$ exit
logout
[root@ktlinux ~]# su - rahul
[rahul@ktlinux ~]$ crontab -l
no crontab for rahul
[rahul@ktlinux ~]$ exit
logout
[root@ktlinux ~]# su - ktuser
[ktuser@ktlinux ~]$ crontab -l
You (ktuser) are not allowed to use this program (crontab)
```

**Note:** To see man pages on cron job use **#man 4 crontabs** command

## AT JOBS

- “at” is used to schedule the job for a particular time or interval, in other words it is used only for one time or only for one interval.

The disadvantages of at jobs are

- It can be modified like cron jobs
- It cannot be reused
- The content cannot be viewed in normal human readable format

Schedule at job to display current date on current console “now”

- To schedule above job using at first check the console

**#tty**

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# tty
/dev/pts/1
[root@ktlinux ~]#
```

- The syntax to use at job for this task is

**#at <time>**

Task

**Ctrl+d** to save it.

**#at now**

```
[root@ktlinux /]# at now
at> date > /dev/pts/1
at> <EOT>
job 6 at 2011-10-13 18:43
[root@ktlinux /]# Thu Oct 13 18:43:21 IST 2011
```

**Schedule at job to get a mail at 10:30 AM regarding meeting:**

- It is very similar to above task, use the following

**#at 10.30am**

```
[root@ktlinux /]# at 10.30am
at> echo "Meeting today at 1 PM"
at> <EOT>
job 17 at 2011-10-14 10:30
[root@ktlinux /]#
```

Schedule at job to get a mail at 10.30 AM till three days from now for a meeting

**#at 10.30am + 3days**

```
[root@ktlinux /]# at 10.30am + 3days
at> echo "meeting today at 1 PM "
at> <EOT>
job 18 at 2011-10-16 10:30
[root@ktlinux /]#
```

**Note: See man pages “man at” for more on at jobs and formats.**

To check the list of at jobs

**#at -l or #atq**

```
[root@ktlinux /]# at -l
18      2011-10-16 10:30 a root
17      2011-10-14 10:30 a root
[root@ktlinux /]#
```

To check what is scheduled

**#at -c < job id >**

```
#at -c 18
```

**Note:** the output will not be in human readable format and also very lengthy.

```
[root@ktlinux /]# at -c 18
#!/bin/sh
# atrun uid=0 gid=0
# mail root 0
umask 22
ORBIT_SOCKETDIR=/tmp/orbit-root; export ORBIT_SOCKETDIR
HOSTNAME=ktlinux.kt.com; export HOSTNAME
IMSETTINGS_INTEGRATE_DESKTOP=yes; export IMSETTINGS_INTEGRATE_DESKTOP
SHELL=/bin/bash; export SHELL
```

#### To remove a job:

- check the job id
- To remove a job the syntax is

```
#atrm < job id >
```

```
#atrm 17
#atrm 18
```

```
[root@ktlinux /]# atq
18      2011-10-16 10:30 a root
17      2011-10-14 10:30 a root
[root@ktlinux /]# atrm 17
[root@ktlinux /]# atrm 18
[root@ktlinux /]# atq
[root@ktlinux /]# █
```

#### Restricting a user from using at jobs:

- To restrict a user from using at jobs it is exactly same like cron job
- Add user names to **/etc/at.deny**, it will work like exactly like **/etc/cron.deny**
- To allow only few out of many users remove **at.deny** like we did for **cron.deny** and create **/etc/at.allow** and add user names who are allowed to use at jobs in it, like **cron.allow**
- If both **at.allow** and **at.deny** exists, then **at.allow** will have higher priority.
- If neither **at.allow** nor **at.deny** exists, then only root can use at jobs.

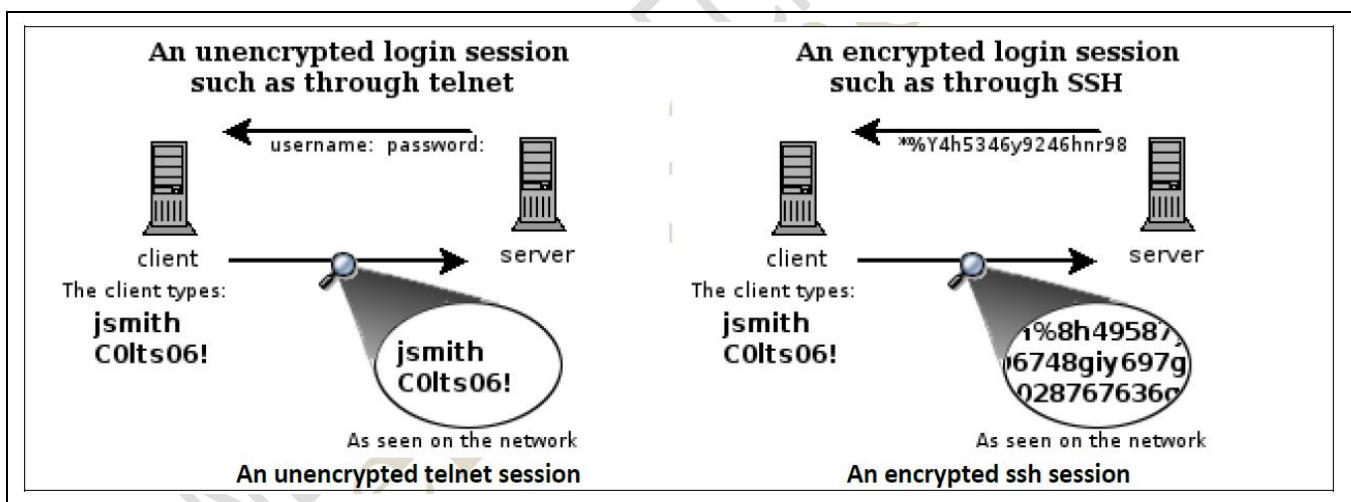
All the above are few examples to use cron jobs and at jobs, do some constant R&D's to know more about it.

# ADMINISTRATING REMOTE SYSTEM

## What Is SSH?

There are a couple of ways that you can access a shell (command line) remotely on most Linux/Unix systems. One of the older ways is to use the telnet program, which is available on most network capable operating systems. Accessing a shell account through the telnet method though poses a danger in that everything that you send or receive over that telnet session is visible in plain text on your local network, and the local network of the machine you are connecting to. So anyone who can "sniff" the connection in-between can see your username, password, email that you read, and command that you run. For these reasons you need a more sophisticated program than telnet to connect to a remote host.

SSH, which is an acronym for Secure SHell, was designed and created to provide the best security when accessing another computer remotely. Not only does it encrypt the session, it also provides better authentication facilities.



These two diagrams above show how a telnet session can be viewed by anyone on the network by using a sniffing program like Ethereal (now called Wireshark) or tcpdump. It is really rather trivial to do this and so anyone on the network can steal your passwords and other information. The first diagram shows user jsmith logging in to a remote server through a telnet connection. He types his username jsmith and password Colts06! which are viewable by anyone who is using the same networks that he is using.

The second diagram shows how the data in an encrypted connection like SSH is encrypted on the network and so cannot be read by anyone who doesn't have the session-negotiated keys, which is just a fancy way of saying the data is scrambled. The server still can read the information, but only after negotiating the encrypted session with the client.

- SSH configuration file is **/etc/ssh/sshd\_config**
- SSH demon or service is **sshd**

#### LAB WORK:-

Accessing the remote machine using ssh

- To access the remote machine using ssh, the syntax is

**#ssh <ip address/ host name of remote machine>**

**Note:** hostname can only be used when the hostname is saved in **/etc/hosts** file or, if DNS is configured.

#ssh 192.168.10.98

```
[root@ktlinux .ssh]# ssh 192.168.10.95
The authenticity of host '192.168.10.95 (192.168.10.95)' can't be established.
RSA key fingerprint is 35:f4:34:b8:29:00:02:87:14:47:56:f5:bb:6b:4c:68.
Are you sure you want to continue connecting (yes/no)? yes
Warning: Permanently added '192.168.10.95' (RSA) to the list of known hosts.
```

The first time around it will ask you if you wish to add the remote host to a list of known\_hosts, go ahead and say **yes**.

- Enter the password of the remote system correctly, once logged in check hostname and ip address to confirm login.

```
root@192.168.10.95's password:
Last login: Sun Sep  4 02:42:54 2011 from 192.168.1.10
[root@ktcl5 ~]# hostname
ktcl5.kt.com
[root@ktcl5 ~]# ifconfig eth0
eth0      Link encap:Ethernet HWaddr 00:0C:29:97:79:78
          inet addr:192.168.10.95 Bcast:192.168.10.255 Mask:255.255.255.0
```

- To leave the session, just type exit or logout command and you will be back to your own machine through which you are logged in.

```
[root@ktcl5 ~]# hostname  
ktcl5.kt.com  
[root@ktcl5 ~]# exit  
logout  
Connection to 192.168.10.95 closed.  
[root@ktlinux .ssh]# hostname  
ktlinux.kt.com  
[root@ktlinux .ssh]# ifconfig eth0  
eth0      Link encap:Ethernet HWaddr 00:0C:29:A4:5E:C8  
          inet addr:192.168.10.98 Bcast:192.168.10.255 Mask:255.255.255.0  
          inet6 addr: fe80::20c:29ff:fea4:5ec8/64 Scope:Link
```

## PASSWORD LESS LOGIN USING SSH KEYS

- As a system administrator, one person will be assigned to manage many systems, for example one person has to manage more than 10 systems at a time. In this situation admin has to transfer some files from one system to another 9 systems or vice versa, for every login on remote system it will prompt for password. Even for transferring files for every transfer we need to enter the password.
- Above situation will be very annoying for system admin to type password for every step. Therefore SSH provides a best way to escape password prompting every now and then.
- By generating SSH keys, a public key and a private key, an admin can copy the public key into other system and done, it will work as authorized access from the admin's system. Now whenever we are logging from admin's system to other system in which we have stored the public key of admin's system, it will not prompt us for password and we can login to that system as many time as we want without being prompt for the password.
- SSH keys are an implementation of public-key cryptography. They solve the problem of brute-force password attacks by making them computationally impractical.
- Public key cryptography uses a **PUBLIC KEY** to **encrypt data** and a **PRIVATE KEY** to **decrypt it**.

## LAB WORK:

### Generating SSH key pair

- To generate the SSH key pair, the syntax is

```
# ssh-keygen
```

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# ssh-keygen
Generating public/private rsa key pair.
Enter file in which to save the key (/root/.ssh/id_rsa): █
```

It will prompt above to mention the file where these keys shoud be stored, to keep its default directory just press “**Enter**”. The default location will be **/root/.ssh/** directory

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# ssh-keygen
Generating public/private rsa key pair.
Enter file in which to save the key (/root/.ssh/id_rsa): █
Enter passphrase (empty for no passphrase): █
```

Now it will ask for passphrase, which will be used instead of password. The passphrase will only be asked once per session. Enter your desired passphrase twice as shown on next page, and press enter.

```
Enter passphrase (empty for no passphrase):
Enter same passphrase again:
Your identification has been saved in /root/.ssh/id_rsa.
Your public key has been saved in /root/.ssh/id_rsa.pub.
The key fingerprint is:
14:e4:49:b2:c4:b5:a3:b9:31:3e:f4:d6:11:5f:29:ee root@ktlinux.kt.com
The key's randomart image is:
+--[ RSA 2048]----+
| .0o=
| ..= +
| . * . . o
| + . + o
| * S . o
| o = . o
| + o . E
| o
+-----+
```

Okay now our keys are successfully generated, go to **/root/.ssh/** directory and check for the keys.

```
#cd /root/.ssh
```

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# cd /root/.ssh  
[root@ktlinux .ssh]# ls  
id_rsa id_rsa.pub known_hosts  
[root@ktlinux .ssh]# cat id_rsa.pub  
ssh-rsa AAAAB3NzaC1yc2EAAAQEAw0sFIAZwmnB0KcBrRm71kze+RueIa0qx6HEPThdqdBpq0VG8IIIBgKdLvrVZbm  
PX1qmMnNDvJt7o8V9DSfHl2vwqEk8SoCuSQz53PwGJWSfmFYepkVF+0qpe3hsv2vFzFJmAoMINZZobkiwNH6Up9cQFPqMdpmP  
J5cTe24dQLQuasFUQwg/IF15PK8o7dk0CUf+86Pxdb9XS3qGIZ7n6ABsIhE0MTQ0F4uX/pnZNRWCZb7f8HFZ12x9Lsg20V0SU  
bbSELZmDfT0mLCP0ErUZ7oK8oTELcXl/sQ3Yddr5b09Caeb410hKoNCUSiUOSIUmRp3aSyaLIoSkTJ89IK35DQ== root@kt  
linux.kt.com
```

- The **id\_rsa** is a private key and **id\_rsa.pub** is the public key which will be used later to make password less login.

### Copying the public key on Client system

- To copy the server's public key in client system, the command is

```
#ssh-copy-id -i <public key location> <clients IP address> (or user @ client IP)
```

```
#ssh-copy-id -i /root/.ssh/id_rsa.pub 192.168.10.95
```

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# ssh-copy-id -i /root/.ssh/id_rsa.pub 192.168.10.95  
[root@192.168.10.95's password]:  
Now try logging into the machine, with "ssh '192.168.10.95'", and check in:  
.ssh/authorized_keys  
to make sure we haven't added extra keys that you weren't expecting.
```

Enter the password of the client to proceed, check it on client side whether it is copied or not

Move to client system and check whether the key is copied properly or not

- To check the key navigate to **/root/.ssh/** directory and check for **authorized\_keys** file which will hold all the system which are authorized and will not be asked for password..

```
#cd /root/.ssh/  
#cat authorized_keys
```

```
[root@ktcl5 ~]# cd /root/.ssh/  
[root@ktcl5 .ssh]# ls  
authorized_keys  
[root@ktcl5 .ssh]# cat authorized_keys  
ssh-rsa AAAAB3NzaC1yc2EAAAQEAw0sFIAZwmnB0KcBrRm71kze+RueIa0qx6HEPThdqdBpq0VG8IIIBgKdLvrVZbm  
PX1qmMnNDvJt7o8V9DSfHl2vwqEk8SoCuSQz53PwGJWSfmFYepkVF+0qpe3hsv2vFzFJmAoMINZZobkiwNH6Up9cQFPqMdpmP  
J5cTe24dQLQuasFUQwg/IF15PK8o7dk0CUf+86Pxdb9XS3qGIZ7n6ABsIhE0MTQ0F4uX/pnZNRWCZb7f8HFZ12x9Lsg20V0SU  
bbSELZmDfT0mLCP0ErUZ7oK8oTELcXl/sQ3Yddr5b09Caeb410hKoNCUSiUOSIUmRp3aSyaLIoSkTJ89IK35DQ== [root@kt  
linux.kt.com]  
[root@ktcl5 .ssh]#
```

Try login to the client machine using SSH, check whether it is asking for password

- For logging into client machine the procedure is same as shown earlier. But as we have assigned a passphrase it will ask us for it. Once you enter a passphrase it will last until you logged out of server's session. Let's see it practically.

**#ssh 192.168.10.95**

It will prompt for the passphrase as shown below, enter the passphrase and press Enter

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# ssh 192.168.10.95
```



```
Last login: Fri Oct 14 14:39:51 2011 from 192.168.10.98
```

```
[root@ktcl5 ~]# hostname  
ktcl5.kt.com  
[root@ktcl5 ~]#
```

- Exit the client session and login again. Notice the change
- While we logout the client session and re-login again it will not ask us for passphrase

```
[root@ktcl5 ~]# hostname  
ktcl5.kt.com  
[root@ktcl5 ~]# exit  
logout  
Connection to 192.168.10.95 closed.  
[root@ktlinux ~]# hostname  
ktlinux.kt.com  
[root@ktlinux ~]# ssh 192.168.10.95  
Last login: Fri Oct 14 14:43:41 2011 from 192.168.10.98  
[root@ktcl5 ~]# hostname  
ktcl5.kt.com  
[root@ktcl5 ~]#
```

- Logout of client session and completely logoff the server, login once again in server and connect the client using SSH.
- As we log off completely from the server then login once again and try to connect the client, it will prompt for passphrase. Observe it below

```
[root@ktcl5 ~]# exit  
logout  
Connection to 192.168.10.95 closed.  
[root@ktlinux ~]# exit
```

**Note:** if connected to the server via putty, above is complete log out just connect to the server once again as usual and try connecting to the client, but if connected graphically then go to **System -> logout <username>**, select it and click on **LOGOUT**. Login once more open terminal and reconnect to client and observe that it will prompt for passphrase.

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# ssh 192.168.10.95
```



## REMOTE FILE TRANSFER WITH SCP AND RSYNC

### SCP (SECURE COPY)

- scp stands for secure cp (copy), which means that you can copy files across an ssh connection that will be encrypted, and therefore secured. As scp will be using ssh protocol to transfer the data, hence it is termed as the safest method of transferring data from one location to another.

#### LAB WORK:

To copy a file using SCP to remote machine from source location

- We are having a file **ktfile** in “**/**” directory, in the server **ktlinux.kt.com** who’s IP is **192.168.10.98**, and we need to copy the same in **other** server’s i.e. **ktcl5.kt.com** with an IP **192.168.10.95**, **/root** directory. Then,

- The syntax for SCP a file from source location.

```
#scp <file name> <remote hosts IP>:<location to copy the file>
```

```
#scp /ktfile 192.168.10.95:/root/
```

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# hostname  
ktlinux.kt.com  
[root@ktlinux ~]# cat /ktfile  
Welcome to Kernel Technologies  
[root@ktlinux ~]# scp /ktfile 192.168.10.95:/root/  
ktfile
```

100% 31

- Now log in to destination system and check whether if the file is there.

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# ssh 192.168.10.95  
Last login: Fri Oct 14 15:29:23 2011 from 192.168.10.98  
[root@ktcl5 ~]# cd /root/  
[root@ktcl5 ~]# ls  
anaconda-ks.cfg  Documents  install.log          ktfile  Pictures  
Desktop        Downloads  install.log.syslog    Music   Public  
[root@ktcl5 ~]# cat ktfile  
Welcome to Kernel Technologies
```

To copy a file using SCP from a remote machine being in destination's location

- Let's reverse the previous task, login to **ktcl5** machine whose **IP** is **192.168.10.95**, and transfer a file from **ktlinux** machine whose **IP** is **192.168.10.98**
- Let's first remove the earlier copied file **ktfile**, then copy it again from destination's location.
- The syntax for SCP a file from destination location.

```
#scp <source system's IP>:<location of file to be copied> <destination location to copy>
```

```
[root@ktcl5 ~]# rm ktfile  
rm: remove regular empty file `ktfile'? y  
[root@ktcl5 ~]# scp 192.168.10.98:/ktfile /root/  
ktfile
```

100% 31

```
[root@ktcl5 ~]# cat ktfile  
Welcome to Kernel Technologies
```

Note: Password will be asked for every transfer if public key is not saved on both locations, in our case we have already generated and copied the key, hence there is no password prompts.

To copy a directory using SCP to remote machine from source's location

- We are having a directory **ktdir** in **"/"** directory, in the server **ktlinux.kt.com** who's IP is **192.168.10.98**, and we need to copy the same in **other** server's i.e. **ktcl5.kt.com** with an IP **192.168.10.95**, **/root** directory. Then,
- The syntax SCP a directory from source's location, the syntax is

```
#scp <option> <dir name> <remote hosts IP>:<location to copy the directory>
```

```
#scp -r /ktdir 192.168.10.95:/root/
```

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# tree /ktdir
/ktdir
├── ktfile1
├── ktfile2
├── ktfile3
├── ktfile4
└── ktfile5

0 directories, 5 files
[root@ktlinux ~]# scp -r /ktdir 192.168.10.95:/root/
ktfile1                                100%   0
ktfile4                                100%   0
ktfile5                                100%   0
ktfile2                                100%   0
ktfile3                                100%   0
```

To copy a directory using SCP from a remote machine being in destination's location

- Let's reverse the previous task, login to **ktcl5** machine who's IP is 192.168.10.95, and transfer a directory **ktdir** from **ktlinux** machine whose IP is **192.168.10.98**
- Let's first remove the earlier copied directory **ktdir**, then copy it again being in destination's location.
- The syntax for SCP a file from destination location.

```
#scp <option> <source system's IP>/<location of file to be copied> <destination location to
copy>
```

```
#scp -r 192.168.10.98:/ktdir /root/
```

```
[root@ktcl5 ~]# rm -rf /root/ktdir/
[root@ktcl5 ~]# scp -r 192.168.10.98:/ktdir /root/
ktfile1                                100%   0
ktfile4                                100%   0
ktfile5                                100%   0
ktfile2                                100%   0
ktfile3                                100%   0
[root@ktcl5 ~]# █
```

## RSYNC (REMOTE SYNCHRONIZATION)

- rsync is a very good program for backing up/mirroring a directory tree of files from one machine to another machine, and for keeping the two machines "in sync." It's designed to speed up file transfer by copying the differences between two files rather than copying an entire file every time.
- For example, Assume that we are supposed to take the backup of a system and copy the same to another system. For first time we will copy entire directory, but every day if we copy entire directory it will kill lots of time. In such situation if rsync is used it will only copy the updated files/directories rather than copying all files/directories inside main directory, which saves lots of time and speedup the transfer
- If rsync is combined with ssh it makes a great utility to sync the data securely. If rsync is not used with ssh, the risk sniffing will always be there.

### LAB WORK:-

Copy a directory using SCP, then update it and try rsync with SSH and check if the data is synced.

- As we have already copy a directory earlier using SCP from **ktlinux** to **ktcl5** system, let's use it for rsync.
- Update the directory with some files in **ktlinux** system

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# cd /ktdir
[root@ktlinux ktdir]# ls
ktfile1 ktfile2 ktfile3 ktfile4 ktfile5
[root@ktlinux ktdir]# touch ktfile{6..9}
[root@ktlinux ktdir]# ls
ktfile1 ktfile2 ktfile3 ktfile4 ktfile5 ktfile6 ktfile7 ktfile8 ktfile9
[root@ktlinux ktdir]#
```

- Check the content of same directory in **ktcl5**

```
[root@ktcl5 ~]# cd /root/ktdir
[root@ktcl5 ktdir]# ls
ktfile1 ktfile2 ktfile3 ktfile4 ktfile5
[root@ktcl5 ktdir]#
```

- Use rsync to sync the directory on **ktcl5** machine, with the one in **ktlinux** machine
- The syntax to rsync a directory is

**#rsync <options> <encryption> <source dir> <destination IP>/<location of destination dir>**

```
#rsync -rv -e ssh /ktdir 192.168.10.95:/root/
```

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# rsync -rv -e ssh /ktdir 192.168.10.95:/root/
sending incremental file list
ktdir/ktfile6
ktdir/ktfile7
ktdir/ktfile8
ktdir/ktfile9
```

Observe that it is only copying the files which are not there in destination's folder.

**Note:** If you don't want to use ssh just remove –e option from above syntax, but the drawback of it is there will be no encryption

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# rsync -rv /ktdir 192.168.10.95:/root/
sending incremental file list
ktdir/ktfile1
ktdir/ktfile2
ktdir/ktfile3
ktdir/ktfile4
ktdir/ktfile5
ktdir/ktfile6
ktdir/ktfile7
ktdir/ktfile8
ktdir/ktfile9
```

- To compress the data and send it in archive mode use **-avz** instead of **-rv** in rsync

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# rsync -rv -e ssh /ktdir 192.168.10.95:/root/
sending incremental file list
ktdir/ktfile6
ktdir/ktfile7
ktdir/ktfile8
ktdir/ktfile9
```

Sync a file using rsync with ssh

- Let's check the file called ktfile1 on both **ktlinux** and **ktcl5** machines

```
[root@ktlinux ktdir]# cat ktfile1
Welcome to Kernel Technologies
```

```
[root@ktcl5 ktdir]# cat ktfile1
Welcome to Kernel Technologies
```

- Update the file **ktfile1** in **ktlinux**, sync it with rsync to **ktcl5** and check the file again.
- The syntax for syncing a file is

```
#rsync -avz -e ssh <source file> <destination ip>:<location of file >
```

```
[root@ktlinux ktdir]# vim ktfile1
[root@ktlinux ktdir]# cat ktfile1
Welcome to Kernel Technologies
AMEERPET HYDERABAD
[root@ktlinux ktdir]# rsync -avz -e ssh /ktdir/ktfile1 192.168.10.95:/root/ktdir/
sending incremental file list
ktfile1

sent 123 bytes received 37 bytes 106.67 bytes/sec
```

```
[root@ktlinux ktdir]# cat ktfile1
Welcome to Kernel Technologies
AMEERPET HYDERABAD
```

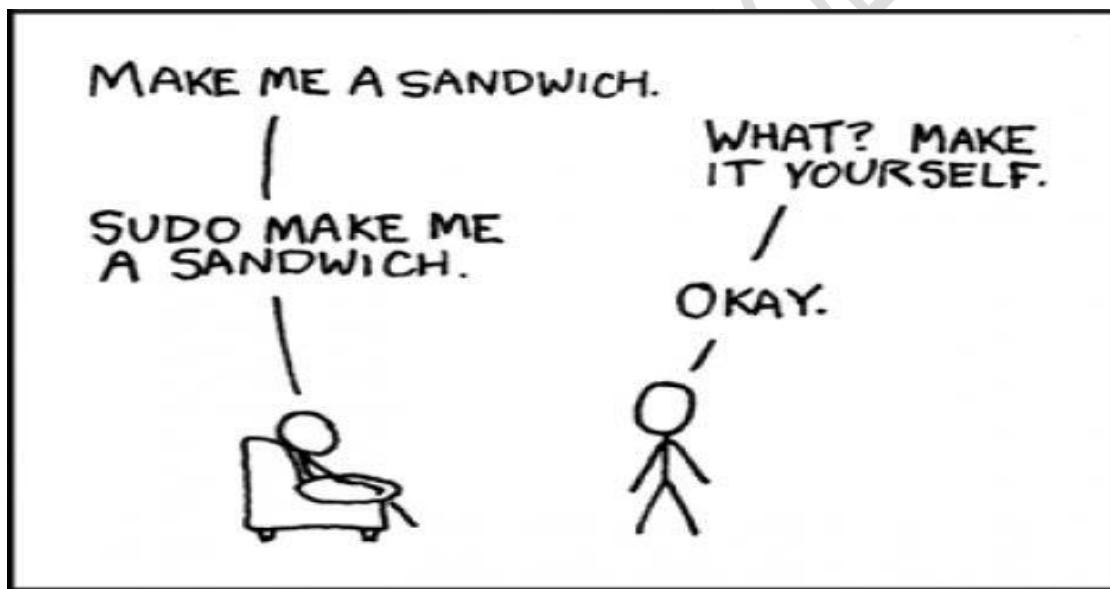
```
[root@ktcl5 ktdir]# cat ktfile1
Welcome to Kernel Technologies
AMEERPET HYDERABAD
```

Like this you can use rsync in many ways to transfer the updated file or files/directory to other system.

# ENHANCED USER SECURITY WITH SUDO

## SUDO

- Sudo stands for either "substitute user do" or "super user do" (depending upon how you want to look at it). What sudo does is incredibly important and crucial to many Linux distributions. Effectively, sudo allows a user to run a program as another user (most often the root user). There are many that think sudo is the best way to achieve "best practice security" on Linux
- Users can login using their username and password and can issue administrative commands placing sudo in front of the commands, e.g. sudo rpm -Uvh \*.rpm , to run the command which installs and updates programs in Linux (rpm).



- The file **/etc/sudoers** file has the rules that users have to follow when using sudo command. That means that whatever commands access is provided to any user in **/etc/sudoers** file, that user can only run those commands.
- Do not edit the **/etc/sudoers** directly; instead use "**visudo**" command to edit the sudoers file. There are two reasons for that- it prevents two users from editing the file at the same time, and it also provides limited syntax checking. Even if you are the only root user, you need the syntax checking, so use "visudo".

### Advantages of using SUDO:

Two of the best advantages about using sudo are:

### 1. Limited user privileges

As we have studied above that we can restrict users to use certain commands as a privileged user as per the role of the user.

**E.g.:** Networking commands for Network user and Admin commands for Admin users etc.

### 2. Logs of the actions done by users

All commands executed by sudo users will be stored in **/var/log/secure** file, but still if you want you can make your own log file by passing an entry in **/etc/sudoers** file at the bottom as **"Defaults logfile=/var/log/sudo.log"** or whatever name you want, to save the logs of what commands is executed by which sudo user.

## THE /etc/sudoers FILE

- As we learnt above that it is the configuration file for sudo users, which is used to assign specific commands to the specific users or groups.
- Always use **visudo** command to edit this file. it prevents two users from editing the file at the same time, and it also provides limited syntax checking .
- When you run **visudo** command the output will be as follows

```
## Next comes the main part: which users can run what software on
## which machines (the sudoers file can be shared between multiple
## systems).
## Syntax:
##
##       user      MACHINE=COMMANDS
##
## The COMMANDS section may have other options added to it.
##
## Allow root to run any commands anywhere
root    ALL=(ALL)      ALL
```

- As you can see there is basically one line

### root ALL=(ALL) ALL

- This lines means that the user root can execute from ALL terminals, acting as ALL (any) users, and run ALL (any) command.
- So the first part is the **user**, the second is the **terminal** from where the user can use sudo, the third is **as which user he may act**, and the last one, is which **commands** he may run.
- The advantage of **visudo** command , while editing if there are any syntax error it will be reflected as follows

```
[root@ktcl5 ~]#  
[root@ktcl5 ~]# visudo  
>>> /etc/sudoers: syntax error near line 93 <<<  
visudo: Warning: unused User_Alias KTADMIN  
What now? █
```

### LAB WORK:-

Allow a user “ktuser” all privileges like root

- To assign root privileges to user add a line by using sudoers file as shown below.  
**#visudo** (save the sudoers file as we save a vim file using “**wq!**”)

```
##      user      MACHINE=COMMANDS  
##  
## The COMMANDS section may have other options added to it.  
##  
## Allow root to run any commands anywhere  
root    ALL=(ALL)      ALL  
ktuser  ALL=(ALL)      ALL █
```

- Now logged in as ktuser and run admin commands like **fdisk -l** etc
- First try to run fdisk command normally and see what happens.

```
[root@ktcl5 ~]# su - ktuser  
[ktuser@ktcl5 ~]$ fdisk -l  
[ktuser@ktcl5 ~]$ fdisk /dev/sda
```

```
Unable to open /dev/sda  
[ktuser@ktcl5 ~]$ █
```

It will not allow a normal user to run privileged user's command

- Now run the same command using **sudo** before command

```
#sudo fdisk -l (or) #sudo fdisk /dev/sda
```

```
[ktuser@ktcl5 ~]$ sudo fdisk -l
[sudo] password for ktuser:

Disk /dev/sda: 21.5 GB, 21474836480 bytes
255 heads, 63 sectors/track, 2610 cylinders
Units = cylinders of 16065 * 512 = 8225280 bytes
Sector size (logical/physical): 512 bytes / 512 bytes
I/O size (minimum/optimal): 512 bytes / 512 bytes
Disk identifier: 0x0002e9e6

Device Boot Start End Blocks Id
/dev/sda1 1 1785 14336000 8e
/dev/sda2 * 1785 1811 204800 83
/dev/sda3 1811 1941 1048576 82
```

**Note:** Only for the first time of the session it will prompt for user's password to continue, but for rest of the process it will continue normally as shown below

```
[ktuser@ktcl5 ~]$ sudo fdisk /dev/sda
```

```
WARNING: DOS-compatible mode is deprecated. It's strongly recommended to
switch off the mode (command 'c') and change display units to
sectors (command 'u').
```

```
Command (m for help): █
```

Allow a group called ktgroup, all root privileges.

- Let's first check the members of ktgroup and then apply root privileges.

```
#tail /etc/gshadow
```

```
[root@ktcl5 ~]# tail /etc/gshadow
fuse:!::
stapdev:!::
stapusr:!::
gdm:!::
student:!::
ktuser:!::
ktgroup:!:!:musab,rahul,sai
musab:!::
rahul:!::
sai:!::
[root@ktcl5 ~]# █
```

- Okay as we know the users in ktgroup, let's assign it root privileges.  
**#visudo** and look for the below line.

```
## Allows members of the 'sys' group to run networking, software,  
## service management apps and more.  
# %sys ALL = NETWORKING, SOFTWARE, SERVICES, STORAGE, DELEGATING,  
  
## Allows people in group wheel to run all commands  
# %wheel      ALL=(ALL)      ALL  
%ktgroup     ALL=(ALL)      ALL
```

- Now, login as one of the user of ktgroup try root commands

```
[root@ktcl5 ~]# su - musab  
[musab@ktcl5 ~]$ sudo parted -l
```

We trust you have received the usual lecture from the local System Administrator. It usually boils down to these three things:

- #1) Respect the privacy of others.
- #2) Think before you type.
- #3) With great power comes great responsibility.

```
[sudo] password for musab:  
Model: VMware, VMware Virtual S (scsi)  
Disk /dev/sda: 21.5GB  
Sector size (logical/physical): 512B/512B  
Partition Table: msdos  
  
Number  Start   End    Size   Type      File system   Flags  
1       1049kB  14.7GB  14.7GB primary   ext4          lvm  
2       14.7GB   14.9GB  210MB   primary   ext4          boot  
3       14.9GB   16.0GB  1074MB  primary   linux-swap(v1)
```

Allow a user "ktuser2" to run all commands without prompting for his password any time.

- To allow run all commands, the syntax we have already seen, but allow him run command's without prompting password a small change is to be made,

```
## Allows people in group wheel to run all commands  
# %wheel      ALL=(ALL)      ALL  
%ktgroup     ALL=(ALL)      ALL  
## Same thing without a password  
# %wheel      ALL=(ALL)      NOPASSWD: ALL  
ktuser2      ALL=(ALL)      NOPASSWD: ALL
```

- Now login as that user and check whether password is prompted or not

```
[root@ktcl5 ~]# su - ktuser2
[ktuser2@ktcl5 ~]$ sudo parted -l
Model: VMware, VMware Virtual S (scsi)
Disk /dev/sda: 21.5GB
Sector size (logical/physical): 512B/512B
Partition Table: msdos

Number  Start   End     Size    Type      File system    Flags
 1      1049kB  14.7GB  14.7GB  primary   ext4          lvm
 2      14.7GB  14.9GB  210MB   primary   ext4          boot
 3      14.9GB  16.0GB  1074MB  primary   linux-swap(v1)
```

Note: - The same can be done for groups also, try it!

#### Restrict a user “ktuser” to run only two root commands.

- This task is very simple, just modify the previous permissions assign to ktuser.
- Let’s give ktuser to run only #fdisk and #parted command access.
- First check the complete path of those command by using following command

```
#which fdisk
#which parted
```

```
[root@ktcl5 ~]# which fdisk
/sbin/fdisk
[root@ktcl5 ~]# which parted
/sbin/parted
[root@ktcl5 ~]#
```

- Lets assign both above paths in sudoers file

```
#visudo
```

```
## Syntax:
##
##       user      MACHINE=COMMANDS
##
## The COMMANDS section may have other options added to it.
##
## Allow root to run any commands anywhere
root    ALL=(ALL)        ALL
ktuser  ALL=(ALL)        /sbin/fdisk, /sbin/parted
```

- Login as ktuser and try assigned commands and other commands as well

```
[root@ktcl5 ~]# su - ktuser
[ktuser@ktcl5 ~]$ sudo fdisk -l
[sudo] password for ktuser:

Disk /dev/sda: 21.5 GB, 21474836480 bytes
255 heads, 63 sectors/track, 2610 cylinders
Units = cylinders of 16065 * 512 = 8225280 bytes
Sector size (logical/physical): 512 bytes / 512 bytes

[ktuser@ktcl5 ~]$ sudo parted -l
Model: VMware, VMware Virtual S (scsi)
Disk /dev/sda: 21.5GB
Sector size (logical/physical): 512B/512B
Partition Table: msdos

[ktuser@ktcl5 ~]$ sudo useradd maarij
Sorry, user ktuser is not allowed to execute '/usr/sbin/useradd maarij' as root
on Ktcl5.kt.com.
[ktuser@ktcl5 ~]$ █
```

Note: - Try the same for groups also. It is exactly same

Allow a group “ ktgroup ” to run only network related commands as sudo user

- To allow a group run only network commands, first uncomment the following line

```
## Networking
# Cmnd_Alias NETWORKING = /sbin/route, /sbin/ifconfig, /bin/ping, /sbin/dhclient, /usr/bin/net,
sbin/iptables, /usr/bin/rfcomm, /usr/bin/wvdial, /sbin/iwconfig, /sbin/mii-tool
```

```
## Networking
Cmnd_Alias NETWORKING = /sbin/route, /sbin/ifconfig, /bin/ping, /sbin/dhclient, /usr/bin/net,
bin/iptables, /usr/bin/rfcomm, /usr/bin/wvdial, /sbin/iwconfig, /sbin/mii-tool
```

Observe that we have just remove ‘#’ before the line to make the line readable. And also observe that it contains all networking commands.

- Just replace “**ALL**” with “**NETWORKING**” from the last field of ktgroup line.

```
## Allows people in group wheel to run all commands
# %wheel        ALL=(ALL)        ALL
%ktgroup       ALL=(ALL)        NETWORKING█
```

NOTE: - **NETWORKING** is the name of the command alias where uncommented the line.

- Now login as one of the member of ktgroup and try some commands assigned it.

```
[root@ktcl5 ~]# su - rahul
[rahul@ktcl5 ~]$ sudo fdisk -l
[sudo] password for rahul:
Sorry, user rahul is not allowed to execute '/sbin/fdisk -l' as root on ktcl5.kt.com.
[rahul@ktcl5 ~]$ sudo route
[sudo] password for rahul:
Kernel IP routing table
Destination      Gateway          Genmask        Flags Metric Ref    Use Iface
192.168.10.0     *               255.255.255.0 U     0      0        0 eth0
link-local       *               255.255.0.0   U     1002   0        0 eth0
```

Create a customize commands alias and assign it to ktgroup with network command.

- Okay, first we need to create an alias say "**CUSTOM**" with some commands and assign it to ktgroup in addition to **NETWORK** commands.
- Let's firs get the path of the command need to be in **CUSTOM** alias

```
[root@ktcl5 ~]# which service
/sbin/service
[root@ktcl5 ~]# which rpm
/bin/rpm
[root@ktcl5 ~]# which yum
/usr/bin/yum
[root@ktcl5 ~]#
```

- Okay, now let's create an alias for these commands and assign it to ktgroup
- #visudo

```
## Networking
Cmnd_Alias NETWORKING = /sbin/route, /sbin/ifconfig, /bin/ping,
/bin/iptables, /usr/bin/rfcomm, /usr/bin/wvdial, /sbin/iwconfig,
## Custom
Cmnd_Alias CUSTOM = /sbin/service, /bin/rpm, /usr/bin/yum
```

- What are you waiting for! Assign it to ktgroup and save the file.

```
## Allows people in group wheel to run all commands
# %wheel      ALL=(ALL)      ALL
%ktgroup     ALL=(ALL)      NETWORKING, CUSTOM
```

- Login as one of the users in ktgroup and try newly added commands.

```
[root@ktcl5 ~]# su - rahul
[rahul@ktcl5 ~]$ sudo rpm -q vsftpd
vsftpd-2.2.2-6.el6.i686
[rahul@ktcl5 ~]$ sudo yum list installed |grep -i vsftpd
This system is not registered with RHN.
RHN support will be disabled.
vsftpd.i686 2.2.2-6.el6
EnterpriseLinux-201009221732.i386/6.0
```

#### Create a user alias and add some users from different groups and assign some root privileges

- This is very much similar to the previous task, instead of command alias we need to combine some user and give them some alias name which act as one user, but actually there are some users inside it. Then we can assign some privileges to them
- First we need available users and their groups.  
#tail /etc/passwd and #tail /etc/gshadow.

```
[root@ktcl5 ~]# tail /etc/passwd
nfsnobody:x:65534:65534:Anonymous
sshd:x:74:74:Privilege-separated :
pulse:x:496:494:PulseAudio System
gdm:x:42:42::/var/lib/gdm:/sbin/nologin
student:x:500:500:student:/home/student
ktuser:x:501:501::/home/ktuser:/bin/false
musab:x:502:503::/home/musab:/bin/false
rahul:x:503:504::/home/rahul:/bin/false
sai:x:504:505::/home/sai:/bin/false
ktuser2:x:505:506::/home/ktuser2:
```

```
[root@ktcl5 ~]# tail /etc/gshadow
stapdev:!::
stapusr:!::
gdm:!::
student:!::
ktuser:!::
ktgroup:!:!:musab,rahul,sai
musab:!::
rahul:!::
sai:!::
ktuser2:!::
```

- From the above query, we can take **sai** from **ktgroup**, **student** and **ktuser** and can make an alias user. Search “**User Aliases**”, under that create your own alias user as shown below.

#visudo

```
## User Aliases
## These aren't often necessary, as you can use regular groups
## (ie, from files, LDAP, NIS, etc) in this file - just use %groupname
## rather than USERALIAS
# User_Alias ADMINS = jsmith, mikem
User_Alias KTADMIN = sai, student, ktuser
```

- Now, let's assign some command to this alias user called **KTADMIN** and save the file.

```
## Allow root to run any commands anywhere
root    ALL=(ALL)      ALL
ktuser  ALL=(ALL)      /sbin/fdisk, /sbin/parted
KTADMIN ALL=(ALL)      CUSTOM, /sbin/umount
```

- Now login as one of those users and check the assigned commands for them.

```
[root@ktcl5 ~]# su - sai
[sai@ktcl5 ~]$ sudo route
[sudo] password for sai:
Kernel IP routing table
Destination      Gateway          Genmask        Flags Metric Ref
192.168.10.0    *               255.255.255.0 U     0      0
link-local       *               255.255.0.0   U     1002   0
[sai@ktcl5 ~]$ sudo umount
Usage: umount [-h | -V
                umount -a [-d] [-f] [-r] [-n] [-v] [-t fstypes] [-O opts]
```

**Note:** Checkout sudoers file for more option and try it out on your own!!!!

# SOFTWARE MANAGEMENT

To manage the software in Linux, two utilities are used,

1. RPM – REDHAT PACKAGE MANAGER
2. YUM – YELLOWDOG UPDATER MODIFIED

## RPM –REDHAT PACKAGE MANAGER

RPM is a package managing system (collection of tools to manage software packages). RPM is a powerful software management tool for installing, uninstalling, verifying, querying and updating software packages. RPM is a straight forward program to perform the above software management tasks.

Features:

- RPM can verify software packages.
- RPM can be served as a powerful search engine to search for software's.
- Components, software's etc can be upgraded using RPM without having to reinstall them
- Installing, reinstalling can be done with ease using RPM
- During updates RPM handles configuration files carefully, so that the customization is not lost.

## LAB WORK:-

To check all the installed packages in the system

- To check all the installed packages in the system, the syntax is
- **#rpm -qa** (where q stands for query, and a stands for all)

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# rpm -qa
```

```
Red_Hat_Enterprise_Linux-Release_Notes-6-en-US-1-21.el6.noarch
procps-3.2.8-14.el6.i686
net-snmp-libs-5.5-27.el6.i686
m17n-contrib-urdu-1.1.10-3.el6.noarch
bluez-libs-4.66-1.el6.i686
man-1.6f-29.el6.i686
xorg-x11-fonts-ISO8859-1-100dpi-7.2-9.1.el6.noarch
libXrender-0.9.5-1.el6.i686
nscd-2.12-1.7.el6.i686
dejavu-serif-fonts-2.30-2.el6.noarch
libXfixes-4.0.4-1.el6.i686
libchewing-0.3.2-27.el6.i686
dejavu-sans-mono-fonts-2.30-2.el6.noarch
libXdamage-1.1.2-1.el6.i686
```

Note:- The output of above command will be very lengthier.

To check whether a particular package is installed or not

- To check whether a package is installed or not out of the list of installed package, the syntax is

```
#rpm -qa <package name> or
#rpm -q < package name>
#rpm -qa vsftpd or #rpm -q vsftpd
```

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# rpm -qa vsftpd
vsftpd-2.2.2-6.el6.i686
[root@ktlinux ~]# rpm -q vsftpd
vsftpd-2.2.2-6.el6.i686
[root@ktlinux ~]# █
```

- One more method of checking the installed package, when you are not sure about the package name, like whether it starts with capital letter and full name etc.

```
#rpm -qa | grep -i < package name>
#rpm -qa |grep -i vsft*
```

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# rpm -qa |grep -i vsf*
cvs-1.11.23-11.el6.i686
lklug-fonts-0.6-4.20090803cvs.el6.noarch
libedit-2.11-4.20080712cvs.1.el6.i686
vsftpd-2.2.2-6.el6.i686
xdg-utils-1.0.2-15.20091016cvs.el6.noarch
[root@ktlinux ~]# █
```

To check whether a package is consistent or not, before installing it. (Testing the installation)

- To check the package's consistency,
- Move to the directory where you have kept the rpm package which you wish to install

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# cd /var/ftp/pub/rhel6/Packages/  
[root@ktlinux Packages]# ls |grep -i finger  
finger-0.17-39.el6.i686.rpm  
finger-server-0.17-39.el6.i686.rpm  
gdm-plugin-fingerprint-2.30.4-21.el6.i686.rpm
```

- The command used to check the package's consistency is

```
#rpm -ivh --test <package name>
```

Where i = install, v= verbose view, and h = hash progress.

```
#rpm -ivh --test finger-0.17-39.el6.i686.rpm
```

```
[root@ktlinux Packages]# rpm -ivh --test finger-0.17-39.el6.i686.rpm  
warning: finger-0.17-39.el6.i686.rpm: Header V3 RSA/SHA256 Signature, key ID fd431d51: NOKEY  
Preparing... ###### [100%]  
[root@ktlinux Packages]#
```

If the installation status shows 100%, then the package is good or consistent.

But while showing the hash progress if it shows any error, then the package is inconsistent.

To install a package using rpm command and check whether it is installed properly or not.

- To install the package first we need to be in the directory of the package

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# cd /var/ftp/pub/rhel6/Packages/  
[root@ktlinux Packages]# ls |grep -i finger  
finger-0.17-39.el6.i686.rpm  
finger-server-0.17-39.el6.i686.rpm  
gdm-plugin-fingerprint-2.30.4-21.el6.i686.rpm
```

- To install the package the syntax is

```
#rpm -ivh <package name>
```

```
#rpm -ivh finger-0.17-39.el6.i686.rpm
```

```
[root@ktlinux Packages]# rpm -ivh finger-0.17-39.el6.i686.rpm  
warning: finger-0.17-39.el6.i686.rpm: Header V3 RSA/SHA256 Signature, key ID fd431d51: NOKEY  
Preparing... ###### [100%]  
1:finger ###### [100%]  
[root@ktlinux Packages]#
```

- To check whether it is installed or not

```
#rpm -qa finger
```

```
[root@ktlinux Packages]# rpm -qa finger
finger-0.17-39.el6.i686
[root@ktlinux Packages]#
```

- Check the installed package by using it command, finger is used to check user's details.

```
#finger <user name>
```

```
#finger ktuser
```

```
[root@ktlinux Packages]# finger ktuser
Login: ktuser
Directory: /home/ktuser
Never logged in.
No mail.
No Plan.
[root@ktlinux Packages]#
```

To remove a package or uninstall the package

- To remove a package the syntax is

```
#rpm -e < package name>
```

```
#rpm -e finger
```

Verify it by #rpm -q or rpm -qa command

```
[root@ktlinux Packages]# rpm -e finger
[root@ktlinux Packages]# rpm -q finger
package finger is not installed
[root@ktlinux Packages]# rpm -qa finger
[root@ktlinux Packages]#
```

To see the information about the package before installing

- To see the info about a particular package which is not installed, move to the directory where you have kept the packages.

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# cd /var/ftp/pub/rhel6/Packages/
[root@ktlinux Packages]# ls |grep -i finger
finger-0.17-39.el6.i686.rpm
finger-server-0.17-39.el6.i686.rpm
gdm-plugin-fingerprint-2.30.4-21.el6.i686.rpm
```

- To see the info of a package, the syntax is

**#rpm –qip <package name> (where q is for query, i is for install and p is for package)**

**#rpm –qip finger-0.17-39-el6.1686.rpm**

```
[root@ktlinux Packages]# rpm -qip finger-0.17-39.el6.1686.rpm
warning: finger-0.17-39.el6.1686.rpm: Header V3 RSA/SHA256 Signature, key ID fd431d51: NOKEY
Name        : finger                           Relocations: (not relocatable)
Version     : 0.17                            Vendor: Red Hat, Inc.
Release     : 39.el6                          Build Date: Fri 20 Nov 2009 09:03:29 AM IST
Install Date: (not installed)           Build Host: ls20-bc1-14.build.redhat.com
Group       : Applications/Internet      Source RPM: finger-0.17-39.el6.src.rpm
Size        : 25730                           License: BSD
Signature   : RSA/8, Mon 16 Aug 2010 09:36:07 PM IST, Key ID 199e2f91fd431d51
Packager    : Red Hat, Inc. <http://bugzilla.redhat.com/bugzilla>
Summary     : The finger client
Description :
Finger is a utility which allows users to see information about system
users (login name, home directory, name, how long they've been logged
in to the system, etc.). The finger package includes a standard
finger client.
```

To see the information about the installed package

- To see the information or details about the installed package, the syntax is

**#rpm –qi < package name >**

**#rpm –qi vsftpd**

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# rpm -qi vsftpd
Name        : vsftpd                           Relocations: (not relocatable)
Version     : 2.2.2                            Vendor: Red Hat, Inc.
Release     : 6.el6                           Build Date: Wed 26 May 2010 06:16:46 PM IST
Install Date: Wed 12 Oct 2011 05:22:23 PM IST  Build Host: x86-009.build.bos.redhat.com
Group       : System Environment/Daemons      Source RPM: vsftpd-2.2.2-6.el6.src.rpm
Size        : 351576                           License: GPLv2 with exceptions
Signature   : RSA/8, Tue 17 Aug 2010 01:49:04 AM IST, Key ID 199e2f91fd431d51
Packager    : Red Hat, Inc. <http://bugzilla.redhat.com/bugzilla>
URL         : http://vsftpd.beasts.org/
Summary     : Very Secure Ftp Daemon
Description :
vsftpd is a Very Secure FTP daemon. It was written completely from
scratch.
[root@ktlinux ~]#
```

**To check the package of a particular command:**

- To check the package of a particular command, first check the installed location of a command

**#which <command name>**

#which cat

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# which cat  
/bin/cat  
[root@ktlinux ~]#
```

- Now, use the following command,

**#rpm -qf <path of the command>**

#rpm -qf /bin/cat

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# rpm -qf /bin/cat  
coreutils-8.4-9.el6.i686  
[root@ktlinux ~]#
```

### To install a package forcefully

- Before installing a package forcefully, first understand a situation where we need this force option.
- Let me corrupt one command and show you how to install its package forcefully.
- First check the package of the command we are going to corrupt. Let say **mount** command

**#which mount**

**#rpm -qf /bin/mount**

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# which mount  
/bin/mount  
[root@ktlinux ~]# rpm -qf /bin/mount  
util-linux-ng-2.17.2-6.el6.i686  
[root@ktlinux ~]#
```

- Okay, so we know the package of mount let's copy other commands content over mount command. Let copy **date** command's contents over **mount** command.

**#cp /bin/date /bin/mount**

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# cp /bin/date /bin/mount  
cp: overwrite '/bin/mount'? y  
[root@ktlinux ~]#
```

- Now when you run mount command it will show date, that means it is corrupted.

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# mount  
Sat Oct 15 03:25:34 IST 2011  
[root@ktlinux ~]# date  
Sat Oct 15 03:25:41 IST 2011  
[root@ktlinux ~]# █
```

- So, to fix the mount command we need to reinstall its package, let's install the package and check whether mount command is fixed or not. Move to the folder where you kept the packages and install it

**#rpm -ivh util-linux-ng 2.17.2-6.el6.i686**

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# cd /var/ftp/pub/rhel6/Packages/  
[root@ktlinux Packages]# rpm -ivh util-linux-ng-2.17.2-6.el6.i686.rpm  
warning: util-linux-ng-2.17.2-6.el6.i686.rpm: Header V3 RSA/SHA256 Signature, key ID fd431d51: NO  
KEY  
Preparing... #### [100%]  
[root@ktlinux Packages]# package util-linux-ng-2.17.2-6.el6.i686 is already installed  
[root@ktlinux Packages]# █
```

It says the package is already installed, check by using mount command whether it is working fine.

```
[root@ktlinux Packages]# mount  
Sat Oct 15 03:30:54 IST 2011  
[root@ktlinux Packages]# █
```

- Oops...!!! It isn't fixed yet, now in such to force the installation to be done, the syntax is  
**#rpm -ivh <package name> --force**  
**# rpm -ivh util-linux-ng 2.17.2-6.el6.i686 --force**

```
[root@ktlinux Packages]# rpm -ivh util-linux-ng-2.17.2-6.el6.i686.rpm --force
warning: util-linux-ng-2.17.2-6.el6.i686.rpm: Header V3 RSA/SHA256 Signature, key ID fd431d51: NO
KEY
Preparing... ################################################ [100%]
1:util-linux-ng ################################################ [100%]
[root@ktlinux Packages]# mount
/dev/mapper/rootvg_ktlinux-LogVol00 on / type ext4 (rw)
proc on /proc type proc (rw)
sysfs on /sys type sysfs (rw)
devpts on /dev/pts type devpts (rw,gid=5,mode=620)
tmpfs on /dev/shm type tmpfs (rw,rootcontext="system_u:object_r:tmpfs_t:s0")
/dev/sda2 on /boot type ext4 (rw)
/dev/mapper/rootvg_ktlinux-LogVol01 on /home type ext4 (rw)
/dev/mapper/rootvg_ktlinux-LogVol04 on /opt type ext4 (rw)
/dev/mapper/rootvg_ktlinux-LogVol03 on /usr type ext4 (rw)
/dev/mapper/rootvg_ktlinux-LogVol02 on /var type ext4 (rw)
none on /proc/sys/fs/binfmt_misc type binfmt_misc (rw)
sunrpc on /var/lib/nfs/rpc_pipefs type rpc_pipefs (rw)
gvfs-fuse-daemon on /root/.gvfs type fuse.gvfs-fuse-daemon (rw,nosuid,nodev)
[root@ktlinux Packages]# █
```

Okay then we've not only installed the package successfully but we have also fixed the command. Congratulations.

To see the configuration files of the installed package

- To see the configuration files of the installed package, the syntax is

**#rpm -qlc <package name>**

```
[root@ktlinux Packages]# rpm -qlc vsftpd
/etc/logrotate.d/vsftpd
/etc/pam.d/vsftpd
/etc/vsftpd/ftptusers
/etc/vsftpd/user_list
/etc/vsftpd/vsftpd.conf
```

To see the directory with which a particular package is associated.

- To see the directory with which a package is associated, the syntax is

**#rpm -qld <package name>**

**#rpm -qld vsftpd**

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# rpm -qld vsftpd
/usr/share/doc/vsftpd-2.2.2/AUDIT
/usr/share/doc/vsftpd-2.2.2/BENCHMARKS
/usr/share/doc/vsftpd-2.2.2/BUGS
/usr/share/doc/vsftpd-2.2.2/COPYING
/usr/share/doc/vsftpd-2.2.2/Changelog
/usr/share/doc/vsftpd-2.2.2/EXAMPLE/INTERNET_SITE/README
/usr/share/doc/vsftpd-2.2.2/EXAMPLE/INTERNET_SITE/README.configuration
/usr/share/doc/vsftpd-2.2.2/EXAMPLE/INTERNET_SITE/vsftpd.conf
/usr/share/doc/vsftpd-2.2.2/EXAMPLE/INTERNET_SITE/vsftpd.xinetd
/usr/share/doc/vsftpd-2.2.2/EXAMPLE/INTERNET SITE NOINETD/README
```

### To install a package without installing dependencies

- Some rpm requires some other packages to be installed before it can be installed; this requirement is termed as '**dependency**'. This means that before installing a package we need to install the required packages first, so that it can work properly.
- But sometimes we can skip installing the dependency, if we don't have that dependent software with us.
- The syntax for it is

```
#rpm -ivh <package name> - -nodeps
```

```
#rpm -ivh util-linux-ng 2.17.2-6.el6.i686 - -nodeps
```

### To update a particular package

- To update a package the syntax is

```
#rpm -Uvh <package name>
```

```
#rpm -Uvh vsftpd -2.2.4
```

### To check the changes are made after installation of package

- First let's make some changes in the configuration file of a package say **vsftpd**

```
#vim /etc/vsftpd/vsftpd.conf
```

```
# Example config file /etc/vsftpd/vsftpd.conf
#
##### The default compiled in settings are fairly paranoid. This sample file
# loosens things up a bit, to make the ftp daemon more usable.
# Please see vsftpd.conf.5 for all compiled in defaults.
```

- Now run the following command and check for the result.

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# vim /etc/vsftpd/vsftpd.conf
[root@ktlinux ~]# rpm -V vsftpd
S.5....T. c /etc/vsftpd/vsftpd.conf
```

It is showing that on line 5 in config file, some changes have been made. Isn't it cool!!!

## YUM – YELLOWDOG UPDATER MODIFIED

- The Yellow dog Updater Modified (YUM) is a package management application for computers running Linux operating systems.
- Yum is a standard method of managing the installation and removal of software. Several graphical applications exist to allow users to easily add and remove packages; however, many are simply friendly interfaces with yum running underneath. These programs present the user with a list of available software and pass the user's selection on for processing. It is yum that actually downloads the packages and installs them in the background.
- Packages are downloaded from collections called **repositories**, which may be online, on a network, and/or on installation media. If one package due to be installed relies on another being present, this **dependency** can usually be resolved without the user needing to know the details. For example, a game being installed may depend on specific software to play its music. The problem of solving such dependencies can be handled by yum because it knows about all the other packages that are available in the repository.
- Yum will work only from Cantos 5 / Red hat 5 and latest versions of fedora. For Old releases like RHEL 4 you need to use up2date command to update your rpm based packages.
- Yum uses a configuration file at **/etc/yum.conf**

### LAB WORK:-

Configuring a YUM server and adding the info about it in at least one client

To configure a YUM server the steps are.

- Make sure that vsftpd package is installed, if not install it.
- Copy entire RHEL6 DVD to “/var/ftp/pub/rhel6” directory, where rhel6 dir is to made by us only it is not default dir.
- Make a repo file as “kt.repo”in /etc/yum.repos.d directory
- Clean the yum cache and check the package list using yum command

Let's start with the first step

- Checking the vsftpd package is installed or not.

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# rpm -qa vsftpd  
vsftpd-2.2.2-6.el6.i686  
[root@ktlinux ~]# █
```

- If it is not installed, then go to dvd's mount point and navigate to “**Packages**” directory and install it as shown below.

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# mount  
/dev/sr0 on /media/RHEL_6 0 i386 Disc 1 type iso9660
```

- As we know the mount point of dvd is **/media/RHEL\_6**, move to its location and enter into **Packages** directory.

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# cd /media/RHEL_6.0\ i386\ Disc\ 1/  
[root@ktlinux RHEL_6.0 i386 Disc 1]# cd Packages/  
[root@ktlinux Packages]# ls |grep -i vsftpd  
vsftpd-2.2.2-6.el6.i686.rpm  
[root@ktlinux Packages]# rpm -ivh vsftpd-2.2.2-6.el6.i686.rpm  
warning: vsftpd-2.2.2-6.el6.i686.rpm: Header V3 RSA/SHA256 Signature, key ID fd431d51: NOKEY  
Preparing... ###### [100%]  
package vsftpd-2.2.2-6.el6.i686 is already installed  
[root@ktlinux Packages]# █
```

As it is already installed, it is not being installed.

Copy entire RHEL6 DVD to “/var/ftp/pub/rhel6” directory, Where rhel6 dir is to be made by user only it is not a default dir

- First make an directory “rhel6” under **/var/ftp/pub**

```
#mkdir /var/ftp/pub/rhel6
```

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# mkdir /var/ftp/pub/rhel6  
[root@ktlinux ~]# cd /var/ftp/pub/  
[root@ktlinux pub]# ls  
[root@ktlinux pub]# █
```

- Now copy the RHEL6 DVD to /var/ftp/pub/rhel6 directory with its default permission

```
#cp -rvfp /media/RHEL_6.0\ i386\ Disc\ 1/* /var/ftp/pub/rhel6
```

```
[root@ktcl5 ~]# cp -rvfp /media/RHEL_6.0\ i386\ Disc\ 1/* /var/ftp/pub/rhel6/
`/media/RHEL_6.0 i386 Disc 1/EULA' -> `/var/ftp/pub/rhel6/EULA'
`/media/RHEL_6.0 i386 Disc 1/GPL' -> `/var/ftp/pub/rhel6/GPL'
`/media/RHEL_6.0 i386 Disc 1/HighAvailability' -> `/var/ftp/pub/rhel6/HighAvailability'
`/media/RHEL_6.0 i386 Disc 1/HighAvailability/Packages' -> `/var/ftp/pub/rhel6/HighAvailability/P
ackages'
`/media/RHEL_6.0 i386 Disc 1/HighAvailability/TRANS.TBL' -> `/var/ftp/pub/rhel6/HighAvailability/
TRANS.TBL'
`/media/RHEL_6.0 i386 Disc 1/HighAvailability/repo' -> `/var/ftp/pub/rhel6/HighAvailability/r
epo'
`/media/RHEL_6.0 i386 Disc 1/HighAvailability/repo/160a3cc3436b80ac6304f30c1330b0eaf299d2cd1a
6e06929151305498ef9ac0-other.sqlite.bz2' -> `/var/ftp/pub/rhel6/HighAvailability/repo/160a3cc
3436b80ac6304f30c1330b0eaf299d2cd1a6e06929151305498ef9ac0-other.sqlite.bz2'
`/media/RHEL_6.0 i386 Disc 1/HighAvailability/repo/6ea28d988fa906de8fe148bf9d15351ab59b34edb4
469ff5a05d26f6c3f665ec-other.xml.gz' -> `/var/ftp/pub/rhel6/HighAvailability/repo/6ea28d988fa
906de8fe148bf9d15351ab59b34edb4469ff5a05d26f6c3f665ec-other.xml.gz'
`/media/RHEL_6.0 i386 Disc 1/HighAvailability/repo/8e5b19b62dcb8bd3c5cafe6f785324175ac589f3f1
1217994d2a8ad677659306-primary.sqlite.bz2' -> `/var/ftp/pub/rhel6/HighAvailability/repo/8e5b1
```

**Note:-** it will take around 5 minutes copy all the data, based on the DVD

- Check the directory after copying is finished.

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# cd /var/ftp/pub/rhel6/
[root@ktlinux rhel6]# ls
EULA                                RELEASE-NOTES-es-ES.html    RELEASE-NOTES-ru-RU.html
GPL                                 RELEASE-NOTES-fr-FR.html    RELEASE-NOTES-si-LK.html
HighAvailability                   RELEASE-NOTES-gu-IN.html    RELEASE-NOTES-ta-IN.html
images                             RELEASE-NOTES-hi-IN.html    RELEASE-NOTES-te-IN.html
isolinux                          RELEASE-NOTES-it-IT.html    RELEASE-NOTES-zh-CN.html
LoadBalancer                      RELEASE-NOTES-ja-JP.html    RELEASE-NOTES-zh-TW.html
media.repo                           RELEASE-NOTES-kn-IN.html    repodata
Packages                          RELEASE-NOTES-ko-KR.html    ResilientStorage
README                               RELEASE-NOTES-ml-IN.html    RPM-GPG-KEY-redhat-beta
RELEASE-NOTES-as-IN.html             RELEASE-NOTES-mr-IN.html    RPM-GPG-KEY-redhat-release
RELEASE-NOTES-bn-IN.html             RELEASE-NOTES-or-IN.html    Server
RELEASE-NOTES-de-DE.html             RELEASE-NOTES-pa-IN.html    TRANS.TBL
RELEASE-NOTES-en-US.html            RELEASE-NOTES-pt-BR.html
```

Okay, then half of our configuration is completed.

Make a repo file as "kt.repo" in /etc/yum.repos.d directory

- The file which we make inside /etc/yum.reops.d, will be functioning as the repository address and configuration file. Create the file with following details.

```
#vim /etc/yum.reops.d/kt.repo
```

```
[KTREPO]
name=Redhat.enterprise 6
baseurl=file:///var/ftp/pub/rhel6
enabled=1
gpgcheck=0
```

I guess there's some explanation requires about the fields we have entered.

- **[KTREPO]** is the short name given to the repository.
- **name** is the complete name for the repository.
- **baseurl** is the location of the dvd dump we have made.
- **enabled** is to enable or disable the repository. The possible value for it is **0** and **1**, where **0** means disable and **1** means enabled.
- **gpgcheck** With the gpgcheck option, all packages must be signed, and yum must be able to verify the signatures on packages from **red hat**. If gpgcheck=0, there will be no package signing by red hat and signature verification.

Clean the yum cache and check the package list using yum command

- To clear the cache use the following command

```
#yum clean all
```

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# yum clean all
Loaded plugins: refresh-packagekit, rhnplugin
Cleaning up Everything
```

If the configuration is correct, then the following output will be displayed, otherwise there will be some errors displayed.

- Now let's check whether our repository is functioning properly or not.

```
#yum list (to list all the packages in repository)
```

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# yum list
Loaded plugins: refresh-packagekit, rhnplugin
This system is not registered with RHN.
RHN support will be disabled.

Installed Packages
ConsoleKit.i686                  0.4.1-3.el6          @anaconda-RedHatEnterp
iseLinux-201009221732.i386/6.0    0.4.1-3.el6          @anaconda-RedHatEnterp
ConsoleKit-libs.i686                0.4.1-3.el6          @anaconda-RedHatEnterp
iseLinux-201009221732.i386/6.0    0.4.1-3.el6          @anaconda-RedHatEnterp
ConsoleKit-x11.i686                 0.4.1-3.el6          @anaconda-RedHatEnterp
iseLinux-201009221732.i386/6.0    0.4.1-3.el6          @anaconda-RedHatEnterp
DeviceKit-power.i686                014-1.el6           @anaconda-RedHatEnterp
iseLinux-201009221732.i386/6.0    2.28.0-6.el6         @anaconda-RedHatEnterp
GConf2.i686                          2.28.0-6.el6         @anaconda-RedHatEnterp
iseLinux-201009221732.i386/6.0    2.28.0-6.el6         @anaconda-RedHatEnterp
GConf2-gtk.i686                     2.28.0-6.el6         @anaconda-RedHatEnterp
iseLinux-201009221732.i386/6.0    3.24-6.el6           @anaconda-RedHatEnterp
MAKEDEV.i686                         3.24-6.el6           @anaconda-RedHatEnterp
```

If the above output is displayed then congratulation you have successfully configured the yum Server

### Configure the yum client and check whether yum server is responding to it:

Configuring a yum client is very simple with just three steps.

- Install ftp package , so that packages can be accessed from client
- Make a repo file /etc/yum.repo.d/ as “ktcl5.repo”
- Clean the cache and check whether yum server is responding or not

Install ftp package, so that packages can be accessed from client

- Install the ftp package from rhel dvd in **Packages** directory.

```
[root@ktcl5 Packages]# cd /media/RHEL_6.0\ i386\ Disc\ 1/Packages/  
[root@ktcl5 Packages]# ls |grep -i ftp  
ftp-0.17-51.1.el6.i686.rpm  
gvfs-obexftp-1.4.3-9.el6.i686.rpm  
lftp-4.0.9-1.el6.i686.rpm  
report-config-ftp-0.18-7.el6.i686.rpm  
report-plugin-ftp-0.18-7.el6.i686.rpm  
tftp-0.49-5.1.el6.i686.rpm  
tftp-server-0.49-5.1.el6.i686.rpm  
vsftpd-2.2.6.el6.i686.rpm  
[root@ktcl5 Packages]# rpm -ivh ftp-0.17-51.1.el6.i686.rpm  
warning: ftp-0.17-51.1.el6.i686.rpm: Header V3 RSA/SHA256 Signature, key ID fd431d51: NOKEY  
Preparing... ################################ [100%]  
1:ftp ################################ [100%]  
[root@ktcl5 Packages]# rpm -q ftp  
ftp-0.17-51.1.el6.i686  
[root@ktcl5 Packages]#
```

Make a repo file /etc/yum.repo.d/ as “ktcl5.repo”

- Just make a repo file like we did for server but with only one change in baseurl as shown below

**#vim /etc/yum.repos.d/ktcl5.repo**

```
[KTREPO]  
name=redhat.enterprise6  
baseurl=ftp://192.168.10.98/pub/rhel6  
enabled=1  
gpgcheck=0
```

Note:- baseurl =ftp://192.168.10.98/pub/rhel6 refers to the server's ftp address.

Clean the cache and check whether yum server is responding or not

- Just clean the cache as we have done earlier in server's configuration.

```
[root@ktcl5 ~]# yum clean all
Loaded plugins: refresh-packagekit, rhnplugin
Cleaning up Everything
[root@ktcl5 ~]# ■
```

- Check whether the server is responding to clients yum request.

```
#yum list
```

```
[root@ktcl5 ~]# yum list
Loaded plugins: refresh-packagekit, rhnplugin
This system is not registered with RHN.
RHN support will be disabled.
KTREPO
KTREPO/primary_db
Installed Packages

ConsoleKit.i686          0.4.1-3.el6      @anaconda-RedHatEnterpr
iseLinux-201009221732.i386/6.0
ConsoleKit-libs.i686        0.4.1-3.el6      @anaconda-RedHatEnterpr
iseLinux-201009221732.i386/6.0
ConsoleKit-x11.i686         0.4.1-3.el6      @anaconda-RedHatEnterpr
iseLinux-201009221732.i386/6.0
DeviceKit-power.i686        014-1.el6       @anaconda-RedHatEnterpr
iseLinux-201009221732.i386/6.0
GConf2.i686                 2.28.0-6.el6     @anaconda-RedHatEnterpr
iseLinux-201009221732.i386/6.0
GConf2-gtk.i686              2.28.0-6.el6     @anaconda-RedHatEnterpr
iseLinux-201009221732.i386/6.0
```

If your output is like this then you have successfully configured a yum client as well. Congrats!!!  
Now you can configure as many as clients you want.

- In case if yum list command is not listing the package then delete the following file in **/etc/yum.repos.d/** at client side only.

```
[root@ktcl5 ~]# cd /etc/yum.repos.d/
[root@ktcl5 yum.repos.d]# ls
ktcl5.repo  packagekit-media.repo
[root@ktcl5 yum.repos.d]# rm -f packagekit-media.repo
```

- Clean the cache and list the packages, it will certainly solve the problem.

## Working with YUM commands.

To list the available packages in the repository

```
#yum list ( or ) #yum list all ( or ) #yum list |more (to view line wise)
```

As we have seen first command, second will also gives exactly same output. let us see the third command

### #yum list | more

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# yum list |more
Loaded plugins: refresh-packagekit, rhnplugin
This system is not registered with RHN.
RHN support will be disabled.
Installed Packages
ConsoleKit.i686          0.4.1-3.el6      @anaconda-RedHatEnterprise
iseLinux-201009221732.i386/6.0
ConsoleKit-libs.i686        0.4.1-3.el6      @anaconda-RedHatEnterprise

NetworkManager.i686         1:0.8.1-5.el6    @anaconda-RedHatEnterprise
iseLinux-201009221732.i386/6.0
NetworkManager-glib.i686     1:0.8.1-5.el6    @anaconda-RedHatEnterprise
iseLinux-201009221732.i386/6.0
NetworkManager-gnome.i686    1:0.8.1-5.el6    @anaconda-RedHatEnterprise
iseLinux-201009221732.i386/6.0
DRBit2.i686                 2.14.17-3.1.el6  @anaconda-RedHatEnterprise
iseLinux-201009221732.i386/6.0
PackageKit.i686              0.5.8-13.el6    @anaconda-RedHatEnterprise
iseLinux-201009221732.i386/6.0
--More--
```

To list all the installed packages in the system.

- To view all the installed packages in the system, the syntax is

### #yum list installed

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# yum list installed
Loaded plugins: refresh-packagekit, rhnplugin
This system is not registered with RHN.
RHN support will be disabled.
Installed Packages
ConsoleKit.i686          0.4.1-3.el6      @anaconda-RedHatEnterprise
erpriseLinux-201009221732.i386/6.0
ConsoleKit-libs.i686        0.4.1-3.el6      @anaconda-RedHatEnterprise
erpriseLinux-201009221732.i386/6.0
ConsoleKit-x11.i686         0.4.1-3.el6      @anaconda-RedHatEnterprise
erpriseLinux-201009221732.i386/6.0
DeviceKit-power.i686        014-1.el6       @anaconda-RedHatEnterprise
```

To check a particular package is installed or not

- To check whether a package is installed or not the syntax is

```
#yum list installed <package name>
```

```
#yum list installed vsftpd
```

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# yum list installed vsftpd
Loaded plugins: refresh-packagekit, rhnplugin
This system is not registered with RHN.
RHN support will be disabled.
Installed Packages
vsftpd.i686      2.2.2-6.el6      @anaconda-RedHatEnterpriseLinux-201009221732.i386/6.0
[root@ktlinux ~]#
```

To install a package using yum

- Installing a package using yum does not require full package name as in the case of rpm, and it also automatically resolves the dependencies as well.
- The syntax for installing a package is

**#yum install <package name>**

**#yum install finger\*** (where \* means anything with name “finger”)

```
Setting up Install Process
Resolving Dependencies
--> Running transaction check
--> Package finger.i686 0:0.17-39.el6 set to be updated
-->> Package finger-server.i686 0:0.17-39.el6 set to be updated
--> Processing Dependency: xinetd for package: finger-server-0.17-39.el6.i686
--> Running transaction check
-->> Package xinetd.i686 2:2.3.14-29.el6 set to be updated
-->> Finished Dependency Resolution

Dependencies Resolved

=====
Package           Arch    Version        Repository      Size
=====
Installing:
  finger          i686   0.17-39.el6   KTREPO          22 k
  finger-server   i686   0.17-39.el6   KTREPO          16 k
Installing for dependencies:
  xinetd          i686   2:2.3.14-29.el6 KTREPO         121 k

Transaction Summary
=====
Install      3 Package(s)
Upgrade      0 Package(s)

Total download size: 158 k
Installed size: 294 k
Is this ok [y/N]: y
```

It will prompt you for y/n to continue, type y and continue installing the package

- installing a package without being prompt for y or n, the syntax is

**#yum install <package name> -y**

**#yum install finger\* -y**

```
Installing for dependencies:
xinetd           i686      2:2.3.14-29.el6      KTREPO      121 k

Transaction Summary
=====
Install   3 Package(s)
Upgrade  0 Package(s)

Total download size: 158 k
Installed size: 294 k
Downloading Packages:
-----
Total                                         437 kB/s | 158 kB  00:00
Running rpm_check_debug
Running Transaction Test
Transaction Test Succeeded
Running Transaction
  Installing : 2:xinetd-2.3.14-29.el6.i686      1/3
  Installing : finger-server-0.17-39.el6.i686    2/3
  Installing : finger-0.17-39.el6.i686          3/3

Installed:
  finger.i686 0:0.17-39.el6                  finger-server.i686 0:0.17-39.el6

Dependency Installed:
  xinetd.i686 2:2.3.14-29.el6

Complete!
```

To remove the package with yum command

- To remove the package using yum command, the syntax is

```
#yum remove <package name>
```

```
#yum remove finger -y
```

```
=====
Package      Arch       Version      Repository      Size
=====
Removing:
  finger      i686      0.17-39.el6      @KTREPO      25 k

Transaction Summary
=====
Remove     1 Package(s)
Reinstall  0 Package(s)
Downgrade 0 Package(s)

Downloading Packages:
Running rpm_check_debug
Running Transaction Test
Transaction Test Succeeded
Running Transaction
  Erasing    : finger-0.17-39.el6.i686      1/1

Removed:
  finger.i686 0:0.17-39.el6

Complete!
```

To update the package using yum

- To update the package using yum command, the syntax is

```
#yum update <package name>
```

```
#yum update httpd
```

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# yum update httpd
Loaded plugins: refresh-packagekit, rhnplugin
This system is not registered with RHN.
RHN support will be disabled.
Setting up Update Process
No Packages marked for Update
[root@ktlinux ~]#
```

As there are no updates available for it, it is not showing anything to update

To install a package locally from a folder, pendrive or cd rom

- Move to the package where you have stored the package to be installed

```
[root@ktcl5 ~]# cd /
[root@ktcl5 /]# ls
bin      etc          lib      mnt      root      sys
boot    finger-0.17-39.el6.i686.rpm lost+found  net      sbin      tmp
cgroup   ftp-0.17-51.1.el6.i686.rpm  media     opt      selinux  usr
dev      home         misc     proc     srv      var
```

The syntax for installing a package locally is

```
#yum localinstall <packagename> -y
```

```
#yum localinstall finger* -y (or) #yum localinstall finger-0.17-39.el6.i686.rpm -y
```

```
[root@ktcl5 /]# yum localinstall finger-0.17-39.el6.i686.rpm -y
```

```
Setting up Local Package Process
Examining finger-0.17-39.el6.i686.rpm: finger-0.17-39.el6.i686
Marking finger-0.17-39.el6.i686.rpm to be installed
Resolving Dependencies
--> Running transaction check
--> Package finger.i686 0:0.17-39.el6 set to be updated
--> Finished Dependency Resolution

Dependencies Resolved

=====
Package          Arch      Version       Repository      Size
=====
Installing:
  finger          i686      0.17-39.el6   /finger-0.17-39.el6.i686 25 k

Transaction Summary
=====
Install      1 Package(s)
Upgrade      0 Package(s)

Total size: 25 k
Installed size: 25 k
Downloading Packages:
```

### To see the information about the package

```
#yum info <package name>
```

```
#yum info finger
```

```
[root@ktcl5 /]# yum info finger
Loaded plugins: refresh-packagekit, rhnplugin
This system is not registered with RHN.
RHN support will be disabled.
Available Packages
Name        : finger
Arch        : i686
Version     : 0.17
Release     : 39.el6
Size        : 22 k
Repo        : KTREPO
Summary     : The finger client
License     : BSD
Description: Finger is a utility which allows users to see information about system
             : users (login name, home directory, name, how long they've been logged
             : in to the system, etc.). The finger package includes a standard
             : finger client.
             :
             : You should install finger if you'd like to retrieve finger information
             : from other systems.
```

### To list and install a group of packages using yum

- To list the group of package the syntax is

```
#yum grouplist
```

```
[root@ktcl5 /]# yum grouplist
Loaded plugins: refresh-packagekit, rhnplugin
This system is not registered with RHN.
RHN support will be disabled.
Setting up Group Process
KTREPO/group_gz
Installed Groups:
    Additional Development
    Arabic Support
    Armenian Support
Available Groups:
    Afrikaans Support
    Albanian Support
    Amazigh Support
    Azerbaijani Support
    Backup Client
    Backup Server
    Basque Support
    Print Server
    Printing client
    Punjabi Support
    SNMP Support
    Server Platform
    Sinhala Support
    System administration tools
    Tajik Support
    Tamil Support
    Telugu Support
    Thai Support
    Urdu Support
    Venda Support
    Web Server
    X Window System
```

- Let's try install package from group called "urdu support", the syntax is

```
#yum groupinstall <package name> -y
```

```
#yum groupinstall urdu support -y
```

```
[root@ktcl5 /]# yum groupinstall urdu support -y
Loaded plugins: refresh-packagekit, rhnplugin
This system is not registered with RHN.
RHN support will be disabled.
Setting up Group Process
```

```
Installing:
 hunspell-ur          noarch      0.64-2.1.el6      KTREPO      308 k
 nafees-web-naskh-fonts    noarch      1.2-5.el6       KTREPO      65 k

 Installed:
 hunspell-ur.noarch 0:0.64-2.1.el6           nafees-web-naskh-fonts.noarch 0:1.2-5.el6

Complete!
```

### Removing a Group package using yum

- To remove a group, the syntax is

```
#yum groupremove <package name>
```

```
#yum groupremove urdu support
```

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# yum groupremove urdu support
Loaded plugins: refresh-packagekit, rhnplugin
This system is not registered with RHN.
RHN support will be disabled.
Setting up Group Process
KTREPO/group_gz
No group named support exists
Resolving Dependencies
--> Running transaction check
--> Package dejavu-sans-fonts.noarch 0:2.30-2.el6 set to be erased
--> Package dejavu-sans-mono-fonts.noarch 0:2.30-2.el6 set to be erased
--> Package ibus-m17n.i686 0:1.3.0-1.el6 set to be erased
--> Package m17n-contrib-urdu.noarch 0:1.1.10-3.el6 set to be erased
--> Package paktype-naqsh-fonts.noarch 0:2.0-8.el6 set to be erased
--> Package paktype-tehreer-fonts.noarch 0:2.0-8.el6 set to be erased
--> Finished Dependency Resolution

Dependencies Resolved
```

Package	Arch	Version	Repository	Size
<hr/>				
Removing:				
dejavu-sans-fonts	noarch	2.30-2.el6	@anaconda-RedHatEnterpriseLinux-201009221732.i386/6.0	4.4 M
dejavu-sans-mono-fonts	noarch	2.30-2.el6	@anaconda-RedHatEnterpriseLinux-201009221732.i386/6.0	1.0 M
ibus-m17n	i686	1.3.0-1.el6	@anaconda-RedHatEnterpriseLinux-201009221732.i386/6.0	47 k
m17n-contrib-urdu	noarch	1.1.10-3.el6	@anaconda-RedHatEnterpriseLinux-201009221732.i386/6.0	3.5 k
paktype-naqsh-fonts	noarch	2.0-8.el6	@anaconda-RedHatEnterpriseLinux-201009221732.i386/6.0	620 k
paktype-tehreer-fonts	noarch	2.0-8.el6	@anaconda-RedHatEnterpriseLinux-201009221732.i386/6.0	298 k
<hr/>				
Transaction Summary				
Remove	6	Package(s)		
Reinstall	0	Package(s)		
Downgrade	0	Package(s)		

And hence a group will be removed.

The software management can be learnt more by using manual pages like man yum and also man rpm etc.

If nothing works

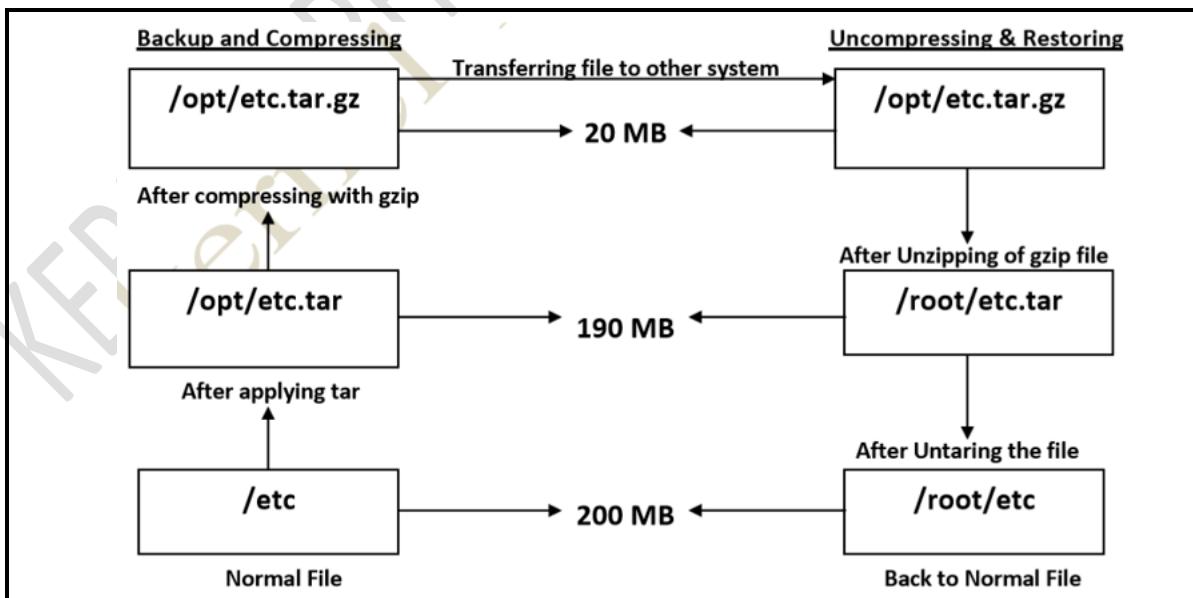


is yours...!!!

# BACKUP AND RESTORE

- In information technology, a **backup** or the process of **backing up** is making copies of data which may be used to *restore* the original after a data loss event.
- Backups have two distinct purposes
- The primary purpose is to recover data after its loss, be it by data deletion or corruption. Data loss is a very common experience of computer users. 67% of Internet users have suffered serious data loss.
- The secondary purpose of backups is to recover data from an earlier time, according to a user-defined data retention policy, typically configured within a backup application for how long copies of data are required.
- Backup is the most important job of a system administrator, as a system admin it is your duty to take backup of the data every day.
- Many companies have gone out of the market because of poor backup planning.
- The easiest way to back up your files is just copying. But if you have too many files to backup, copying and restoring may take too long time and it is not convenient. If there is a tool that can put many files into one file, the world will be better. Fortunately, 'tar' is used to create archive files. It can pack files or directories into a 'tar' file. It is like WinZip in Windows, without much compression.
- The **gzip** program compresses a single file. One important thing to remember about **gzip** is that, unlike **tar**, it replaces your original file with a compressed version. (The amount of compression varies with the type of data, but a typical text file will be reduced by 70 to 80 percent.)

A Typical scenario of backup and compression using tar and gzip



LAB WORK:-

To backup the file using tar

- To backup the file using tar the syntax is

**#tar -cvf <destination and name to be > < source file>**

```
#tar -cvf /opt/etc.tar /etc
```

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# tar -cvf /opt/etc.tar /etc
/etc/rc.d/rc0.d/K95firstboot
/etc/rc.d/rc0.d/K89iscsid
/etc/rc.d/rc0.d/K92iptables
/etc/rc.d/rc0.d/K50snmpd
/etc/rc.d/rc0.d/K03rhnsd
/etc/rc.d/rc0.d/K15httpd
/etc/rc.d/rc0.d/K80sssd
/etc/rc.d/rc0.d/K99microcode_ctl
/etc/rc.d/rc0.d/K83rpcgssd
/etc/rc.d/rc0.d/K84NetworkManager
/etc/rc.d/rc0.d/K50vsftpd
/etc/rc.d/rc0.d/K74nscd
/etc/rc.d/rc0.d/K83bluetooth
/etc/rc.d/rc0.d/K01smartd
/etc/rc.d/rc0.d/K02oddjobd
```

- Check the size of tar file by using **du -h <file name >** command

**#du -h /opt/etc.tar**

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# du -h /opt/etc.tar
29M    /opt/etc.tar
[root@ktlinux ~]#
```

Apply gzip on tar file and check the size.

- To apply gzip on a tar file, the syntax is

**#gzip <file name>**

```
#gzip /opt/etc.tar
```

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# gzip /opt/etc.tar
[root@ktlinux ~]#
```

- Now check the size of the file

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# cd /opt/
[root@ktlinux opt]# ls
etc.tar.gz  home  lost+found
[root@ktlinux opt]# du etc.tar.gz
7544  etc.tar.gz
[root@ktlinux opt]#
```

Transfer the file to other system and remove gzip and tar from it and check the size on every step.

- Let's transfer the file to other computer using scp

```
#scp /opt/etc.tar.gz 192.168.10.95:/root/
```

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# scp /opt/etc.tar.gz 192.168.10.95:/root/
etc.tar.gz                                         100% 7544KB   7.4MB/s  00:01
[root@ktlinux ~]#
```

- Login to the remote system, remove gzip it and check the size.
- To gunzip a file the syntax is

```
#gunzip <file name>
```

```
#gunzip etc.tar.gz
```

```
[root@ktcl5 ~]# ls
anaconda-ks.cfg  Documents  etc.tar.gz  install.log.syslog  ktfile
Desktop          Downloads  install.log  ktdir                Music
[root@ktcl5 ~]# du -h etc.tar.gz
7.4M  etc.tar.gz
[root@ktcl5 ~]# gunzip etc.tar.gz
[root@ktcl5 ~]# ls
anaconda-ks.cfg  Documents  etc.tar    install.log.syslog  ktfile
Desktop          Downloads  install.log  ktdir                Music
[root@ktcl5 ~]# du -h etc.tar
29M  etc.tar
[root@ktcl5 ~]#
```

Untar the file and check for the size of the file/directory

- To untar a file the syntax is

```
#tar -xvf <file name>
```

```
#tar -xvf etc.tar
```

```
[root@ktcl5 ~]# tar -xvf etc.tar
```

```
etc/sgml/xml-docbook-4.1.2-1.0-51.el6.cat
etc/sgml/sgml-docbook-4.3-1.0-51.el6.cat
etc/sgml/sgml.conf
etc/sgml/xml-docbook.cat
etc/sgml/sgml-docbook-4.1-1.0-51.el6.cat

[root@ktcl5 ~]# ls
anaconda-ks.cfg  Downloads  install.log
Desktop          etc        install.log.syslog
Documents        etc.tar   ktdir

[root@ktcl5 ~]# du -h etc
8.0K  etc/avahi/etc
8.0K  etc/avahi/services
32K   etc/avahi
4.0K  etc/openldap/cacerts
12K   etc/openldap
```

That's it with backup and restore.

# MANAGING INSTALLED SERVICES

- Services are programs (called daemons) that once started run continuously in the background and are ready for input or monitor changes in your computer and respond to them. For example the Apache server has a daemon called **httpd** (the d is for daemon) that listens on port 80 on your computer and when it receives a request for a page it sends the appropriate data back to the client machine.
- Many services are required to run all the time however many can be safely turned off for both security reasons as running unnecessary services opens more doors into your computer, but also for performance reasons. It may not make much difference but your computer should boot slightly faster with less services it has to start on boot.
- One of the techniques in every Linux administrator's toolbox to improve security of a box is to turn off unneeded services.

## CHKCONFIG AND SERVICE COMMANDS

There are 2 commands used to control services:

- **service** - This controls the starting and stopping of services during a session, these setting are not saved. If you start Apache this way but it is not set to start on boot using the above method then it will continue to run but on next boot will not start automatically.
- **chkconfig** - This controls which services are set to start on boot, by their nature these setting are saved and are applied at next boot. Changing these settings will not start the service immediately; it will just flag them to be started from the next boot.
- The command use for maintaining a service is

<b>#service &lt;name of the service&gt; status</b>	---	<b>To check the status of the service</b>
<b>#service &lt;name of the service&gt; start</b>	---	<b>To start the service</b>
<b>#service &lt;name of the service&gt; stop</b>	---	<b>To stop a service</b>
<b>#service &lt;name of the service&gt; reload</b>	---	<b>To reload the service</b>
<b>#service &lt;name of the service&gt; restart</b>	---	<b>To restart the service</b>

- The command use for service availability is

#chkconfig -l	---	To check the availability of service
#chkconfig <service> on	---	To make the service available after restart
#chkconfig <service> off	---	To make the service unavailable after restart

#### LAB WORK:-

Check the status of ftp service “vsftpd”

- To check the status of the above service

**#service vsftpd status**

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# service vsftpd status
vsftpd is stopped
[root@ktlinux ~]#
```

Start the ftp services

- To start the ftp service, the command is

**#service vsftpd start**

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# service vsftpd start
Starting vsftpd for vsftpd:                                     [ OK ]
[root@ktlinux ~]# service vsftpd status
vsftpd (pid 9947) is running...
[root@ktlinux ~]#
```

Reload the ftp services, may be required after doing some change in config file.

- To reload the service, the command is

**#service vsftpd reload**

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# service vsftpd reload
Shutting down vsftpd:                                         [ OK ]
Starting vsftpd for vsftpd:                                     [ OK ]
[root@ktlinux ~]#
```

To restart the ftp or any service, required when reload does not work

- To restart the ftp services, the command will be

**#service vsftpd restart**

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# service vsftpd restart
Shutting down vsftpd:                                     [  OK  ]
Starting vsftpd for vsftpd:                               [  OK  ]
[root@ktlinux ~]#
```

Check the status of the all service availability.

- To check the status of all service availability, use

**#chkconfig - -list**

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# chkconfig --list
NetworkManager 0:off 1:off 2:on 3:on 4:on 5:on 6:off
abrt 0:off 1:off 2:off 3:on 4:off 5:on 6:off
acpid 0:off 1:off 2:on 3:on 4:on 5:on 6:off
atd 0:off 1:off 2:off 3:on 4:on 5:on 6:off
auditd 0:off 1:off 2:on 3:on 4:on 5:on 6:off
autofs 0:off 1:off 2:off 3:on 4:on 5:on 6:off
```

**Note:** Where **0 1 2 3 4 5 6** are the run levels in Linux, The output shows that on which run level the service is available even after reboot.

Check the status of a particular service, say “vsftpd”

- To check the status of a vsftpd service, the command is

**#chkconfig --list <name of the service>**

**#chkconfig --list vsftpd**

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# chkconfig --list vsftpd
vsftpd 0:off 1:off 2:off 3:off 4:off 5:off 6:off
[root@ktlinux ~]#
```

Make the service availability on for vsftpd.

- To make the service availability on for vsftpd service,

**#chkconfig vsftpd on**

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# chkconfig vsftpd on
[root@ktlinux ~]# chkconfig --list vsftpd
vsftpd 0:off 1:off 2:on 3:on 4:on 5:on 6:off
[root@ktlinux ~]#
```

Make the service availability off for vsftpd

- To make the service availability off the command is

```
#chkconfig vsftpd off
```

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# chkconfig vsftpd off
[root@ktlinux ~]# chkconfig --list vsftpd
vsftpd      0:off  1:off  2:off  3:off  4:off  5:off  6:off
[root@ktlinux ~]#
```

Make the service vsftpd availability on only on runlevel 5

- To make the service availability on, on a particular runlevel , the syntax is

```
#chkconfig -- level <1-6> <service> <on/off>
```

```
#chkconfig -- level 5 vsftpd on
```

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# chkconfig --level 5 vsftpd on
[root@ktlinux ~]# chkconfig --list vsftpd
vsftpd      0:off  1:off  2:off  3:off  4:off  5:on   6:off
```

The same can be done for making service unavailable in a particular run level.

# MANAGING PROCESS

- A Linux process is a program running in the Linux system. Depending on Linux distributions, it's also known as **service**. In Linux community however, a Linux process is called **daemon**.
- When you start a program or running an application in Linux, you actually execute that program. A Linux process (a daemon), running in foreground or in the background, uses memory and CPU resources. That's why we need to manage Linux process. Keeping unused Linux process running in the system is a waste and also exposes your system to security threat.
- In Linux, every running process or daemon is given an identity number called PID (Process ID). The process id is unique. We can terminate unused program in the system by stopping its process id.
- In order to manage Linux processes, we need to identify some process information such as who's responsible for the process, which terminal the process is running from and what command used to run the process.

There are generally three types of processes that run on Linux.

- Interactive Processes
- System Process or Daemon
- Automatic or batch

## INTERACTIVE PROCESSES

Interactive processes are those processes that are invoked by a user and can interact with the user. VI is an example of an interactive process. Interactive processes can be classified into foreground and background processes. The foreground process is the process that you are currently interacting with, and is using the terminal as its stdin (standard input) and stdout

(standard output). A background process is not interacting with the user and can be in one of two states - paused or running.

## SYSTEM PROCESS OR DAEMON

The second general type of process that runs on Linux is a **System Process or Daemon** (daemon). Daemon is the term used to refer to processes that are running on the computer and provide services but do not interact with the console. Most server software is implemented as a daemon. Apache, Samba, and inn are all examples of daemons.

Any process can become a daemon as long as it is run in the background, and does not interact with the user. A simple example of this can be achieved using the [ls -R] command. This will list all subdirectories on the computer, and is similar to the [dir /s] command on Windows. This command can be set to run in the background by typing [ls -R &], and although technically you have control over the shell prompt, you will be able to do little work as the screen displays the output of the process that you have running in the background. You will also notice that the standard pause (ctrl+z) and kill (ctrl+c) commands do little to help you.

## AUTOMATIC PROCESSES

**Automatic** processes are not connected to a terminal. Rather, these are tasks that can be queued into a spooler area, where they wait to be executed on a FIFO (first-in, first-out) basis. Such tasks can be executed using one of two criteria:

At certain date and time: done using the “at” command

At times when the total system load is low enough to accept extra jobs: done using the **Cron** command. By default, tasks are put in a queue where they wait to be executed until the system load is lower than 0.8. In large environments, the system administrator may prefer cron job processing when large amounts of data have to be processed or when tasks demanding a lot of system resources have to be executed on an already loaded system. Cron job processing is also used for optimizing system performance.

### Parent and Child Process

- The Process which starts or creates another process is called **parent process** and the one which got created is known as **child process**.
- Every process will be having a parent process except **init** process.
- The **init** process is the parent of all the process in the system. It is the first process which gets started by the kernel at the time of booting
- The PID of init will be **1**.
- Only after init process gets started the remaining process are called by it, and hence it is responsible for all the remaining processes in the system.

### LAB WORK:-

To monitor the process using ps command

- The ps command gives the running process of the present terminal and present command.  
The syntax for ps command is

**#ps**

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# ps
 PID TTY      TIME CMD
10951 pts/0    00:00:00 bash
11523 pts/0    00:00:00 ps
[root@ktlinux ~]#
```

To see all the active processes running on the terminal

The possible options which can be used with ps command are

**#ps -a**

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# ps -a
 PID TTY      TIME CMD
11545 pts/0    00:00:00 ps
[root@ktlinux ~]#
```

To see the processes running by the logged in user (ex root)

**#ps -u <user name>**

**#ps -u musab**

**#ps -u** ( if no name is given it will show the processes of the logged in user)

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# ps -u musab
 PID TTY      TIME CMD
11566 pts/1    00:00:00 bash
11591 pts/1    00:00:00 vim
[root@ktlinux ~]#
```

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# ps
 PID TTY      TIME CMD
10951 pts/0    00:00:00 bash
11523 pts/0    00:00:00 ps
[root@ktlinux ~]#
```

To see which process are attached with some terminals (tty) and which are not

**#ps -x**

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# ps -x
```

PID	TTY	STAT	TIME	COMMAND
1	?	Ss	0:03	/sbin/init
2	?	S	0:00	[kthreadd]
3	?	S	0:00	[migration/0]
2015	tty2	Ss+	0:00	/sbin/mingetty /dev/tty2
2017	tty3	Ss+	0:00	/sbin/mingetty /dev/tty3

Note: The process which are showing “?” are not attached to any tty.

To see which process are running by a particular group

**#ps -G <group name> or #pgrep -G <group name>**

#ps -G musab or      #pgrep -G musab

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# ps -G musab
  PID TTY      TIME CMD
11566 pts/1    00:00:00 bash
11591 pts/1    00:00:00 vim
[root@ktlinux ~]# pgrep -G musab
11566
11591
```

To see the offline process of the system, already executed

**#ps -aux**

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# ps -aux
root  10949  0.0  2.3  52144 12712 ?        Rl   16:49  0:02 /usr/bin/gnome-terminal
root  10950  0.0  0.1   2032   616 ?        S    16:49  0:00 gnome-pty-helper
root  10951  0.0  0.3   5212  1668 pts/0    Ss   16:49  0:00 /bin/bash -l
postfix 11471  0.0  0.3  10244  2084 ?        S    20:05  0:00 pickup -l -t fifo -u
root  11555  0.0  0.2   5084  1608 pts/1    Ss   20:37  0:00 bash
root  11564  0.0  0.3   7068  1648 pts/1    S    20:37  0:00 su - musab
musab 11566  0.0  0.2   5084  1592 pts/1    S    20:37  0:00 -bash
musab 11591  0.0  0.5  10776  2768 pts/1    S+   20:37  0:00 vim
root  11706  0.0  0.0     0     0 ?        S    21:11  0:00 [flush-253:0]
root  11710  2.0  0.1   4764   996 pts/0    R+   21:12  0:00 ps -aux
```

## SIGNALS IN LINUX

- Signals are a way of sending simple messages to processes. Most of these messages are already defined and can be found in <linux/signal.h>. However, signals can only be processed when the process is in user mode. If a signal has been sent to a process that is in kernel mode, it is dealt with immediately on returning to user mode.

- Every signal has a unique signal name, an abbreviation that begins with SIG (SIGINT for interrupt signal, for example). Each signal name is a macro which stands for a positive integer - the signal number for that kind of signal. Your programs should never make assumptions about the numeric code for a particular kind of signal, but rather refer to them always by the names defined. This is because the number for a given kind of signal can vary from system to system, but the meanings of the names are standardized and fairly uniform.
- Signals can be generated by the process itself, or they can be sent from one process to another. A variety of signals can be generated or delivered, and they have many uses for programmers. (To see a complete list of signals in the Linux® environment, use the command kill -l.)
- There are total 64 signals in Linux, the list of all the signal can be seen by

**#kill -l**

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# kill -l
 1) SIGHUP      2) SIGINT      3) SIGQUIT      4) SIGILL      5) SIGTRAP
 6) SIGABRT     7) SIGBUS      8) SIGFPE       9) SIGKILL     10) SIGUSR1
 11) SIGSEGV    12) SIGUSR2     13) SIGPIPE     14) SIGALRM     15) SIGTERM
 16) SIGSTKFLT   17) SIGCHLD     18) SIGCONT     19) SIGSTOP     20) SIGTSTP
 21) SIGTTIN    22) SIGTTOU     23) SIGURG      24) SIGXCPU     25) SIGXFSZ
 26) SIGVTALRM   27) SIGPROF     28) SIGWINCH    29) SIGIO       30) SIGPWR
 31) SIGSYS     34) SIGRTMIN    35) SIGRTMIN+1  36) SIGRTMIN+2  37) SIGRTMIN+3
 38) SIGRTMIN+4  39) SIGRTMIN+5  40) SIGRTMIN+6  41) SIGRTMIN+7  42) SIGRTMIN+8
 43) SIGRTMIN+9  44) SIGRTMIN+10 45) SIGRTMIN+11 46) SIGRTMIN+12 47) SIGRTMIN+13
 48) SIGRTMIN+14 49) SIGRTMIN+15 50) SIGRTMAX-14 51) SIGRTMAX-13 52) SIGRTMAX-12
 53) SIGRTMAX-11 54) SIGRTMAX-10 55) SIGRTMAX-9  56) SIGRTMAX-8  57) SIGRTMAX-7
 58) SIGRTMAX-6  59) SIGRTMAX-5  60) SIGRTMAX-4  61) SIGRTMAX-3  62) SIGRTMAX-2
 63) SIGRTMAX-1  64) SIGRTMAX
[root@ktlinux ~]#
```

Few Important Signals with its descriptions:

Signal	Value	Action	Comment
<b>SIGHUP</b>	1	Term	Hangup detected on controlling terminal or death of controlling process
<b>SIGINT</b>	2	Term	Interrupt from keyboard
<b>SIGQUIT</b>	3	Core	Quit from keyboard
<b>SIGILL</b>	4	Core	Illegal Instruction
<b>SIGABRT</b>	6	Core	Abort signal from abort(3)
<b>SIGFPE</b>	8	Core	Floating point exception
<b>SIGKILL</b>	9	Term	Kill signal
<b>SIGSEGV</b>	11	Core	Invalid memory reference
<b>SIGPIPE</b>	13	Term	Broken pipe: write to pipe with no readers
<b>SIGALRM</b>	14	Term	Timer signal from alarm(2)
<b>SIGTERM</b>	15	Term	Termination signal
<b>SIGUSR1</b>	30,10,16	Term	User-defined signal 1
<b>SIGUSR2</b>	31,12,17	Term	User-defined signal 2
<b>SIGCHLD</b>	20,17,18	Ign	Child stopped or terminated
<b>SIGCONT</b>	19,18,25	Cont	Continue if stopped
<b>SIGSTOP</b>	17,19,23	Stop	Stop process
<b>SIGTSTP</b>	18,20,24	Stop	Stop typed at tty
<b>SIGTTIN</b>	21,21,26	Stop	tty input for background process
<b>SIGTTOU</b>	22,22,27	Stop	tty output for background process

The most common signals used are

- 1 for reloading the process
- 9 for killing the process
- 15 for Terminating the process
- 20 for stopping the process

To kill the signal completely

- To kill the signal
- First find out the process running in the system, let's say by a user

```
#ps -u <user name>
```

```
#ps -u musab
```

```
#kill <signal no> <process id>
```

```
#kill -9 11591
```

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# ps -u musab
 PID TTY      TIME CMD
11566 pts/1    00:00:00 bash
11591 pts/1    00:00:00 vim
[root@ktlinux ~]# kill -9 11591
[root@ktlinux ~]# ps -u musab
 PID TTY      TIME CMD
11566 pts/1    00:00:00 bash
[root@ktlinux ~]#
```

Likewise you can use other signals to kill the process like

```
#kill -15 <pid>
```

```
#kill -1 <pid>
```

To stop the process using a signal no. 20

- To stop a process first login as a normal user and start a process

```
#su – musab
```

```
#cat > hello
```

```
[musab@ktlinux ~]$ cat > hello
```

- Check its pid and kill it by using 20, #ps -u musab

```
#kill -20
```

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# ps -u musab
 PID TTY      TIME CMD
11566 pts/1    00:00:00 bash
12041 pts/1    00:00:00 cat
[root@ktlinux ~]# kill -20 12041
```

- check its effect at the user's console

```
[musab@ktlinux ~]$ cat > hello
[1]+  Stopped                  cat > hello
```

- Restart the process continue working

```
#fg <pid>
```

```
#fg 1
```

```
[musab@ktlinux ~]$ fg 1  
cat > hello  
Hi Marij How are you
```

### Setting up the Priority of a Process:

- When talking about processes priority is all about managing processor time. The Processor or CPU is like a human juggling multiple tasks at the same time. Sometimes we can have enough room to take on multiple projects. Sometimes we can only focus on one thing at a time. Other times something important pops up and we want to devote all of our energy into solving that problem while putting less important tasks on the back burner.
- In Linux we can set guidelines for the CPU to follow when it is looking at all the tasks it has to do. These guidelines are called **niceness** or **nice value**. The Linux niceness scale goes from **-20 to 19**. The lower the number the more priority that task gets. If the niceness value is high number like 19 the task will be set to the lowest priority and the CPU will process it whenever it gets a chance. The default nice value is zero.
- By using this scale we can allocate our CPU resources more appropriately. Lower priority programs that are not important can be set to a higher nice value, while high priority programs like daemons and services can be set to receive more of the CPU's focus. You can even give a specific user a lower nice value for all of his/her processes so you can limit their ability to slow down the computer's core services.
- There are two options to reduce/increase value of a process. You can either do it using the **nice** command or the **renice** command.

### LAB WORK:-

To schedule a priority of a process before starting it

- To set a priority to a process before starting it, the syntax is

```
#nice -n <nice value range (-20 to 19)> <command>
```

```
#nice -n 5 cat > ktfile
```

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# nice -n 5 cat > ktfile
Hello World
Welcome to Kernel Technologies■
```

- Log in to other terminal and check the nice value for the above command/ process.

```
#ps -elf
```

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# ps -elf■
F S UID      PID  PPID   C PRI  NI ADDR SZ WCHAN  STIME TTY          TIME CMD
4 S root      1    0  80   0 -    707 -        Oct14 ?          00:00:03 /sbin/init
1 S root      2    0  80   0 -     0 -        Oct14 ?          00:00:00 [kthreadd]

1 S root    13152    2  0  80   0 -     0 -        01:56 ?          00:00:00 [flush-253:0]
0 S root    13155 10951    0  85   5 -   1010 -        01:56 pts/0  00:00:00 cat
1 S root    13163    2  0  80   0 -     0 -        01:58 ?          00:00:00 [flush-253:3]
```

To change the nice value of any process while it is running.

- To reschedule the nice value of existing process, first check the PID of that process by running **#ps -elf** command.
- As from previous task we know the PID of cat command i.e. **13155**
- Use the following command to renice the value of a cat command which is still running

```
#renice <nice value (-20 to 19)> <PID>
```

```
#renice 2 13155
```

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# renice 2 13155
13155: old priority 5, new priority 2
[root@ktlinux ~]# ■
```

### Monitoring all process using top command

- To monitor all processes in the system use the following command

```
#top
```

```
top - 02:23:18 up 1 day, 13:57, 3 users, load average: 0.01, 0.00, 0.23
Tasks: 273 total, 1 running, 272 sleeping, 0 stopped, 0 zombie
Cpu(s): 0.4%us, 0.5%sy, 0.0%ni, 98.8%id, 0.3%wa, 0.0%hi, 0.0%si, 0.0%st
Mem: 543948k total, 526204k used, 17744k free, 11748k buffers
Swap: 2097144k total, 49064k used, 2048080k free, 129928k cached
```

PID	USER	PR	NI	VIRT	RES	SHR	S	%CPU	%MEM	TIME+	COMMAND
1	root	20	0	2828	1192	1044	S	0.0	0.2	0:03.15	init
2	root	20	0	0	0	0	S	0.0	0.0	0:00.03	kthreadd
3	root	RT	0	0	0	0	S	0.0	0.0	0:00.00	migration/0
4	root	20	0	0	0	0	S	0.0	0.0	0:00.14	ksoftirqd/0
5	root	RT	0	0	0	0	S	0.0	0.0	0:00.00	watchdog/0
6	root	20	0	0	0	0	S	0.0	0.0	0:00.60	events/0
7	root	20	0	0	0	0	S	0.0	0.0	0:00.00	cpuset
8	root	20	0	0	0	0	S	0.0	0.0	0:00.00	khelper

The first line in top:

```
top - 02:23:18 up 1 day, 13:57, 3 users, load average: 0.01, 0.00, 0.23
```

“02:23:18” is the current time; “up 1 day” shows how long the system has been up for; “3 user” how many users are logged in; “load average: 0.01, 0.00, 0.23” the load average of the system (1minute, 5 minutes, 15 minutes).

The second line in top:

```
Tasks: 273 total, 1 running, 272 sleeping, 0 stopped, 0 zombie
```

Shows the number of processes and their current state.

The third line in top:

```
Cpu(s): 0.4%us, 0.5%sy, 0.0%ni, 98.8%id, 0.3%wa, 0.0%hi, 0.0%si, 0.0%st
```

Shows CPU utilization details. “9.5%us” user processes are using 9.5%; “31.2%sy” system processes are using 31.2%; “27.0%id” percentage of available cpu; “7.6%wa” time CPU is waiting for IO.

The fourth and fifth lines in top:

```
Mem: 543948k total, 526204k used, 17744k free, 11748k buffers
Swap: 2097144k total, 49064k used, 2048080k free, 129928k cached
```

“543948k total” is total memory in the system; “526204K used” is the part of the RAM that currently contains information; “17744k free” is the part of RAM that contains no information; “11748K buffers and 129928k cached” is the buffered and cached data for IO.

By default, top starts by showing the following task's property:

Field	Description
PID	Process ID
USER	Effective User ID
PR	Dynamic priority
NI	Nice value, also known as base priority
VIRT	Virtual Size of the task. This includes the size of process's executable binary, the data area and all the loaded shared libraries.
RES	The size of RAM currently consumed by the task. Swapped out portion of the task is not included.
SHR	Some memory areas could be shared between two or more task, this field reflects that shared areas. The example of shared area are shared library and SysV shared memory.
S	Task status
%CPU	The percentage of CPU time dedicated to run the task since the last top's screen update.
%MEM	The percentage of RAM currently consumed by the task.
TIME+	The total CPU time the task has been used since it started. "+" sign means it is displayed with hundredth of a second granularity. By default, TIME/TIME+ doesn't account the CPU time used by the task's dead children.
Command	Showing program names

### Interacting with TOP

Now that we are able to understand the output from TOP lets learn how to change the way the output is displayed.

Just press the following key while running top and the output will be sorted in real time.

- M – Sort by memory usage
- P – Sort by CPU usage
- T – Sort by cumulative time
- z – Color display
- k – Kill a process

- q – quit
- r – to renice a process
- h - help

To kill the process with PID 21, then press “k” and a prompt will ask you for the PID number, and enter 21. When asked about singal number give 9 or 15

```
top - 02:54:53 up 1 day, 14:29, 3 users, load average: 0.07, 0.02, 0.01
Tasks: 272 total, 1 running, 271 sleeping, 0 stopped, 0 zombie
Cpu(s): 0.7%us, 0.3%sy, 0.0%ni, 99.0%id, 0.0%wa, 0.0%hi, 0.0%si, 0.0%st
Mem: 543948k total, 522892k used, 21056k free, 12232k buffers
Swap: 2097144k total, 49688k used, 2047456k free, 126492k cached
PID to kill: 21
  PID USER      PR  NI    VIRT    RES    SHR S %CPU %MEM     TIME+ COMMAND
  2 root      20   0      0      0      0 S  0.0  0.0  0:00.03 [kthreadd]

top - 02:54:53 up 1 day, 14:29, 3 users, load average: 0.07, 0.02, 0.01
Tasks: 272 total, 1 running, 271 sleeping, 0 stopped, 0 zombie
Cpu(s): 0.7%us, 0.3%sy, 0.0%ni, 99.0%id, 0.0%wa, 0.0%hi, 0.0%si, 0.0%st
Mem: 543948k total, 522892k used, 21056k free, 12232k buffers
Swap: 2097144k total, 49688k used, 2047456k free, 126492k cached
Kill PID 21 with signal [15]: 9
  PID USER      PR  NI    VIRT    RES    SHR S %CPU %MEM     TIME+ COMMAND
```

To renice a process with PID 4, then press “r” and a prompt will ask you for PID enter 4 and press enter. When prompted for renice value give any value .

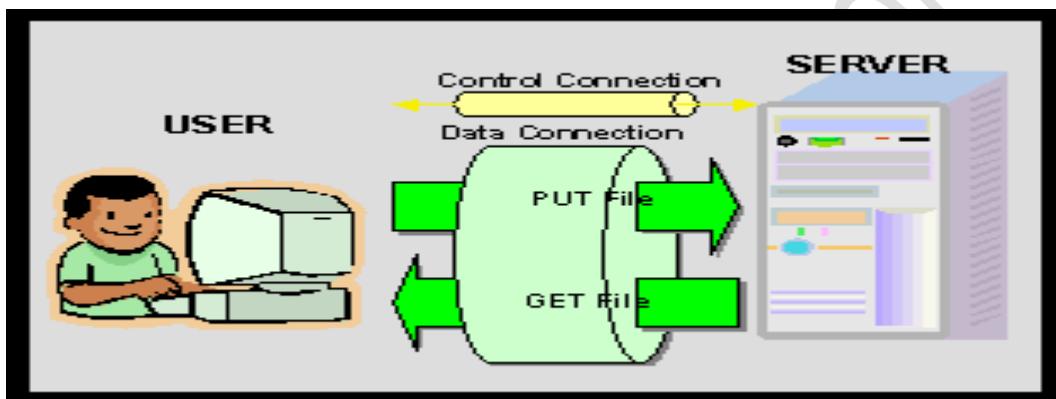
```
Swap: 2097144k total, 49688k used, 2047456k free, 126496k cached
PID to renice: 4
  PID USER      PR  NI    VIRT    RES    SHR S %CPU %MEM     TIME+ COMMAND
  2 root      20   0      0      0      0 S  0.0  0.0  0:00.03 [kthreadd]
  3 root      RT   0      0      0      0 S  0.0  0.0  0:00.00 [migration/0]
  4 root      20   0      0      0      0 S  0.0  0.0  0:00.15 [ksoftirqd/0]

Renice PID 4 to value: -2
  4 root      18  -2      0      0      0 S  0.0  0.0  0:00.15 [ksoftirqd/0]
```

Find out more on top command from internet and keep practicing

# FTP (File Transfer Protocol) SERVER

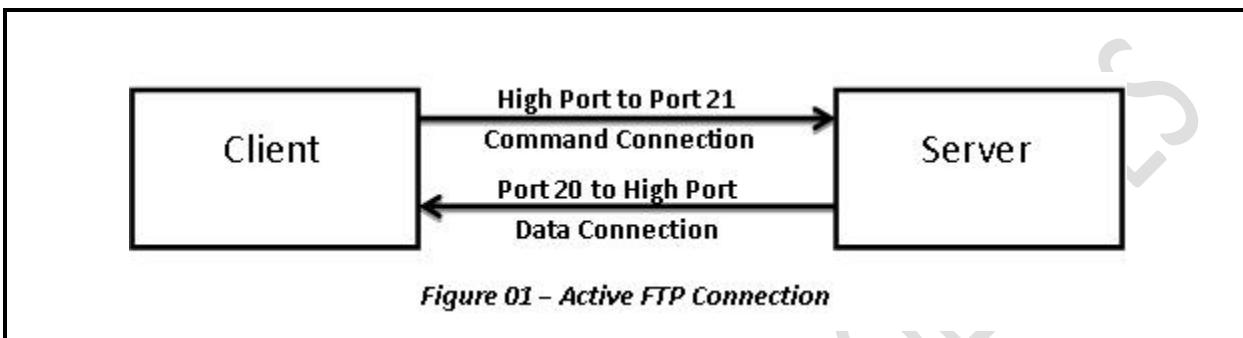
- **File Transfer Protocol (FTP)** is a standard network protocol used to transfer files from one host to another host over a TCP-based network, such as the Internet. FTP is built on client-server architecture and utilizes separate control and data connections between the client and server. FTP users may authenticate themselves using a clear-text sign-in protocol but can connect anonymously if the server is configured to allow it.
- In **Red hat Enterprise Linux**. You can access FTP from both the Command Line Interface mode and GUI mode.



- Usually, the FTP server, which stores files to be transferred, uses two ports for the transferring purpose, one for Commands and the other for sending and receiving Data. Requests from client computers are received at the port 21 of the server, which is exclusively reserved for sending Commands; therefore, it is called the Command Port. Once an incoming request is received, the data requested or uploaded by the client computer is transferred through a separate port referred to as a Data Port. At this point, depending on the Active or Passive mode of the FTP connection, the port number used for the Data Transfer varies.
- Security is a major concern with any computer connected to the internet, therefore any computer connected to the internet should be protected by a Firewall. In order to connect to certain services, such as FTP, you have to allow those connections in the Firewall, on both the Client and Server side.
- Although a client's computer may not have a firewall enabled, a server should always have this enabled for maximum security. In order to connect to an FTP server that has a firewall enabled, you have to connect using a specific connection mode in your FTP program.

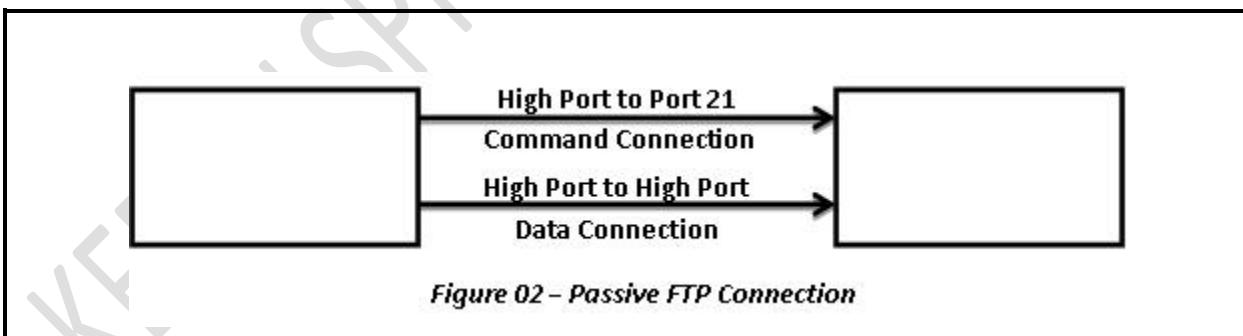
- There are different connection modes to choose from when connecting to an FTP server, typically either "Active" or "Passive" mode.

## What is Active FTP?



- Active FTP connection mode is where Command connection is initiated by the Client, and the Data connection is initiated by the Server. And as the server actively establishes the data connection with the Client, this mode is referred to as Active. The Client opens up a port higher than 1024, and through it connects to the port 21 or the command port of the Server. Then the Server opens up its port 20 and establishes a data connection to a port higher than 1024 of the Client. In this mode, Client must set its firewall settings to accept all the incoming connections that are received at the opened port.

## What is Passive FTP?



- In the Passive FTP connection mode, the server acts entirely passively as the Command connection and the Data connection are both initiated and established by the Client. In this mode, Server listens for incoming requests through its port 21 (command port), and when a request is received for a data connection from the Client (using a high port), Server randomly opens up one of its High ports. Then Client initiates a data connection between the opened port of the Server and its own randomly selected port higher than 1024. In this

mode, the Client does not have to change its firewall settings, as it only requires outgoing connections and the firewall do not block outgoing connections. However, the Server administrators must make sure that the Server allows incoming connections at all its opened ports.

## What is the difference between Active FTP and Passive FTP?

The difference between the Active FTP and Passive FTP is based on who initiates the Data connection between the Server and the Client. If data connection is initiated by the Server, the FTP connection is active, and if the Client initiates the Data connection, FTP connection is passive.

Depending on the Active or Passive mode of the connection, port used for Data connection changes. In an Active FTP, data connection is established between port 20 of the Server and High Port of the Client. On the other hand, in Passive FTP, data connection is established between a High port of the Server and a High port of the Client.

When using an Active FTP connection, firewall settings of the Client must be changed to accept all incoming connection to the Client, while in Passive FTP connection, the Server must allow all incoming connections to the Server. Most FTP servers prefer the Passive FTP connection due to security issues.

### Profile of ftp server

- Use : Ftp is used for uploading and downloading the files.
- Disadvantage : Directory cannot be uploaded or downloaded.
- Package : vsftpd
- Daemon : vsftpd (Very Secure Ftp daemon)
- Script : /etc/initd/vsftpd
- Port no : 21 (Tcp) > 1024 (Udp, Random)
- Configuration files : /etc/vsftpd/vsftpd.conf  
/etc/vsftpd/user\_list  
/etc/vsftpd/ftpuser  
/etc/pam.d/vsftpd
- Document Root : /var/ftp
- Home directory : /var/ftp (which is created only when the package is installed.)

Steps to configuring ftp server for downloading a file:

1. Install the package
2. Create some files in /var/ftp/pub directory

3. Restart the service
4. Make the service enable even after reboot of the system
5. Connect from client and access the files and download it

Step1: Install the package

- Install the package using yum or rpm command.

```
#yum install vsftpd* -y
```

```
[root@ktcl3 ~]# yum install vsftpd* -y
Loaded plugins: product-id, refresh-packagekit, subscription-manager
Updating Red Hat repositories.
Setting up Install Process
Resolving Dependencies
--> Running transaction check
---> Package vsftpd.x86_64 0:2.2.2-6.el6_0.1 will be installed
--> Finished Dependency Resolution

Dependencies Resolved

=====
Package           Arch      Version       Repository      Size
=====
Installing:
vsftpd           x86_64   2.2.2-6.el6_0.1    RHEL6          150 k

Transaction Summary

=====
Installing : vsftpd-2.2.2-6.el6_0.1.x86_64                               1/1
RHEL6/productid
duration: 117(ms)
| 1.7 kB     00:00
Installed products updated.

Installed:
  vsftpd.x86_64 0:2.2.2-6.el6_0.1

Complete!
```

Okay now we are done with the installation. Check it with

```
#rpm -q vsftpd command
```

```
[root@ktcl3 ~]# rpm -q vsftpd
vsftpd-2.2.2-6.el6_0.1.x86_64
[root@ktcl3 ~]# █
```

- If you don't have yum repository created, then installed it using rpm from RHEL 6 DVD

Step2: Copy or create some files in “/var/ftp/pub” directory

- Navigate to /var/ftp/pub directory and create some files in it

```
#cd /var/ftp/pub  
#touch file{1..5}
```

```
[root@ktcl3 ~]# cd /var/ftp/pub/  
[root@ktcl3 pub]# ls  
[root@ktcl3 pub]# touch file{1..5}  
[root@ktcl3 pub]# ls  
file1 file2 file3 file4 file5  
[root@ktcl3 pub]#
```

Step3: Restart the ftp service

```
#service vsftpd restart
```

```
[root@ktcl3 pub]# service vsftpd restart  
Shutting down vsftpd:  
Starting vsftpd for vsftpd:  
[root@ktcl3 pub]# [ OK ] [ OK ]
```

Step4: Make the service enable even after reboot of the system

- To make a service enable use the following command

```
#chkconfig vsftpd on
```

```
[root@ktcl3 pub]# chkconfig vsftpd on  
[root@ktcl3 pub]# chkconfig --list vsftpd  
vsftpd      0:off  1:off  2:on   3:on    4:on    5:on    6:off  
[root@ktcl3 pub]#
```

Step5: Connect from client and access the files and download it

- To access the ftp server the client should have “ftp” package installed. If not installed, install it using rpm, because yum will not work if ftp package is not installed.
- Check whether ftp package is installed or not

```
#rpm -q ftp
```

```
[root@ktcl1 ~]# rpm -q ftp  
package ftp is not installed  
[root@ktcl1 ~]#
```

- To install ftp package either download it from redhat website or install it from RHEL6 DVD
- Move to the package folder and installed it.

```
#rpm -ivh <package name>
```

```
[root@ktcl1 ~]# rpm -ivh ftp-0.17-51.1.el6.x86_64.rpm
warning: ftp-0.17-51.1.el6.x86_64.rpm: Header V3 RSA/SHA256 Signature, key ID fd
431d51: NOKEY
Preparing...                                           #####[100%]
1:ftp                                              #####[100%]
```

- Check it by using rpm -q command

```
[root@ktcl1 ~]# rpm -q ftp
ftp-0.17-51.1.el6.x86_64
```

- Now connect to ftp server using its IP

To connect to ftp server use the following command

```
#ftp <ftp server's IP>
```

```
#ftp 192.168.10.93
```

Use "ftp or anonymous" as login name

Press enter without giving any password

```
[root@ktcl1 ~]# ftp 192.168.10.93
Connected to 192.168.10.93 (192.168.10.93).
220 (vsFTPd 2.2.2)
Name (192.168.10.93:root): ftp
331 Please specify the password.
Password:
230 Login successful.
Remote system type is UNIX.
Using binary mode to transfer files.
ftp> █
```

- Navigate to pub directory and check the files available

```
#cd pub
```

```
ftp> cd pub
250 Directory successfully changed.
ftp> ls
227 Entering Passive Mode (192,168,10,93,62,234).
150 Here comes the directory listing.
-rw-r--r--    1 0        0          0 Nov 03 12:58 file1
-rw-r--r--    1 0        0          0 Nov 03 12:58 file2
-rw-r--r--    1 0        0          0 Nov 03 12:58 file3
-rw-r--r--    1 0        0          0 Nov 03 12:58 file4
-rw-r--r--    1 0        0          0 Nov 03 12:58 file5
226 Directory send OK.
ftp> █
```

Note: when you run ls command you can see that it showing that we are using Passive mode.

- Download some files using get or mget command

To download files use the following command

**#get <file name> for single file**

```
ftp> get file1
local: file1 remote: file1
227 Entering Passive Mode (192,168,10,93,221,15).
150 Opening BINARY mode data connection for file1 (0 bytes).
226 Transfer complete.
ftp> █
```

**#mget <file names> for multiple files**

Before going for mget turn off the interactive mode, otherwise it will ask permission for every file you are downloading. Use #prompt command to turn off interactive mode.

```
227 Entering Passive Mode (192,168,10,93,52,28).
150 Here comes the directory listing.
-rw-r--r--    1 0        0          0 Nov 03 12:58 file1
-rw-r--r--    1 0        0          0 Nov 03 12:58 file2
-rw-r--r--    1 0        0          0 Nov 03 12:58 file3
-rw-r--r--    1 0        0          0 Nov 03 12:58 file4
-rw-r--r--    1 0        0          0 Nov 03 12:58 file5
226 Directory send OK.
ftp> prompt
Interactive mode off.
ftp> mget file1 file2 file3
local: file1 remote: file1
227 Entering Passive Mode (192,168,10,93,244,230).
150 Opening BINARY mode data connection for file1 (0 bytes).
226 Transfer complete.
local: file2 remote: file2
227 Entering Passive Mode (192,168,10,93,65,88).
150 Opening BINARY mode data connection for file2 (0 bytes).
226 Transfer complete.
local: file3 remote: file3
227 Entering Passive Mode (192,168,10,93,154,73).
150 Opening BINARY mode data connection for file3 (0 bytes).
226 Transfer complete.
ftp> █
```

- Exit the ftp server and check whether the files are there or not

To exit the ftp server either use

**#bye or #quit**

```
ftp> quit
221 Goodbye.
[root@ktcl1 ~]# ls
anaconda-ks.cfg      file1
ap                   file2
bharat                file3
Desktop              ftp-0.17-51.1.el6.x86_64.rpm
Documents             gana
Downloads            install.log
[root@ktcl1 ~]#
```

install.log.syslog	south
karnataka	tamil
ktr	Template
Music	Videos
Pictures	
Public	

To connect to the ftp server graphically open web browser like firefox type the ftp server's ip address as following

<ftp://192.168.10.93>

### Configuring the ftp server for uploading a file

To upload the files in the ftp server the steps are:

Step1: Create an upload dir in the document root of ftp server i.e., /var/ftp

**#mkdir upload**

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# cd /var/ftp
[root@ktlinux ftp]# ls
pub
[root@ktlinux ftp]# mkdir upload
[root@ktlinux ftp]# ls
pub  upload
[root@ktlinux ftp]#
```

Step2: Change the group to "ftp" and write permission to the "upload" directory

- Changing the group of upload to ftp

**#chgrp <group name> <directory name>**

**#chgrp ftp upload**

```
[root@ktlinux ftp]# ls -ld upload
drwxr-xr-x. 2 root root 4096 Nov  4 19:12 upload
[root@ktlinux ftp]# chgrp ftp upload
[root@ktlinux ftp]# ls -ld upload
drwxr-xr-x. 2 root [ftp] 4096 Nov  4 19:12 upload
[root@ktlinux ftp]#
```

- Adding the write permission to upload directory

```
#chmod g+w upload
```

```
[root@ktlinux ftp]# ls -ld upload
drwxr-xr-x. 2 root ftp 4096 Nov  4 19:12 upload
[root@ktlinux ftp]# chmod g+w upload
[root@ktlinux ftp]# ls -ld upload
drwxrwxr-x. 2 root ftp 4096 Nov  4 19:12 upload
[root@ktlinux ftp]#
```

Step3: Log into client machine, access ftp server and try to upload some files

- Log into client machine and access the ftp server from the directory in which the files to be uploaded are there.

```
[root@ktcl5 ~]# cd sample
[root@ktcl5 sample]# ls
ktf1 ktf2 ktf3 ktf4 ktf5
[root@ktcl5 sample]# ftp 192.168.10.98
Connected to 192.168.10.98 (192.168.10.98).
220 (vsFTPd 2.2.2)
Name (192.168.10.98:root): ftp
331 Please specify the password.
Password:
230 Login successful.
Remote system type is UNIX.
Using binary mode to transfer files.
```

- Navigate to upload directory and try to upload some files

Once you logged into ftp and if you are not sure what is names of the files you want to upload then use “#!ls” command to see the content of the directory from which you have logged into ftp server.

```
ftp> cd upload
250 Directory successfully changed.
ftp> !ls
ktf1 ktf2 ktf3 ktf4 ktf5
ftp> prompt
Interactive mode off.
ftp> mput ktf1 ktf2 ktf3
local: ktf1 remote: ktf1
227 Entering Passive Mode (192,168,10,98,138,43).
550 [Permission denied.]
local: ktf2 remote: ktf2
227 Entering Passive Mode (192,168,10,98,87,254).
550 [Permission denied.]
local: ktf3 remote: ktf3
227 Entering Passive Mode (192,168,10,98,166,28).
550 [Permission denied.]
ftp> ■
```

- “Permission denied” is because the upload permission in the ftp configuration file is not enabled in the ftp server. So, navigate to the ftp configuration file and change the following attributes in it.

```
#vim /etc/vsftpd/vsftpd.conf
```

Uncomment (remove the #) the following line

```
# Uncomment this to allow the anonymous FTP user to upload files.
# has an effect if the above global write enable is activated. Al-
# obviously need to create a directory writable by the FTP user.
anon_upload_enable=YES
```

```
# Uncomment this to allow the anonymous FTP user to upload files. Th
# has an effect if the above global write enable is activated. Also,
# obviously need to create a directory writable by the FTP user.
anon_upload_enable=YES
```

- Restart the ftp service

```
#service vsftpd restart
```

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# service vsftpd restart
Shutting down vsftpd:                                     [  OK  ]
Starting vsftpd for vsftpd:                               [  OK  ]
[root@ktlinux ~]# ■
```

**Step4:** Again login to client system and try again to upload the files into ftp server

```
[root@ktcl5 sample]# ls
ktf1 ktf2 ktf3 ktf4 ktf5
[root@ktcl5 sample]# ftp 192.168.10.98
Connected to 192.168.10.98 (192.168.10.98).
220 (vsFTPd 2.2.2)
Name (192.168.10.98:root): ftp
331 Please specify the password.
Password:
230 Login successful.
Remote system type is UNIX.
Using binary mode to transfer files.
ftp> cd upload
250 Directory successfully changed.
ftp> prompt
Interactive mode off.
ftp> put ktf1
local: ktf1 remote: ktf1
227 Entering Passive Mode (192,168,10,98,192,136).
553 Could not create file.
ftp>
```

If the SELinux is enabled in the ftp server, this error “Could not Create file” will be displayed.

To solve above error log into server and change the following permission

- Check the Booleans for ftp using following command

```
#getsebool -a |grep ftp
```

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# getsebool -a |grep ftp
allow_ftpd_anon_write --> off
allow_ftpd_full_access --> off
allow_ftpd_use_cifs --> off
allow_ftpd_use_nfs --> off
ftp_home_dir --> off
```

- Make the above Boolean value as “on”
- To make it on use the following command

```
#setsebool -P allow_ftpd_anon_write on
```

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# setsebool -P allow_ftpd_anon_write on
[root@ktlinux ~]# getsebool -a |grep ftp
allow_ftpd_anon_write --> on
allow_ftpd_full_access --> off
allow_ftpd_use_cifs --> off
allow_ftpd_use_nfs --> off
ftp_home_dir --> off
```

- Add read write permission in context of upload directory using following command

```
#chcon -t public_content_rw_t
```

```
[root@ktlinux ftp]# ls -ldZ upload
drwxrwxr-x. root ftp unconfined_u:object_r:public_content_t:s0 upload
[root@ktlinux ftp]# chcon -t public_content_rw_t upload
[root@ktlinux ftp]# ls -ldZ upload
drwxrwxr-x. root ftp unconfined_u:object_r:public_content_t:s0 upload
[root@ktlinux ftp]# █
```

- Finally login into client machine, access the ftp server and try uploading the files in it.

```
[root@ktcl5 sample]#
[root@ktcl5 sample]# ftp 192.168.10.98
Connected to 192.168.10.98 (192.168.10.98).
220 (vsFTPd 2.2.2)
Name (192.168.10.98:root): ftp
331 Please specify the password.
Password:
230 Login successful.
Remote system type is UNIX.
Using binary mode to transfer files.
ftp> cd upload
250 Directory successfully changed.
ftp> !ls
ktf1 ktf2 ktf3 ktf4 ktf5
ftp> prompt
Interactive mode off.
ftp> mput ktf1 ktf2
local: ktf1 remote: ktf1
227 Entering Passive Mode (192,168,10,98,121,220).
150 Ok to send data.
226 Transfer complete.
local: ktf2 remote: ktf2
227 Entering Passive Mode (192,168,10,98,53,112).
150 Ok to send data.
```

```
ftp> ls
227 Entering Passive Mode (192,168,10,98,207,111).
150 Here comes the directory listing.
-rw----- 1 14 50 0 Nov 04 16:28 ktf1
-rw----- 1 14 50 0 Nov 04 16:28 ktf2
226 Directory send OK.
```

Okay now you've made an ftp server for uploading files as well

### Allowing root access to the ftp server

- By default root user is blocked to be used in ftp user, try logging with root in ftp server

```
[root@ktcl5 sample]# ftp 192.168.10.98
Connected to 192.168.10.98 (192.168.10.98).
220 (vsFTPd 2.2.2)
Name (192.168.10.98:root): root
530 Permission denied.
Login failed.
ftp> ■
```

- To Allow the root access to ftp server edit the “/etc/vsftpd/user\_list” and “/etc/vsftpd/ftpuser” and just add the comment (#mark) before “root”

**#vim /etc/vsftpd/user\_list**

```
# vsftpd userlist
# If userlist_deny=NO, only allow users in this file
# If userlist_deny=YES (default), never allow users in this file, and
# do not even prompt for a password.
# Note that the default vsftpd pam config also checks /etc/vsftpd/ftpusers
# for users that are denied.
#root
bin
daemon
```

**#vim /etc/vsftpd/ftpuser**

```
# Users that are not allowed to login via ftp
#root
bin
daemon
```

Note:- restart the service **#service ftp restart**

- Now try login from client into ftp server as root

```
[root@ktcl5 sample]# ftp 192.168.10.98
Connected to 192.168.10.98 (192.168.10.98).
220 (vsFTPd 2.2.2)
Name (192.168.10.98:root): root
331 Please specify the password.
Password:
500 OOPS: cannot change directory:/root
Login failed.
ftp> ■
```

Though everything right, but still it is not allowing us to login as root because the home dir is not able to change. It is again because of SELinux.

- To solve the above problem, login to ftp server and change the following Boolean for ftp

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# getsebool -a |grep ftp
allow_ftpd_anon_write --> on
allow_ftpd_full_access --> off
allow_ftpd_use_cifs --> off
allow_ftpd_use_nfs --> off
ftp_home_dir --> off
```

- Change the Boolean value to on for ftp\_home\_dir by following command

```
#setsebool -P ftp_home_dir on
```

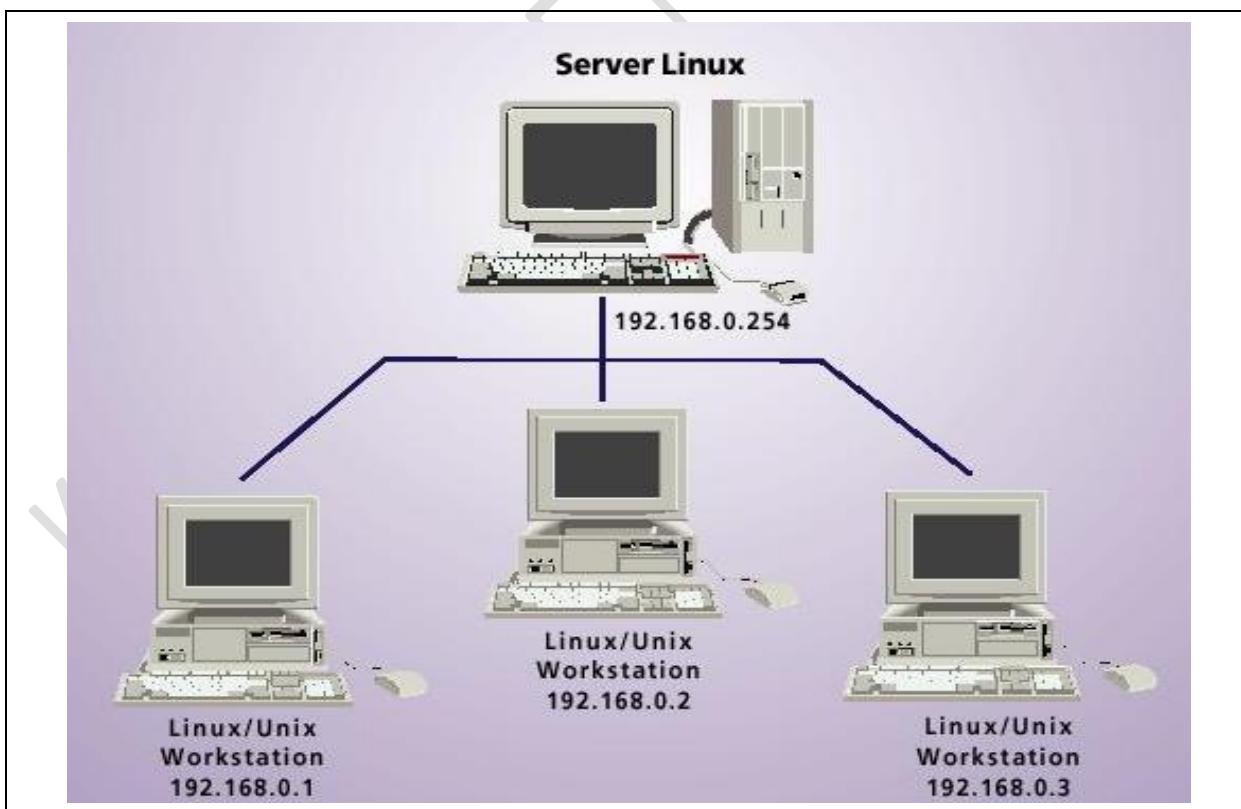
```
[root@ktlinux ~]# setsebool -P ftp_home_dir on
[root@ktlinux ~]# getsebool -a |grep ftp
allow_ftpd_use_cifs --> off
allow_ftpd_use_nfs --> off
ftp_home_dir --> on
```

- Try logging again as root in ftp server

```
[root@ktcl5 ~]# ftp 192.168.10.98
Connected to 192.168.10.98 (192.168.10.98).
220 (vsFTPd 2.2.2)
Name (192.168.10.98:root): root
331 Please specify the password.
Password:
230 Login successful.
Remote system type is UNIX.
Using binary mode to transfer files.
ftp> ■
```

# NFS (NETWORK FILE SYSTEM/SHARING)

- NFS stands for Network File System, and is a way to share files between machines as if they were on your local hard drive. Linux can be both an NFS server and an NFS client, which means that it can export filesystems to other systems, and mount filesystems exported from other machines.
- For example **NFS server** could be a Linux system and Unix could be a client. But it can't be a window system because window is not NFS compatible. The NFS server exports one or more directories to the client systems, and the client systems mount one or more of the shared directories to local directories called mount points. After the share is mounted, all I/O operations are written back to the server, and all clients notice the change as if it occurred on the local filesystem.
- A manual refresh is not needed because the client accesses the remote filesystem as if it were local. Because access is granted by IP address, a username and password are not required. However, there are security risks to consider because the **NFS server** knows nothing about the users on the client system.

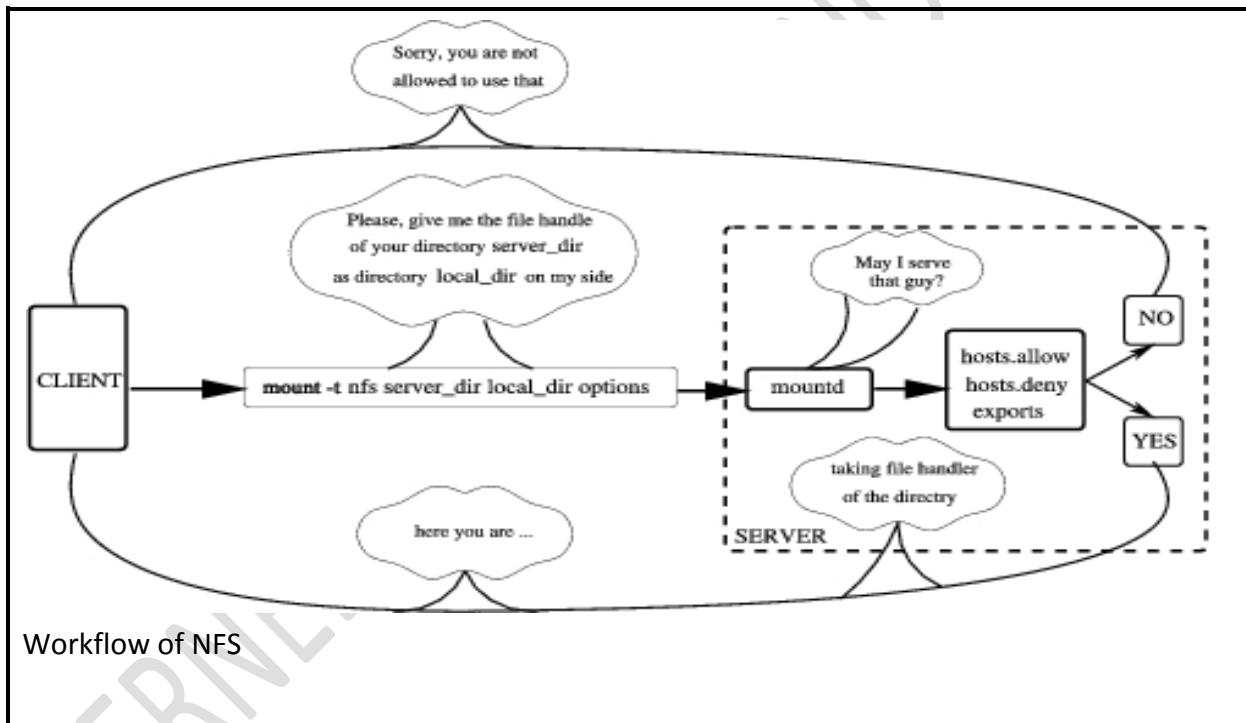


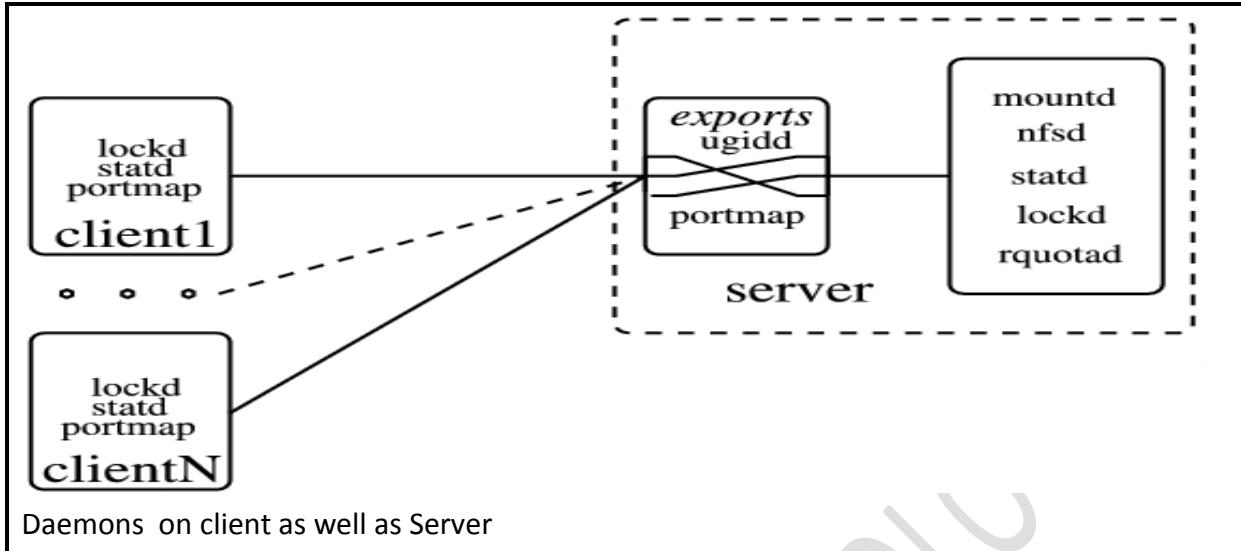
A Typical view of the NFS structure in Linux/Unix system

### Profile for NFS:

- Package : nfs-utils
- Daemons : rpc.nfsd, rpc.mountd, rpc.statd, rpc.lockd, rpc.rquotad
- Script : /etc/init.d/nfs
- Port number : 2049
- Configuration File : /etc/exports
- Other imp files : /var/lib/nfs/etab, /var/lib/nfs/rmtab

### Workflow of NFS and its Daemon





Steps to configure NFS server:

Step1: Install the NFS package using yum or rpm.

Step2: Create a dir or directory on partition and add some data in it.

Step3: Export the directory by editing /etc/exports file and using exportfs command

Step4: Restart the services and make it permanent.

Step1: Install the NFS package.

- Check whether the package is installed

```
#rpm -q nfs-utils
```

```
[root@ktcl1 /]# rpm -q nfs-utils
nfs-utils-1.2.3-7.el6.x86_64
[root@ktcl1 /]#
```

- If it is not installed use following command to install it

```
#yum install nfs-utils* -y
```

Step2: Create a directory or create a partition and mount it and make a mount point and add data to it.

- Create a partition, format it and mount it, access the mount point and add data to it

```
#fdisk /dev/vda
```

/dev/vda11	3812	3927	931738+	8e	Linux LVM
/dev/vda12	3928	3979	417658+	8e	Linux LVM
/dev/vda13	3980	4056	618471	83	Linux

- Update the partition table and format it

```
#partx -a /dev/vda  
#mkfs.ext4 /dev/vda13
```

- Create a directory and mount the partition over it and also make it permanent in /etc/fstab

```
[root@ktcl1 ~]# mkdir /ktdir  
[root@ktcl1 ~]# vim /etc/fstab  
[root@ktcl1 ~]# mount -a  
[root@ktcl1 ~]# mount  
/dev/mapper/vg_ktcli-rootlv on / type ext4 (rw)  
proc on /proc type proc (rw)  
sysfs on /sys type sysfs (rw)  
devpts on /dev/pts type devpts (rw,gid=5,mode=620)  
tmpfs on /dev/shm type tmpfs (rw)  
/dev/vda2 on /boot type ext4 (rw)  
/dev/mapper/vg_ktcli-homelv on /home type ext4 (rw)  
/dev/mapper/vg_ktcli-optlv on /opt type ext4 (rw)  
/dev/mapper/vg_ktcli-usrlv on /usr type ext4 (rw)  
/dev/mapper/vg_ktcli-varlv on /var type ext4 (rw)  
/dev/mapper/kiranvg-kiranlv on /kiran type ext4 (rw)  
none on /proc/sys/fs/binfmt_misc type binfmt_misc (rw)  
sunrpc on /var/lib/nfs/rpc_pipefs type rpc_pipefs (rw)  
gvfs-fuse-daemon on /root/.gvfs type fuse.gvfs-fuse-daemon (rw,nosuid,nodev)  
nfsd on /proc/fs/nfsd type nfsd (rw)  
/dev/vda13 on /ktdir type ext4 (rw)  
[root@ktcl1 ~]# █
```

- Access the mount point and add some data in it

```
[root@ktcl1 ~]# cd /ktdir  
[root@ktcl1 ktdir]# touch ktfile{1..5}  
[root@ktcl1 ktdir]# ls  
ktfile1 ktfile2 ktfile3 ktfile4 ktfile5 lost+found  
[root@ktcl1 ktdir]# █
```

- Optional: Change context of the directory to **nfs\_t** if SELinux is enabled using the syntax:

```
chcon -t nfs_t /ktdir
```

Step3: Export the directory by editing /etc/exports file and using exportfs command

- Edit the /etc/exports file

```
#vim /etc/exports
```

```
/ktdir 192.168.10.0/24(rw,sync) → Mount Options
```

Dir name Network range permission sync the disk before command completion

<b>/ktdir</b>	:	Name of the directory to be exported
<b>192.168.10.0/24</b>	:	Range of network where directory can be mounted To give permission to only one node, just give the IP ADDR Of that node (ex: 192.168.10.93)
<b>(rw, sync)</b>	:	Mount options

The Mount options which can be used

<b>rw</b>	:	Sets read/write permissions
<b>ro</b>	:	Sets read-only permissions
<b>sync</b>	:	Specifies that all changes must be written to disk before a Command completes
<b>no_wdelay</b>	:	Forces the writing of changes immediately (useful for logs if Something crashes)
<b>root_squash</b>	:	Prevent root users

- Now run the exportfs command to export the directory

**#exportfs -avr**

```
[root@ktcl1 ~]# exportfs -avr
exporting 192.168.10.0/24:/ktdir
[root@ktcl1 ~]# █
```

Options:

- a      Exports or un-exports all directories
- r      Reexport all directories
- u      Unexports one or more directories
- v      Provides verbose output

Step4: Restart the services and make it permanent.

**#service nfs restart**

```
[root@ktcl1 ~]# service nfs restart
Shutting down NFS mountd: [ OK ]
Shutting down NFS daemon: [ OK ]
Shutting down NFS quotas: [ OK ]
Shutting down NFS services: [ OK ]
Starting NFS services: [ OK ]
Starting NFS quotas: [ OK ]
Starting NFS daemon: [ OK ]
Starting NFS mountd: [ OK ]
[root@ktcl1 ~]#
```

Check the directories which is exported in /var/lib/nfs/etab and /var/lib/nfs/rmtab

```
[root@ktcl1 ~]# cat /var/lib/nfs/etab
/ktdir 192.168.10.0/24(rw,sync,wdelay,hide,nocrossmnt,secure,root_squash,no_all_squash,no_subtree_check,secure_locks,acl,anonuid=65534,anongid=65534)
[root@ktcl1 ~]# cat /var/lib/nfs/rmtab
[root@ktcl1 ~]#
```

- Note: stop the iptables services by using #service iptables stop and chkconfig iptables off.

### Client side configuration for NFS mounting

Step1: Check and Install the NFS package if not installed

Step2: Start the NFS services

Step3: Check which directory is exported for this machine using showmount command

Step4: Make a directory and mount the NFS dir over it.

Step5: Add some data to it and check the same is updated on server side.

Step1: Check and Install the package for NFS

**#rpm -q nfs-utils**

```
[root@ktcl1 ~]# rpm -q nfs-utils
nfs-utils-1.2.3-7.el6.x86_64
[root@ktcl1 ~]#
```

It is already installed, if it is not installed use yum install nfs-utils\* -y

Step2: check and start the NFS services and make it permanent.

**#service nfs start**

**#chkconfig -l nfs**

```
[root@ktcl3 ~]# service nfs start
Starting NFS services: [ OK ]
Starting NFS quotas: [ OK ]
Starting NFS daemon: [ OK ]
Starting NFS mountd: [ OK ]
[root@ktcl3 ~]# chkconfig nfs on
[root@ktcl3 ~]# █
```

Step3: Check which directory is exported for this machine using showmount command

- To check the exported directories from server the syntax is

```
#showmount -e <server ip address>
```

```
[root@ktcl2 ~]# showmount -e 192.168.10.91
Export list for 192.168.10.91:
/ktdir 192.168.10.0/24
[root@ktcl2 ~]# █
```

Step4: Make a directory and mount NFS over it.

```
#mkdir /ktnfs
#mount -t nfs 192.168.10.91:/ktdir /ktnfs
```

```
[root@ktcl2 ~]# mkdir /ktnfs
[root@ktcl2 ~]# mount -t nfs 192.168.10.91:/ktdir /ktnfs
[root@ktcl2 ~]# cd /ktnfs/
[root@ktcl2 ktnfs]# ls
ktfile1 ktfile2 ktfile3 ktfile4 ktfile5 lost+found
[root@ktcl2 ktnfs]# █
```

Step5: Add some data to it and check the same is updated on server side.

```
[root@ktcl2 ktnfs]# touch nfs{1..4}
touch: cannot touch `nfs1': Permission denied
touch: cannot touch `nfs2': Permission denied
touch: cannot touch `nfs3': Permission denied
touch: cannot touch `nfs4': Permission denied
[root@ktcl2 ktnfs]# █
```

- Note that it is showing permission error because on server side the directory does not have write permissions neither for group nor for others.
- Log into server and add write permission to NFS directory

```
[root@ktcl1 /]# ls -ld ktdir
drwxr-xr-x 3 root root 4096 Nov  8 13:25 ktdir
[root@ktcl1 /]# chmod go+w ktdir
[root@ktcl1 /]# ls -ld ktdir
drwxrwxrwx 3 root root 4096 Nov  8 13:25 ktdir
[root@ktcl1 /]# █
```

- Now , Again move back to client machine and try uploading some files

```
[root@ktcl2 ktnfs]# touch nfs{1..4}
[root@ktcl2 ktnfs]# ls
ktfile1 ktfile2 ktfile3 ktfile4 ktfile5 lost+found nfs1 nfs2 nfs3 nfs4
[root@ktcl2 ktnfs]# █
```

- To make it permanent mount edit /etc/fstab file as follows

sysfs	/sys	sysfs	defaults	0 0
proc	/proc	proc	defaults	0 0
192.168.10.91:/ktdir	/ktnfs	nfs	defaults	0 0

### Auto-mounting the NFS directory

- All the resources of the server is valuable and needs to be available for usage, when we mount a NFS directory over client the network resource gets busy, even when the work is finished the network resource will still be busy as mounting occupy it.
- Autofs automatically mounts file systems for you when they are requested. This has a very handy feature: It's great for handling removable media. Just CD to the right directory, or execute ls or do anything that sends a request to the mount point: and the daemon mounts it. After all, it's the kind of job that's beneath the dignity of a human being First; you need to install the "autofs" package. It should include some appropriate config files. The files you need is /etc/auto. Master

### Steps to configure auto mount at client side:

Step1: Log into client side and check whether autofs is install or not, if not install autofs

- Check whether autofs is install or not

```
#rpm -q autofs
```

```
[root@ktcl1 /]# rpm -q autofs  
autofs-5.0.5-31.el6.x86_64  
[root@ktcl1 /]# █
```

- if it is not installed, install it by using yum or rpm

```
#yum install autofs* -y
```

Step2: Edit the /etc/auto. master as follows

```
#vim /etc/auto.master
```

```
# Note that if there are entries for /net or /misc (as  
# above) in the included master map any keys that are the  
# same will not be seen as the first read key seen takes  
# precedence.  
#  
+auto.master  
/ktnfs      /etc/auto.ktnfs --timeout 10 → Standby time  
↓           ↓  
Dir to mount NFS    auto mount configuration file for this mount point
```

Step3: Create /etc/auto.ktnfs file and /ktnfs directory if not created earlier

```
#vim /etc/auto.ktnfs
```

```
ktnfs  -rw   192.168.10.91:/ktdir  
↓       ↓  
Name for autofs  Permissions  NFS directory name
```

Step4: Stop and start the autofs service

```
#service autofs stop  
#service autofs start  
#chkconfig autofs on
```

```
[root@ktcl1 /]# service autofs stop  
Stopping automount: [ OK ]  
[root@ktcl1 /]# service autofs start  
Starting automount: [ OK ]  
[root@ktcl1 /]# chkconfig autofs on  
[root@ktcl1 /]# █
```

Step5: log into the given directory in /etc/auto.master i.e. /ktnfs and check that if NFS is mounted by mount command

```
[root@ktcl1 /]# cd /ktnfs  
[root@ktcl1 ktnfs]# mount
```

Note: Still NFS will not be mounted

Step6: change the directory to the name given in /etc/auto.ktnfs i.e. ktnfs and then auto mounting will be done.

```
#cd ktnfs  
#mount
```

```
[root@ktcl1 ktnfs]# cd ktnfs  
[root@ktcl1 ktnfs]# ls  
ktfile1 ktfile2 ktfile3 ktfile4 ktfile5 lost+found nfs1 nfs2 nfs3 nfs4  
[root@ktcl1 ktnfs]# █
```

#### Steps for removing NFS:

Step1: Remove all autofs details from all config files like /etc/auto.master and /etc/auto.ktnfs

Step2: un-export all the directory which was exported earlier using following command

```
# exportfs -auv
```

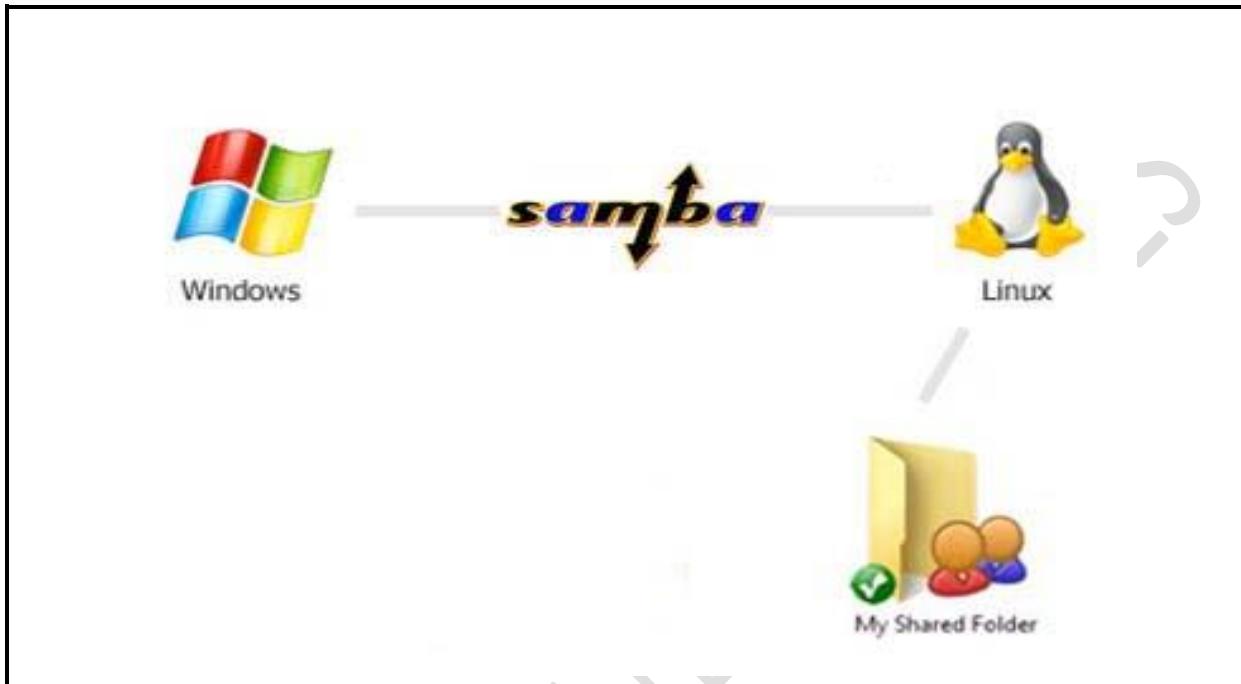
```
[root@ktcl1 ~]# cat /var/lib/nfs/etab  
/ktdir 192.168.10.0/24(rw,sync,wdelay,hide,nocrossmnt,secure,root_squash,no_all_squash,no_subtree_check,secure_locks,acl,an  
nuid=65534,anongid=65534)  
[root@ktcl1 ~]# exportfs -auv  
[root@ktcl1 ~]# cat /var/lib/nfs/etab  
[root@ktcl1 ~]# █
```

Note:-

If you don't have DNS and you don't want use IP but want to use hostname instead, update hostname with its ip in /etc/hosts file and then you can use hostname instead of IP

Okay now finally we've done with all NFS activities.

# SAMBA SERVER



- The whole point of networking is to allow computers to easily share information. Sharing information with other Linux boxes, or any UNIX host, is easy—tools such as FTP and NFS are readily available and frequently set up easily “out of the box”. Unfortunately, even the most die-hard Linux fanatic has to admit the operating system most of the PCs in the world are running is one of the various types of Windows. Unless you use your Linux box in a particularly isolated environment, you will almost certainly need to exchange information with machines running Windows. Assuming you're not planning on moving all of your files using floppy disks, the tool you need is Samba.
- Samba is an implementation of a Common Internet File System (CIFS, also known as SMB) protocol server that can be run on almost every variant of Unix in existence. Microsoft clients will use this protocol to access files and printers located on your Unix box just as if it were a native Windows server.
- **Samba** allows **linux** computers to share files and printers across a network connection. By using its SMB protocol, your **linux** box can appear **in** Windows Network Neighborhood or My Network Places just like any other windows machine. You can share files this way, as well as printers. By using **samba** on my home network, for example, my Windows machines have access to a printer directly hooked up to my **linux** box, and my **Linux** box has access to a printer directly hooked up to one of my Windows machines. **In** addition, everyone can

access everyone else's shared files. You can see how **samba** can be very useful if you have a network of both Windows as well as **Linux** machines.

#### **Profile for SAMBA:**

Usage	:	used for sharing files and directories in the network between different platforms, like Linux-windows
Package	:	SAMBA, SAMBA-common, SAMBA-client.
Daemons	:	smbd, nmbd
Script	:	/etc/init.d/smb, /etc/init.d/nmb
Portno	:	137 (net bios –ns{name service}), 138 (net bios–dgm {datagram}) 139 (net bios-ssn{session service}), 445 (Microsoft –ds{dist sys})
File system	:	CIFS (common internet file system)
Config file	:	/etc/samba/smb.conf

#### **Steps to configure SAMBA server:**

Step1: Check and Install the SAMBA package, if not installed

```
#rpm -q samba
```

```
[root@ktcl1 ~]# rpm -q samba  
package samba is not installed  
[root@ktcl1 ~]#
```

- Install the package using yum

```
#yum install samba* -y
```

```
[root@ktcl1 ~]# yum install samba* -y
Loaded plugins: product-id, refresh-packagekit, subscription-manager
Updating Red Hat repositories.
Setting up Install Process
Package samba-winbind-clients-3.5.6-86.el6.x86_64 already installed and latest version
Package samba-common-3.5.6-86.el6.x86_64 already installed and latest version
Package samba-client-3.5.6-86.el6.x86_64 already installed and latest version
Resolving Dependencies
--> Running transaction check
--> Package samba.x86_64 0:3.5.6-86.el6 will be installed
--> Package samba-winbind.x86_64 0:3.5.6-86.el6 will be installed
--> Finished Dependency Resolution

Dependencies Resolved

=====
Package           Arch      Version       Repository
=====
Installing:
samba            x86_64   3.5.6-86.el6  RHEL6
samba-winbind    x86_64   3.5.6-86.el6  RHEL6

Transaction Summary
=====
Install      2 Package(s)

=====
Installed:
samba.x86_64 0:3.5.6-86.el6
samba-winbind.x86_64 0:3.5.6-86.el6

Complete!
[root@ktcl1 ~]#
```

Step2: Make a directory and assign full permission to it ,which will be shared

```
#mkdir /ktsamba
```

```
#chmod 777 /ktsamba
```

```
[root@ktcl1 ~]# mkdir /ktsamba
[root@ktcl1 ~]# chmod 777 /ktsamba
[root@ktcl1 ~]#
```

Step3: Check the context of the directory and change it according to samba

```
#ls -ldZ /ktsamba
```

```
#chcon -t samba_share_t /ktsamba
```

```
[root@ktcl1 ~]# ls -ldZ /ktsamba/
drwxrwxrwx. root root unconfined_u:object_r:default_t:s0 /ktsamba/
[root@ktcl1 ~]# chcon -t samba_share_t /ktsamba/
[root@ktcl1 ~]# ls -ldZ /ktsamba/
drwxrwxrwx. root root unconfined_u:object_r:samba_share_t:s0 /ktsamba/
[root@ktcl1 ~]#
```

Step4: Create a user or use any existing user who will be allowed to log in as samba user, add that user to samba user

- As we have a existing user "ktuser", let's just make it samba user

```
#smbpasswd -a <username>  
#smbpasswd -a ktuser
```

Give password twice and wait till it add the user

```
[root@ktcl1 ~]# smbpasswd -a ktuser  
New SMB password:  
Retype new SMB password:  
Added user ktuser.  
[root@ktcl1 ~]#
```

Note: To delete a user from samba use #smbpasswd -x <user name>

- To check all the samba user use

```
#pdbeedit -L
```

```
[root@ktcl1 ~]# pdbeedit -L  
ktuser:515:  
[root@ktcl1 ~]#
```

Step5: Go to the configuration file i.e. /etc/samba/smb.conf and make the following changes

- Open the /etc/samba/smb.conf and copy the last seven lines shown below and paste it at the last to edit it.

```
■ A publicly accessible directory, but read only, except for people in  
# the "staff" group  
[public]  
comment = Public Stuff  
path = /home/samba  
public = yes  
writable = yes  
printable = no  
write list = +staff
```

- Once pasted remove ";" mark before it and change it according to following picture

```
#####  
[ktshare]  
comment = Public Stuff  
path = /ktsamba  
public = no  
valid users = ktuser  
writable = yes  
printable = no  
hosts allow = 192.168.10.
```

Explanation about the above fields

- [ktshare] : Share Name
- Comment = Public Stuff : Comment
- Path = /ktsamba : Share Directory
- Public = no : Public Access (Every user in network)
- Valid user = ktuser : Authorized user
- Writable = yes : Write Permission
- Printable = yes : Print permission
- Host allow= 192.168.10. : Network Range or host range

Note: 192.168.10. Represent entire 192.168.10 network

Step5: Test the samba parameters and restart the service and make it enable after reboot

- To test the parameters us the following command

**#testparm**

```
[root@ktcl2 /]# testparm
Load smb config files from /etc/samba/smb.conf
rlimit_max: rlimit_max (1024) below minimum Windows limit (16384)
Processing section "[homes]"
Processing section "[printers]"
Processing section "[ktshare]"
Loaded services file OK.
Server role: ROLE_STANDALONE
Press enter to see a dump of your service definitions
[

[printers]
    comment = All Printers
    path = /var/spool/samba
    printable = Yes
    browseable = No

[ktshare]
    comment = Public Stuff
    path = /ktsamba
    valid users = ktuser
    read only = No
    hosts allow = 192.168.10.
[root@ktcl2 /]#
```

- We have to restart two services here
- #smb and #nmb and make it add to enable after reboot

**#service smb restart**

**#service nmb restart**

#chkconfig smb on

#chkconfig nmb on

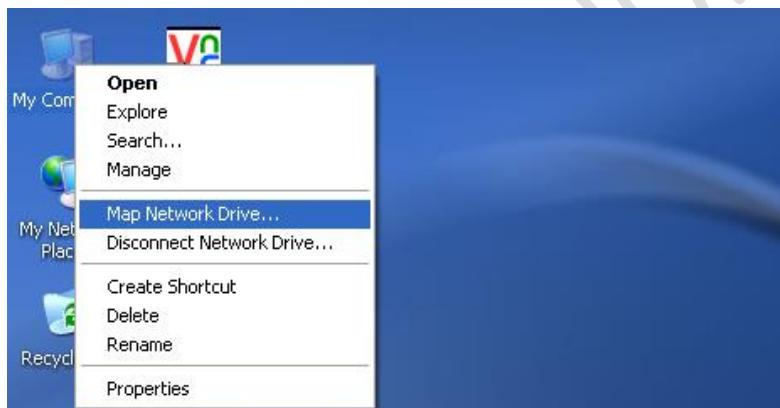
```
[root@ktcl1 ~]# service smb restart
Shutting down SMB services:
Starting SMB services:
[root@ktcl1 ~]# chkconfig smb on
[root@ktcl1 ~]# service nmb restart
Shutting down NMB services:
Starting NMB services:
[root@ktcl1 ~]# chkconfig nmb on
[root@ktcl1 ~]#
```

[ OK ]

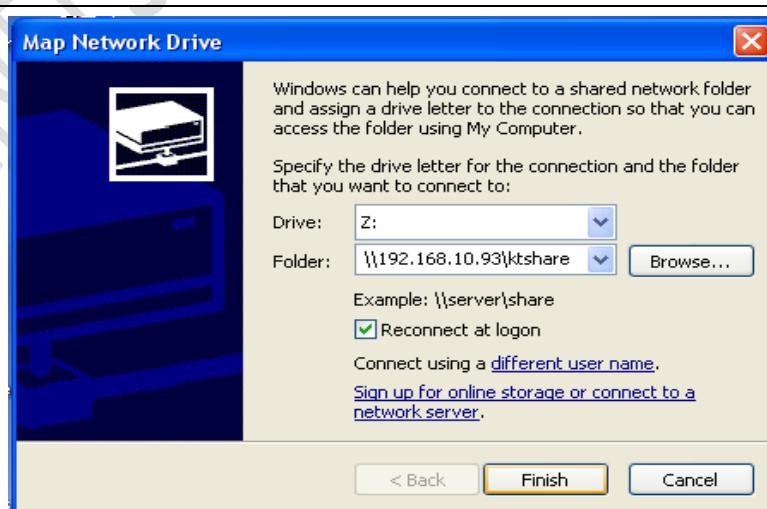
[ OK ]

Windows as a samba client:

To connect from windows to the samba server, Right click on My Computer icon select



- Give the address of samba server as “\\192.168.10.93\ktshare(sharename), press on finish to continue.



- It will prompt for user name and passwd, give samba user and passwd and click on OK



- Now a window will be opened, start adding some data to it from both sides  
PC ▶ ktshare (\\\192.168.104.94) (Z:)

Name	Date modified	Type	Size
1	1/31/2014 4:53 PM	File	0 KB
2	1/31/2014 4:53 PM	File	0 KB
3	1/31/2014 4:53 PM	File	0 KB
4	1/31/2014 3:00 AM	File	0 KB
5	1/31/2014 3:00 AM	File	0 KB
6	1/31/2014 3:04 AM	File	0 KB
7	1/31/2014 3:04 AM	File	0 KB
8	1/31/2014 3:04 AM	File	0 KB
9	1/31/2014 3:13 AM	File	0 KB
10	1/31/2014 3:13 AM	File	0 KB
11	2/1/2014 9:23 AM	File	0 KB
12	2/1/2014 9:23 AM	File	0 KB

### Linux as client of SAMBA

- Log into Linux machine and check how many samba servers are there in your network

**#findsmb**

```
[root@ktcl5 ~]# findsmb

          *=DMB
          +=LMB
IP ADDR      NETBIOS NAME      WORKGROUP/OS/VERSION
-----
192.168.10.83  CL3           +[CL] [Windows Server 2003 R2 3790 Service Pack 2]
[Windows Server 2003 R2 5.2]
192.168.10.93  KTCL2         [MYGROUP] [Unix] [Samba 3.5.6-86.el6]
192.168.10.98  KTLINUX       +[WORKGROUP] [Windows Server 2003 R2 3790 Service]
```

- Check the share name of that samba server by using following command

**#smbclient -L //192.168.10.93**

when prompted for passwd just press enter without giving any passwd

```
[root@ktcl5 ~]# smbclient -L //192.168.10.93
Enter root's password:
Anonymous login successful
Domain=[MYGROUP] OS=[Unix] Server=[Samba 3.5.6-86.el6]

      Sharename      Type      Comment
      -----
      IPC$          IPC       IPC Service (Samba Server Version 3.5.6-86.el6
)
      ktshare        Disk      Public Stuff
Anonymous login successful
Domain=[MYGROUP] OS=[Unix] Server=[Samba 3.5.6-86.el6]

      Server          Comment
      -----
      KTCL2          Samba Server Version 3.5.6-86.el6
      KTLINUX        Samba Server Version 3.5.4-68.el6

      Workgroup      Master
      -----
      CL             CL3
      KTS            KTADS
      MYGROUP        KTLINUX
      WORKGROUP     KTLINUX
```

- To connect to the samba server use the following syntax

**#smbclient //<server IP>/<share name> -U <User name>**

```
#smbclient //192.168.10.93/ktshare -U ktuser
```

```
[root@ktcl5 ~]# smbclient //192.168.10.93/ktshare -U ktuser
Enter ktuser's password:
Domain=[MYGROUP] OS=[Unix] Server=[Samba 3.5.6-86.el6]
smb: \> ls
.
..
linuxfile3
Doc1.docx
linuxfile1
linuxfile2
D 0 Wed Nov 9 20:40:18 2011
DR 0 Wed Nov 9 20:00:43 2011
0 Wed Nov 9 20:40:18 2011
A 131602 Sat Oct 1 15:26:29 2011
0 Wed Nov 9 20:40:18 2011
0 Wed Nov 9 20:40:18 2011
62994 blocks of size 32768. 52515 blocks available
smb: \> █
```

- To mount the SAMBA directory on remote Linux client
- The syntax is

```
#mount -t <type of fs> //<server IP address>/<share name> /<mount point> -O user= <user
name>.
```

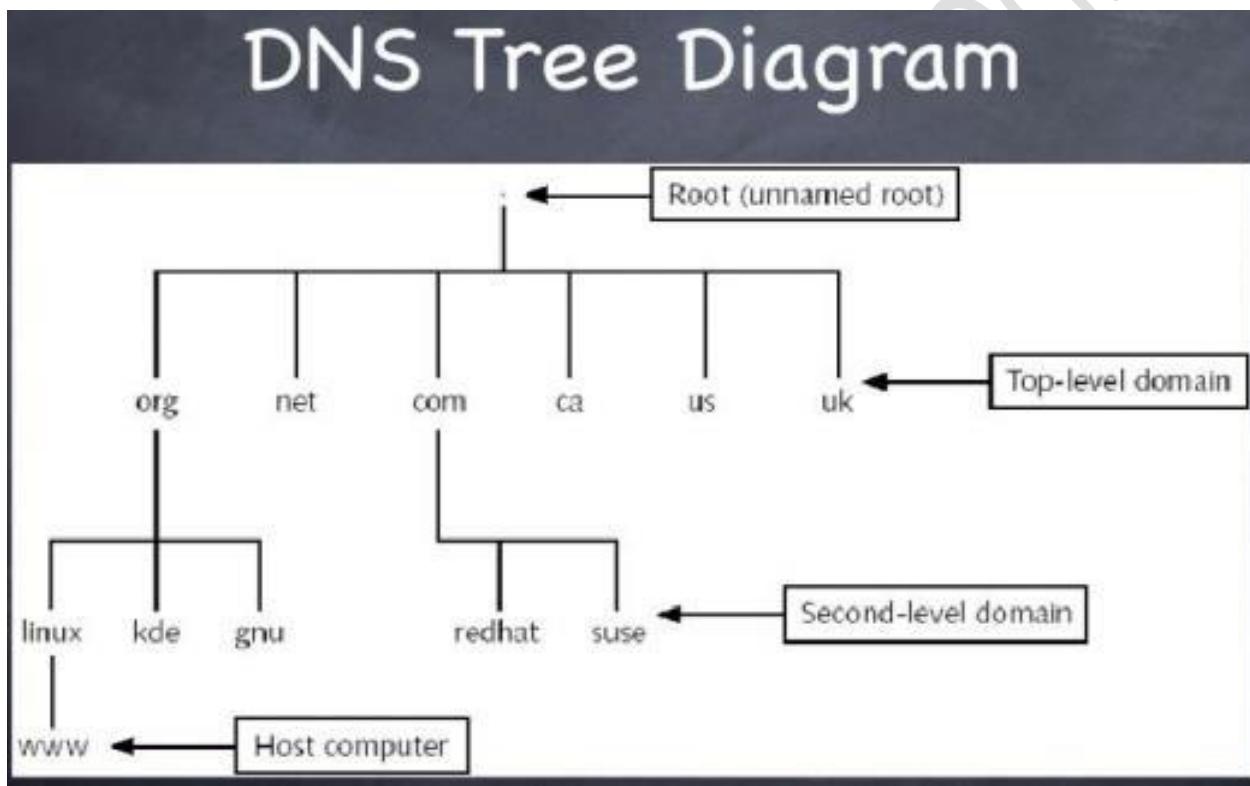
```
#mount -t cifs //192.168.10.93/ktshare /mnt -o user=ktuser
```

```
[root@ktcl5 ~]# mount -t cifs //192.168.10.93/ktshare /mnt -o user=ktuser
Password:
[root@ktcl5 ~]# mount
/dev/mapper/rootvg_ktcl5-LogVol00 on / type ext4 (rw)
proc on /proc type proc (rw)
sysfs on /sys type sysfs (rw)
devpts on /dev/pts type devpts (rw,gid=5,mode=620)
tmpfs on /dev/shm type tmpfs (rw,rootcontext="system_u:object_r:tmpfs_t:s0")
/dev/sda2 on /boot type ext4 (rw)
/dev/mapper/rootvg_ktcl5-LogVol01 on /home type ext4 (rw)
/dev/mapper/rootvg_ktcl5-LogVol04 on /opt type ext4 (rw)
/dev/mapper/rootvg_ktcl5-LogVol05 on /tmp type ext4 (rw)
/dev/mapper/rootvg_ktcl5-LogVol02 on /usr type ext4 (rw)
/dev/mapper/rootvg_ktcl5-LogVol03 on /var type ext4 (rw)
none on /proc/sys/fs/binfmt_misc type binfmt_misc (rw)
sunrpc on /var/lib/nfs/rpc_pipefs type rpc_pipefs (rw)
gvfs-fuse-daemon on /root/.gvfs type fuse.gvfs-fuse-daemon (rw,nosuid,nodev)
//192.168.10.93/ktshare/ on /mnt type cifs (rw,mand)
[root@ktcl5 ~]# █
```

That's it with SAMBA Server and Client configuration; keep working to learn more about it.

# DNS (Domain Name System) SERVER

The Domain Name System (DNS) is the crucial glue that keeps computer networks in harmony by converting human-friendly hostnames to the numerical IP addresses computers require to communicate with each other. DNS is one of the largest and most important distributed databases the world depends on by serving billions of DNS requests daily for public IP addresses. Most public DNS servers today are run by larger ISPs and commercial companies but private DNS servers can also be useful for private home networks.



Like the telephone system, every device attached to the Internet has a unique number, its IP address. Also like the telephone system there is a directory services to help you find those numbers called DNS.

If you have someone's name and address you can call a directory services, give them the details you know and they will (usually) give you the telephone number to call them. Likewise, if you know a server's host name (maybe <http://www.google.co.in/>) you can give that name to a DNS server and it will give you the IP address of that server.

## THE FORMAT OF A DOMAIN NAME

Like a physical address, Internet domain names are hierarchical (only a little stricter), so while your address might look like:

House name:	Ameerpet Road
Town:	Hyderabad
County:	Hyderabad
Country:	India

## AN INTERNET DOMAIN NAME LOOKS LIKE:

Host name	www
Domain	google
Second level domain	co
Top-level domain	In

A database is made up of records and the DNS is a database. Therefore, common resource record types in the DNS database are:

- **A** - Host's IP address. Address record allowing a computer name to be translated into an IP address. Each computer must have this record for its IP address to be located. These names are not assigned for clients that have dynamically assigned IP addresses, but are a must for locating servers with static IP addresses.
- **PTR** - Host's domain name, host identified by its IP address
- **CNAME** - Host's canonical name allows additional names or aliases to be used to locate a computer.
- **MX** - Host's or domain's mail exchanger.
- **NS** - Host's or domain's name server(s).
- **SOA** - Indicates authority for the domain (Start of Authority)
- **TXT** - Generic text record
- **SRV** - Service location record
- **RP** - Responsible person
- **HINFO** - Host information record with CPU type and operating system

The package which is used in Linux for performing DNS activity is BIND (Berkeley Internet Name Domain)

### Profile for DNS Server

Usage	:	To Resolve IP into hostname and vice-versa
Package	:	bind, caching-name
Script	:	/etc/init.d/named
Port	:	53
Configuration File	:	/etc/named.conf, /etc/named.rfc1912.zones
Document root	:	/var/named/
Daemon	:	named

### STEP BY STEP CONFIGURATION OF DNS SERVER

#### Step1: Check and Install the package for DNS

- The package which is to be installed for DNS is bind and caching

```
#rpm -q bind
```

```
[root@ktadm ~]# rpm -q bind
package bind is not installed
[root@ktadm ~]#
```

- To install the package use yum or rpm command

```
[root@ktadm ~]# yum install bind* caching* -y
Loaded plugins: product-id, refresh-packagekit, subscription-manager
Updating Red Hat repositories.
Setting up Install Process
Package 32:bind-utils-9.7.3-2.el6.x86_64 already installed and latest version
Package 32:bind-libs-9.7.3-2.el6.x86_64 already installed and latest version
Resolving Dependencies
--> Running transaction check
--> Package bind.x86_64 32:9.7.3-2.el6 will be installed
--> Package bind-chroot.x86_64 32:9.7.3-2.el6 will be installed
--> Package bind-dyndb-ldap.x86_64 0:0.2.0-1.el6 will be installed
--> Finished Dependency Resolution

Dependencies Resolved

=====
| Package           | Arch | Version | Repository | Size |
| ======           |      |          |            |       |
| Installing:      |       |          |             |        |
| bind              | x86_64 | 32:9.7.3-2.el6 | RHEL6    | 3.9 M |
| bind-chroot       | x86_64 | 32:9.7.3-2.el6 | RHEL6    | 67 k   |
| bind-dyndb-ldap   | x86_64 | 0.2.0-1.el6   | RHEL6    | 49 k   |
|                   |       |          |             |        |
| Installed:        |       |          |             |        |
| bind.x86_64 32:9.7.3-2.el6 | bind-chroot.x86_64 32:9.7.3-2.el6 |
| bind-dyndb-ldap.x86_64 0:0.2.0-1.el6 |                         |
|                   |       |          |             |        |
| Complete!         |       |          |             |        |
```

**Step2:** Update the /etc/hosts file with the server's ip address, and change the hostname with fully qualified domain name.

- Change the hostname by adding fully qualified domain name

**#hostname ktadm.kt.com (where kt.com is the FQDN) and Make it permanent in /etc/sysconfig/network file**

```
[root@ktadm ~]# hostname ktadm.kt.com
[root@ktadm ~]# cat /etc/sysconfig/network
NETWORKING=yes
HOSTNAME=ktadm.kt.com
[root@ktadm ~]# █
```

Note: - change the hostname on all clients by making it FQDN

- Update /etc/hosts on DNS server with hostname and IP address

**#vim /etc/hosts**

```
127.0.0.1 localhost localhost.localdomain localhost4 localhost4.localdomain4
::1         localhost localhost.localdomain localhost6 localhost6.localdomain6
192.168.10.95 ktadm.kt.com
```

### Step3: Edit the configuration file “/etc/named.conf

- Edit the /etc/named.conf file with our name server’s IP address and network range for clients.

**#vim /etc/named.conf**

```
options {
    listen-on port 53 { 127.0.0.1; };
    listen-on-v6 port 53 { ::1; };
    directory      "/var/named";
    dump-file      "/var/named/data/cache_dump.db";
    statistics-file "/var/named/data/named_stats.txt";
    memstatistics-file "/var/named/data/named_mem_stats.txt";
    allow-query    { localhost; };
    recursion yes;
```

Note: Need to add our systems details in highlighted lines

```
options {
    listen-on port 53 { 127.0.0.1; 192.168.10.95; };
    listen-on-v6 port 53 { ::1; };
    directory      "/var/named";
    dump-file      "/var/named/data/cache_dump.db";
    statistics-file "/var/named/data/named_stats.txt";
    memstatistics-file "/var/named/data/named_mem_stats.txt";
    allow-query    { localhost; 192.168.10.0/24; };
    recursion yes;
```

Where 192.168.10.95 is our Name server’s IP Address

And 192.168.10.0/24 is the network ‘s range from where clients can query the Name server

### Step4: Edit the other zone configuration file i.e. “/etc/named.rfc1912.zones

- To add the details of the zones i.e. forward lookup zone and reverse lookup zone we need to edit the /etc/named.rfc1912.zones file as shown below

**#vim /etc/named.rfc1912.zones**

Copy the following 11 lines and paste it at the end of the file

```
zone "localhost.localdomain" IN {  
    type master;  
    file "named.localhost";  
    allow-update { none; };  
};  
  
zone "localhost" IN {  
    type master;  
    file "named.localhost";  
    allow-update { none; };  
};
```

Once pasted, edit the fields as follows

```
#####  
  
zone "kt.com" IN {  
    type master;  
    file "kt.flz";  
    allow-update { none; };  
};  
  
zone "10.168.192.in-addr.arpa" IN {  
    type master;  
    file "kt.rlz";  
    allow-update { none; };  
};  
~  
:wq!
```

Where “kt.com” is the name of our domain

And “10.168.192.in-addr.arpa” is the reverse order of our domain network.

“kt.flz” is the name of the forward lookup zone file and...

“kt.rlz” is the name of the reverse lookup zone file.

Step5: Navigate to /var/named/ directory and create a forward and reverse zone files.

- Navigate to /var/named/ directory and copy the named.localhost file with its permissions as kt.flz and edit it.

```
#cd /var/named  
#cp -p named.localhost kt.flz
```

```
[root@ktadm ~]# cd /var/named/
[root@ktadm named]# ls
chroot  dynamic  named.empty      named.loopback
data    named.ca  [named.localhost] slaves
[root@ktadm named]# cp -p named.localhost kt.flz
[root@ktadm named]# vim kt.flz
```

- Edit kt.flz file as follows

```
$TTL 86400
@      IN SOA  ktadm.kt.com.  root.kt.com. (
                           201111091      ; serial
                           1D            ; refresh
                           1H            ; retry
                           1W            ; expire
                           3H )          ; minimum
NS      ktadm.kt.com.
ktadm  A      192.168.10.95
ktcl1  A      192.168.10.91
ktcl2  A      192.168.10.92
ktcl3  A      192.168.10.93
          A      127.0.0.1
```

Details about the fields used above:

- **A** - Host's IP address. Address record allowing a computer name to be translated into an IP address. Each computer must have this record for its IP address to be located. These names are not assigned for clients that have dynamically assigned IP addresses, but are a must for locating servers with static IP addresses.
  - **PTR** - Host's domain name, host identified by its IP address
  - **CNAME** - Host's canonical name allows additional names or aliases to be used to locate a computer.
  - **MX** - Host's or domain's mail exchanger.
  - **NS** - Host's or domain's name server(s).
  - **SOA** - Indicates authority for the domain (Start of Authority)
  - **TXT** - Generic text record
  - **SRV** - Service location record
  - **RP** - Responsible person
  - **HINFO** - Host information record with CPU type and operating system
- 
- Copy again named.localhost, this time as kt.rlz and edit it as shown below.

```
#cp -p named.localhost kt.rlz
```

#vim kt.rlz

```
[root@ktadm named]# cp -p named.localhost kt.rlz
[root@ktadm named]# vim kt.rlz
```

```
$TTL 86400
@ IN SOA kadm.kt.com. root.kt.com. (
                                2011110951      ; serial
                                1D              ; refresh
                                1H              ; retry
                                1W              ; expire
                                3H )            ; minimum
NS      kadm.kt.com.
ktadm  A      192.168.10.95
95      PTR     kadm.kt.com.
91      PTR     ktcl1.kt.com.
92      PTR     ktcl2.kt.com.
93      PTR     ktcl3.kt.com.
```

Step6: check whether the zone files are consistent or not

- To check the consistency of zone files the command is

#named-chkzone <domain name> zone file

#named-chkzone kt.com kt.flz (if you are not in named dir then give absolute path)

```
[root@ktadm named]# named-checkzone kt.com /var/named/kt.flz
zone kt.com/IN: loaded serial 201111091
OK
```

#named-chkzone kt.com kt.rlz

```
[root@ktadm named]# named-checkzone kt.com /var/named/kt.rlz
zone kt.com/IN: loaded serial 2011110951
OK
```

Step7: Add the address of DNS server in /etc/resolv.conf

- Edit the /etc/resolv.conf and add the IP of DNS server

#vim /etc/resolv.conf

```
# Generated by NetworkManager
search kt.com
nameserver 192.168.10.95
```

Step7: Restart the appropriate services

Restart the named service

### #service named restart

```
[root@ktadm named]# service named restart
Stopping named: . [ OK ]
Starting named: [ OK ]
[root@ktadm named]#
```

Okay now we've done with DNS server configuration, check whether it is resolving IP to hostname and hostname to IP using various commands.

- Using dig command to check the DNS resolution
- Check with giving hostname of server

### #dig <FQDN> of server

```
#dig ktadm.kt.com
```

```
[root@ktadm named]# dig ktadm.kt.com

; <>> DiG 9.7.3-RedHat-9.7.3-2.el6 <>> ktadm.kt.com
;; global options: +cmd
;; Got answer:
;; ->>HEADER<<- opcode: QUERY, status: NOERROR, id: 10356
;; flags: qr aa rd ra; QUERY: 1, ANSWER: 1, AUTHORITY: 1, ADDITIONAL: 0

;; QUESTION SECTION:
;ktadm.kt.com.           IN      A

;; ANSWER SECTION:
ktadm.kt.com.      86400   IN      A      192.168.10.95

;; AUTHORITY SECTION:
kt.com.            86400   IN      NS      ktadm.kt.com.

;; Query time: 0 msec
;; SERVER: 192.168.10.95#53(192.168.10.95)
;; WHEN: Fri Nov 11 18:28:49 2011
;; MSG SIZE  rcvd: 60
```

- Check with giving IP of hostname

### #dig -x 192.168.10.95

```
[root@ktadm ~]# dig -x 192.168.10.95

; <>> DiG 9.7.3-RedHat-9.7.3-2.el6 <>> -x 192.168.10.95
;; global options: +cmd
;; Got answer:
;; ->>HEADER<<- opcode: QUERY, status: NOERROR, id: 34843
;; flags: qr aa rd ra; QUERY: 1, ANSWER: 1, AUTHORITY: 1, ADDITIONAL: 1

;; QUESTION SECTION:
;95.10.168.192.in-addr.arpa. IN PTR

;; ANSWER SECTION:
95.10.168.192.in-addr.arpa. 86400 IN PTR ktadm.kt.com.

;; AUTHORITY SECTION:
10.168.192.in-addr.arpa. 86400 IN NS ktadm.kt.com.

;; ADDITIONAL SECTION:
ktadm.kt.com. 86400 IN A 192.168.10.95

;; Query time: 1 msec
;; SERVER: 192.168.10.95#53(192.168.10.95)
;; WHEN: Fri Nov 11 18:33:49 2011
;; MSG SIZE rcvd: 100
```

- Check the same with client's IP and Host name

#dig ktcl1.kt.com

```
[root@ktadm ~]# dig ktcl1.kt.com

; <>> DiG 9.7.3-RedHat-9.7.3-2.el6 <>> ktcl1.kt.com
;; global options: +cmd
;; Got answer:
;; ->>HEADER<<- opcode: QUERY, status: NOERROR, id: 34114
;; flags: qr aa rd ra; QUERY: 1, ANSWER: 1, AUTHORITY: 1, ADDITIONAL: 1

;; QUESTION SECTION:
;ktcl1.kt.com. IN A

;; ANSWER SECTION:
ktcl1.kt.com. 86400 IN A 192.168.10.91

;; AUTHORITY SECTION:
kt.com. 86400 IN NS ktadm.kt.com.

;; ADDITIONAL SECTION:
ktadm.kt.com. 86400 IN A 192.168.10.95
```

- With IP address:

#dig -x 192.168.10.91

```
[root@ktadm ~]# dig -x 192.168.10.91

; <>> DiG 9.7.3-RedHat-9.7.3-2.el6 <>> -x 192.168.10.91
;; global options: +cmd
;; Got answer:
;; ->>HEADER<<- opcode: QUERY, status: NOERROR, id: 20434
;; flags: qr aa rd ra; QUERY: 1, ANSWER: 1, AUTHORITY: 1, ADDITIONAL: 1

;; QUESTION SECTION:
;91.10.168.192.in-addr.arpa. IN PTR

;; ANSWER SECTION:
91.10.168.192.in-addr.arpa. 86400 IN PTR ktcl1.kt.com.

;; AUTHORITY SECTION:
10.168.192.in-addr.arpa. 86400 IN NS ktadm.kt.com.

;; ADDITIONAL SECTION:
ktadm.kt.com. 86400 IN A 192.168.10.95
```

#### Using ping to test the resolution

- Try pinging with hostname both server and client

```
#ping -c2 ktadm
#ping -c2 ktcl1 or any other client
```

```
[root@ktadm ~]# ping -c2 ktadm
PING ktadm.kt.com (192.168.10.95) 56(84) bytes of data.
64 bytes from ktadm.kt.com (192.168.10.95): icmp_seq=1 ttl=64 time=0.051 ms
64 bytes from ktadm.kt.com (192.168.10.95): icmp_seq=2 ttl=64 time=0.034 ms
```

```
[root@ktadm ~]# ping -c2 ktcl1
PING ktcl1.kt.com (192.168.10.91) 56(84) bytes of data.
64 bytes from ktcl1.kt.com (192.168.10.91): icmp_seq=1 ttl=64 time=0.601 ms
64 bytes from ktcl1.kt.com (192.168.10.91): icmp_seq=2 ttl=64 time=0.260 ms
```

#### Using host command to check resolution

- Checking the DNS resolution with host command for both server as well as clients

```
#host <hostname>
#host ktadm
#host ktcl2
```

```
[root@ktadm ~]# host ktadm
ktadm.kt.com has address 192.168.10.95
```

```
[root@ktadm ~]# host ktcl2
ktcl2.kt.com has address 192.168.10.92
```

- Using host command with IP address of server as well as client

```
#host 192.168.10.95
```

**#host 192.168.10.92 (or) 91, 93 any client**

```
[root@ktadm ~]# host 192.168.10.95  
95.10.168.192.in-addr.arpa domain name pointer ktadm.kt.com.
```

```
[root@ktadm ~]# host 192.168.10.92  
92.10.168.192.in-addr.arpa domain name pointer ktcl2.kt.com.
```

Using nslookup command to check the DNS resolution

- Use nslookup command with server and clients hostname and check it

**#nslookup ktadm**

**#nslookup ktcl3**

```
[root@ktadm ~]# nslookup ktadm  
Server:      192.168.10.95  
Address:     192.168.10.95#53  
  
Name:   ktadm.kt.com  
Address: 192.168.10.95
```

```
[root@ktadm ~]# nslookup ktcl3  
Server:      192.168.10.95  
Address:     192.168.10.95#53  
  
Name:   ktcl3.kt.com  
Address: 192.168.10.93  
Name:   ktcl3.kt.com  
Address: 127.0.0.1
```

- Check the same thing with IP addresses

**#nslookup 192.168.10.95**

**#nslookup 192.168.10.93**

```
[root@ktadm ~]# nslookup 192.168.10.95  
Server:      192.168.10.95  
Address:     192.168.10.95#53  
  
95.10.168.192.in-addr.arpa      name = ktadm.kt.com.
```

```
[root@ktadm ~]# nslookup 192.168.10.93  
Server:      192.168.10.95  
Address:     192.168.10.95#53  
  
93.10.168.192.in-addr.arpa      name = ktcl3.kt.com.
```

Client side configuration for DNS

- Log into client machine and add the DNS server's information in /etc/resolv.conf file

**#vim /etc/resolv.conf**

```
# Generated by NetworkManager
search kt.com
nameserver 192.168.10.95
```

- Now check with any of the options used previously like dig, ping, host or nslookup for dns resolution

```
[root@ktcl1 ~]# nslookup ktadm
Server:      192.168.10.95
Address:     192.168.10.95#53

Name:   ktadm.kt.com
Address: 192.168.10.95

[root@ktcl1 ~]# nslookup ktcl3
Server:      192.168.10.95
Address:     192.168.10.95#53

Name:   ktcl3.kt.com
Address: 127.0.0.1
Name:   ktcl3.kt.com
Address: 192.168.10.93

[root@ktcl1 ~]# nslookup 192.168.10.95
Server:      192.168.10.95
Address:     192.168.10.95#53

95.10.168.192.in-addr.arpa      name = ktadm.kt.com.

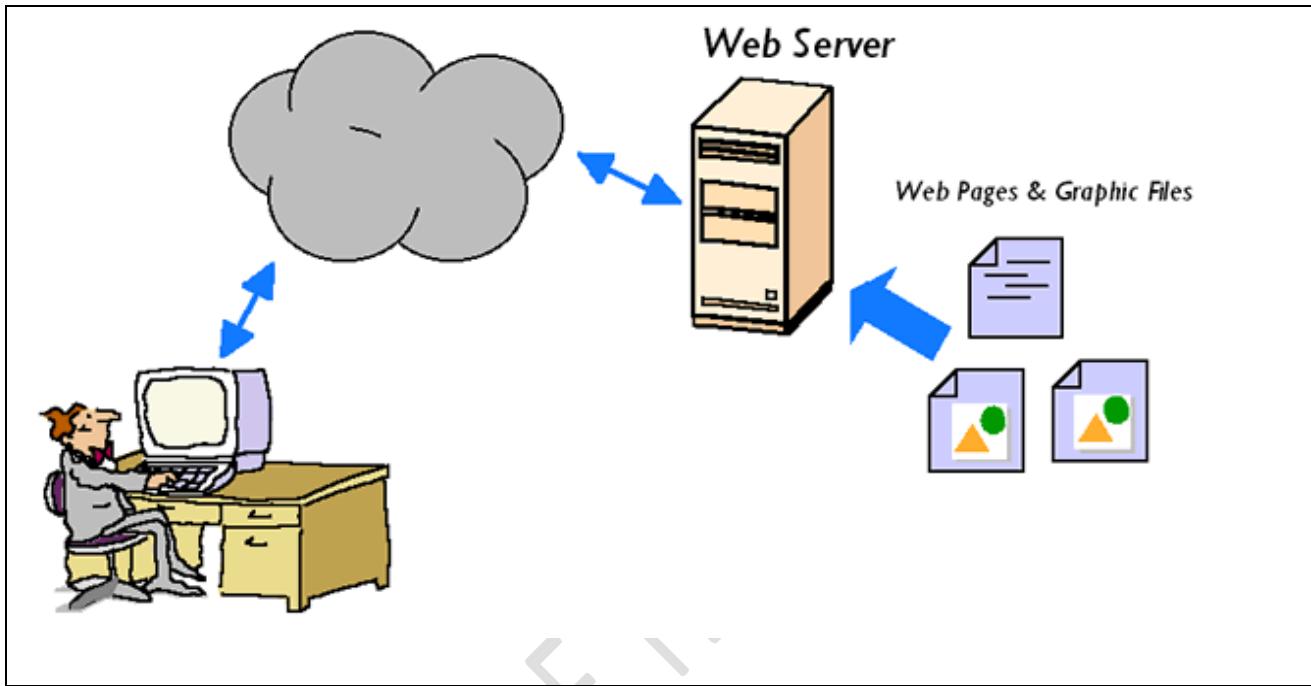
[root@ktcl1 ~]# nslookup 192.168.10.93
Server:      192.168.10.95
Address:     192.168.10.95#53

93.10.168.192.in-addr.arpa      name = ktcl3.kt.com.
```

Do the same for every client and check it with various commands on every client

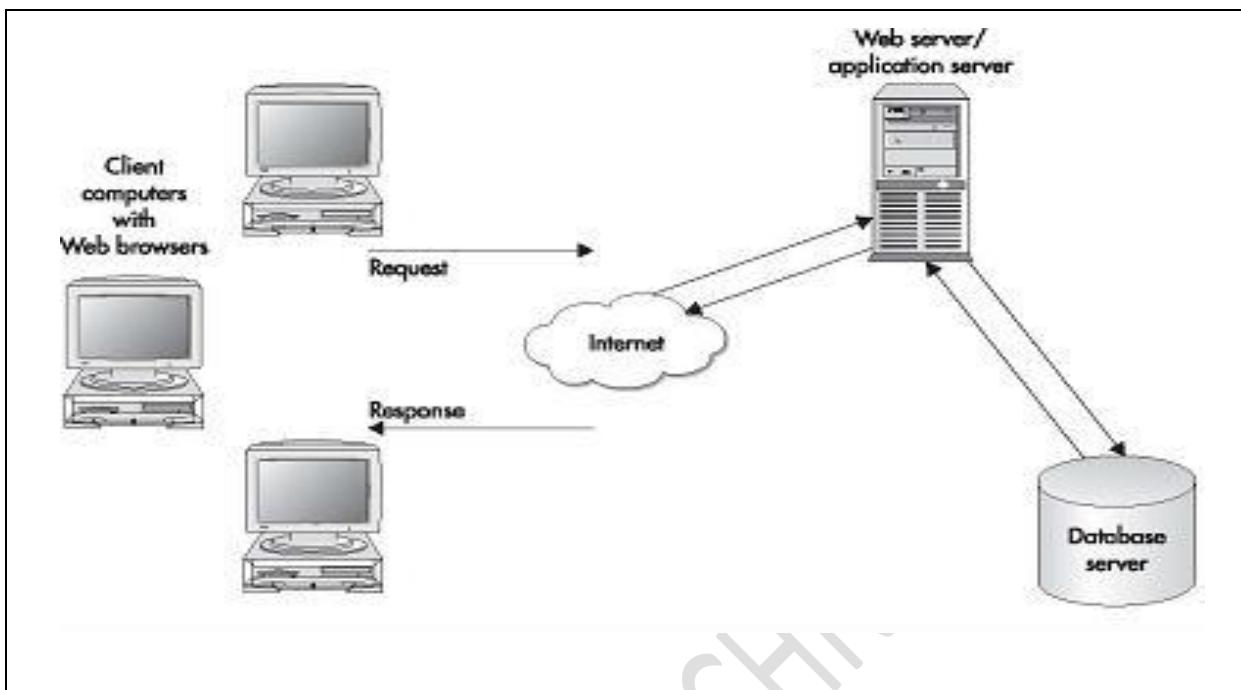
Also make sure that hostname should be Fully Qualified Domain Name.

# WEB SERVER (APACHE)



- Every Web site sits on a computer known as a Web server. This server is always connected to the internet. Web servers are computers that deliver (serves up) Web pages. Every Web server has an IP address and possibly a domain name.
- A web server can mean two things - a computer on which a web site is hosted and a program that runs on such a computer. So the term web server refers to both hardware and software.
- A web server is what makes it possible to be able to access content like web pages or other data from anywhere as long as it is connected to the internet. The hardware houses the content, while the software makes the content accessible through the internet.
- The most common use of web servers is to host websites but there are other uses like data storage or for running enterprise applications. There are also different ways to request content from a web server. The most common request is the Hypertext Transfer Protocol (HTTP), but there are also other requests like the Internet Message Access Protocol (IMAP) or the File Transfer Protocol (FTP).

## How a Web Server Works



A simple exchange between the client machine and Web server goes like this:

1. The client's browser dissects the URL into a number of separate parts, including address, path name and protocol.
2. A Domain Name Server (DNS) translates the domain name the user has entered into its IP address, a numeric combination that represents the site's true address on the Internet (a domain name is merely a "front" to make site addresses easier to remember).
3. The browser now determines which protocol (the language client machines use to communicate with servers) should be used. Examples of protocols include FTP, or File Transfer Protocol, and HTTP, Hypertext Transfer Protocol.
4. The server sends a GET request to the Web server to retrieve the address it has been given. For example, when a user types <http://www.example.com/1.jpg>, the browser sends a GET 1.jpg command to example.com and waits for a response. The server now responds to the browser's requests. It verifies that the given address exists, finds the necessary files, runs the appropriate scripts, exchanges cookies if necessary, and returns the results back to the browser. If it cannot locate the file, the server sends an error message to the client.
5. The browser translates the data it has been given into HTML and displays the results to the user.

#### Profile for Apache Server

Use	:	Hosting a web site.
Package	:	httpd
Port	:	80/http, 443/https
Configuration Files	:	/etc/httpd/conf/httpd.conf /etc/httpd/conf.d/ssl.conf (https)
Document Root	:	/var/www/html
Daemon	:	httpd
Script	:	/etc/initd/httpd

Steps to configure a simple web server

Step1: Install the package

- The package for apache web server is httpd.

**#yum install httpd\* -y**

```
[root@ktadm ~]# yum install httpd* -y
Loaded plugins: refresh-packagekit, rhnplugin
This system is not registered with RHN.
RHN support will be disabled.
rhel                                         | 3.7 kB     00:00 ..
Setting up Install Process
Package httpd-2.2.15-5.el6.i686 already installed and latest version
Package httpd-tools-2.2.15-5.el6.i686 already installed and latest version
Resolving Dependencies
--> Running transaction check
-->> Package httpd-devel.i686 0:2.2.15-5.el6 set to be updated
-->> Processing Dependency: apr-util-devel for package: httpd-devel-2.2.15-5.el6
Installed:
  httpd-devel.i686 0:2.2.15-5.el6          httpd-manual.noarch 0:2.2.15-5.el6

Dependency Installed:
  apr-devel.i686 0:1.3.9-3.el6           apr-util-devel.i686 0:1.3.9-3.el6
  cyrus-sasl-devel.i686 0:2.1.23-8.el6    db4-cxx.i686 0:4.7.25-16.el6
  db4-devel.i686 0:4.7.25-16.el6         expat-devel.i686 0:2.0.1-9.1.el6
  openldap-devel.i686 0:2.4.19-15.el6

Complete!
```

Step2: Navigate to /etc/httpd/conf/httpd.conf and edit it.

- Navigate to the configuration file for http i.e. /etc/httpd/conf/httpd.conf and copy the last 7 lines as shown below

**#vim /etc/httpd/conf/httpd.conf**

```
#<VirtualHost *:80>
#   ServerAdmin webmaster@dummy-host.example.com
#   DocumentRoot /www/docs/dummy-host.example.com
#   ServerName dummy-host.example.com
#   ErrorLog logs/dummy-host.example.com-error_log
#   CustomLog logs/dummy-host.example.com-access_log common
#</VirtualHost>
```

Copy these lines and paste it at the end of the page, then edit it with your preferences.

- Edit the pasted lines as below

```
#####simple website#####
<VirtualHost 192.168.10.99:80>
    ServerAdmin root@ktadmin.kt.com
    DocumentRoot /var/www/html
    ServerName ktadmin.kt.com
    ErrorLog logs/ktadmin.kt.com-error_log
    CustomLog logs/ktadmin.kt.com-access_log common
</VirtualHost>
```

Step2: Navigate to the document root folder i.e. /var/www/html/ and create an index.html file which will be accessed through a web browser

```
#vim /var/www/html/index.html
```

```
<h1> Kernel Technologies </h1>
##### Linux is Freedom #####
```

Step3: Restart the Service and enable it in boot configuration

```
#service httpd restart
```

```
#chkconfig httpd on
```

```
[root@ktadm ~]# service httpd restart
Stopping httpd: [OK]
Starting httpd: [OK]
[root@ktadm ~]# chkconfig httpd on
[root@ktadm ~]#
```

Step4: Now open the Firefox web browser and try connecting the web server.

- Open Firefox web browser and type the IP Address of the web server

```
http://192.168.10.99
```



- To open the website from command line use the following command

```
#curl <IP/HOSTNAME of web server>  
#curl 192.168.10.99
```

```
[root@ktadm ~]# curl 192.168.10.95  
<h1> Kernel Technologies </h1>  
##### Linux is Freedom #####
```

Also try

```
#elinks --dump 192.168.10.95 and check the output
```

DNS configuration if you don't want to use IP address.

- Open the DNS configuration file and add the canonical name as "www", so that we can use our domain as full fledge website.

```
#vim /var/named/kt.flz
```

```
[root@ktadm ~]# vim /var/named/kt.flz  
$TTL 86400  
@ IN SOA ktadm.kt.com. root.kt.com. (  
                                201111171      ; serial  
                                1D            ; refresh  
                                1H            ; retry  
                                1W            ; expire  
                                3H )          ; minimum  
NS      ktadm.kt.com.  
ktadm   A      192.168.10.95  
ktcl1   A      192.168.10.91  
ktcl2   A      192.168.10.92  
ktcl3   A      192.168.10.93  
www    CNAME  ktadm
```

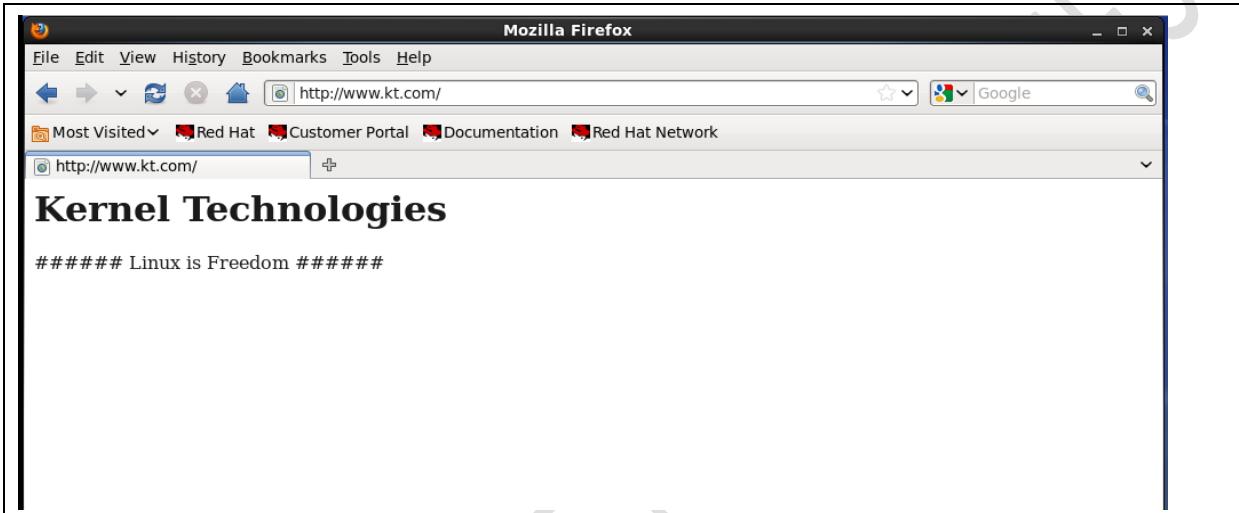
- Restart the DNS services

```
#service named restart
```

```
[root@ktadm port]# !ser
service named restart
Stopping named: [ OK ]
Starting named: [ OK ]
```

- Okay now we are ready just open the web browser like Firefox and this type address as follows

[www.kt.com](http://www.kt.com)



Note: This will only work in your DNS range, for others in your network use ip address

### To create an Alias Web Site

- Navigate to the document root i.e. /var/www/html/ and create a folder

```
[root@ktadm ~]# cd /var/www/html/
[root@ktadm html]# mkdir vcs
[root@ktadm html]# cd vcs
[root@ktadm vcs]# vim index.html
```

- Create an index.html

```
<h1> Kernel Technologies </h1>
##### VCS On LINUX #####
```

- Navigate to configuration file /etc/httpd/conf/httpd.conf and add a line as alias

```
#vim /etc/httpd/conf/httpd.conf
```

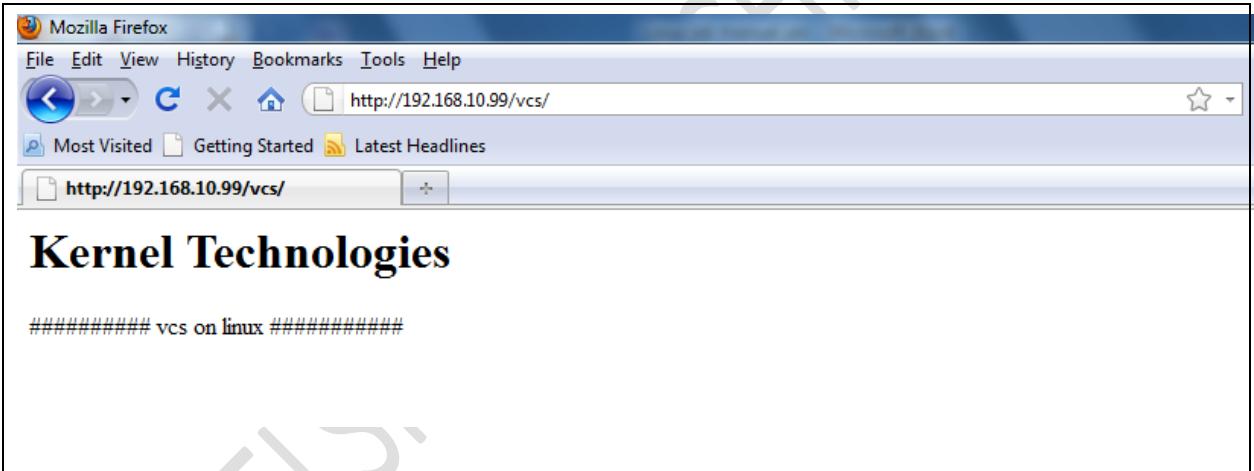
```
<VirtualHost 192.168.10.99:80>
    ServerAdmin root@ktadmin.kt.com
    DocumentRoot /var/www/html
    Alias      /vcs  /var/www/html/vcs
    ServerName ktadmin.kt.com
    ErrorLog logs/ktadmin.kt.com-error_log
    CustomLog logs/ktadmin.kt.com-access_log common
</VirtualHost>
```

- Restart the service

```
[root@ktadm ~]# service httpd restart
Stopping httpd: [OK]
Starting httpd: [OK]
```

- Open the Firefox web browser and type the following url

<http://192.168.10.99/vcs>



#### To redirect the website:

- Redirecting means whenever the name of a particular website is given it should take us on some other website.
- To redirect a website, navigate and open the configuration file of http i.e. /etc/httpd/conf/httpd.conf and add the following line in it at the end.  
`#vim /etc/httpd/conf/httpd.conf`

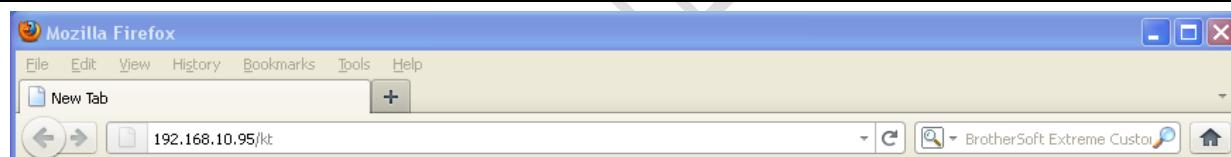
```
#####simple website#####
<VirtualHost 192.168.10.99:80>
    ServerAdmin root@ktadmin.kt.com
    DocumentRoot /var/www/html
    Alias      /vcs  /var/www/html/vcs
    redirect  /kt   "http://www.kerneltech.com"
    ServerName ktadmin.kt.com
    ErrorLog logs/ktadmin.kt.com-error_log
    CustomLog logs/ktadmin.kt.com-access_log common
</VirtualHost>
```

- Restart the services

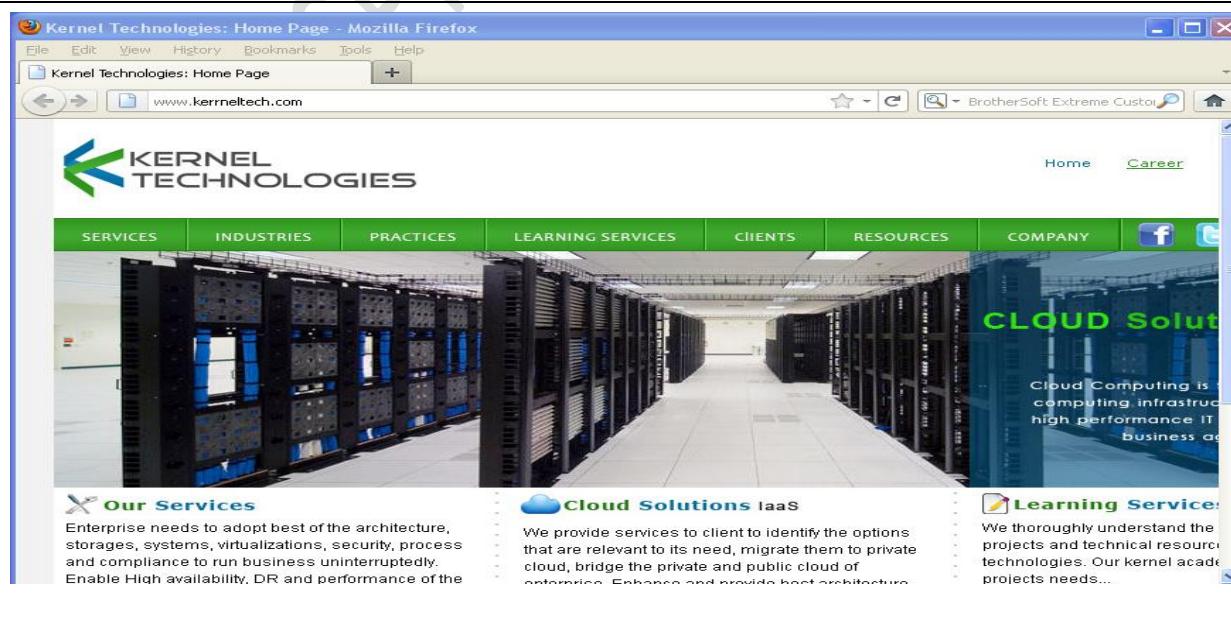
```
#service http restart
```

```
[root@ktadm ~]# service httpd restart
Stopping httpd: [ OK ]
Starting httpd: [ OK ]
```

- Open the Firefox browser and type the following website address  
<http://192.168.10.95/kt> and it will take you to Kernel Technologies' website



After pressing enter it will redirect to the following website



## Virtual Web hosting

**Virtual hosting** is a method for hosting multiple [domain names](#) on a [server](#) using a single [IP address](#). This allows one server to share its resources, such as memory and processor cycles, in order to use its resources more efficiently.

Port based Hosting:

- The default port number for HTTP is 80. However, most web servers can be configured to operate on almost any port number, provided the port number is not in use by any other program on the server.
- For example, a server may host the website www.example.com. However, if the owner wishes to operate a second site, and does not have access to the domain name configuration for their domain name, and/or owns no other IP addresses which could be used to serve the site from, they could instead use another port number, for example, www.example.com:81 for port 81, www.example.com:8000 for port 8000, or www.example.com:8080 for port 8080.

Steps to configure a port based web hosting

Step1: Make a directory for port based web hosting in document root i.e. /var/www/ say port.

#mkdir /var/www/port

```
[root@ktadm ~]# mkdir /var/www/port
[root@ktadm ~]# cd /var/www/
[root@ktadm www]# ls
cgi-bin  error  html  icons  manual  port
[root@ktadm www]#
```

Step2: Navigate to port directory and create an index.html file there

```
[root@ktadm ~]# cd /var/www/port/
[root@ktadm port]# vim index.html
<h1> PORT BASED WEB HOSTING </h1>
##### Welcome to Kernel Tech #####
```

Step3: edit the configuration file i.e. /etc/httpd/conf/httpd.conf add the configuration for port based hosting in configuration file.

#vim /etc/httpd/conf/httpd.conf

Copy the same 7 lines and paste it at end edit it

```
#####PORT BASED#####
<VirtualHost 192.168.10.99:8080>
    ServerAdmin root@ktadmin.kt.com
    DocumentRoot /var/www/port
    ServerName ktadmin.kt.com
    ErrorLog logs/ktadmin.kt.com-error_log
    CustomLog logs/ktadmin.kt.com-access_log common
</VirtualHost>
```

Also search for the “Listen 80” by using “/” and paste your port under it

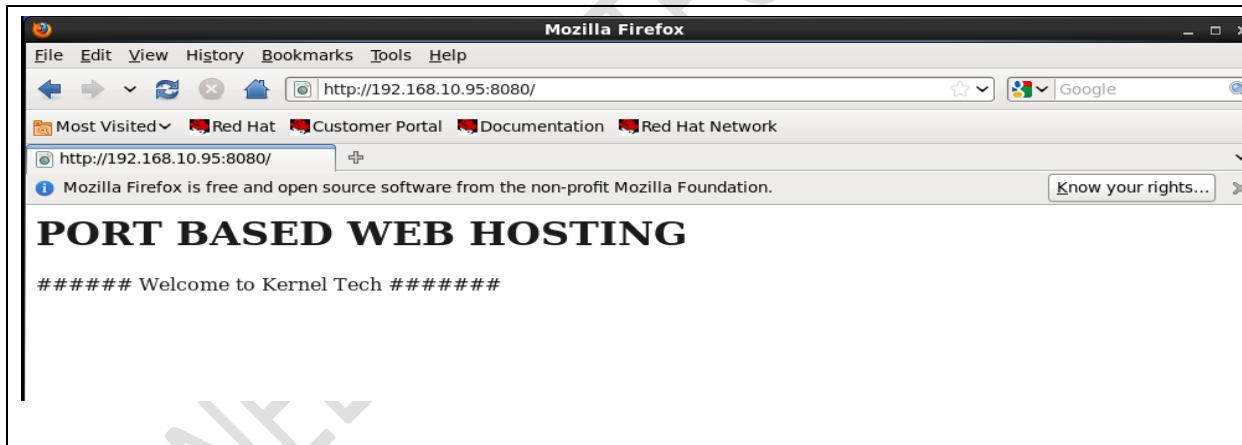
```
#Listen 12.34.56.78:80
Listen 80
Listen 8080
```

Step4: Restart the service, open web browser and search for your website with port no.

**#service httpd restart**

```
[root@ktadm port]# !ser
service httpd restart
Stopping httpd: [ OK ]
Starting httpd: [ OK ]
```

Open Firefox and type <http://192.168.10.99:8080>



### Name Based Virtual web Hosting

- Name-based virtual hosts use multiple host names for the same web server IP address.
- With web browsers that support HTTP/1.1 (as nearly all now do), upon connecting to a webserver, the browsers send the hostname from the address that the user typed into their browser's address bar along with the requested resource itself to the web server. The server can use the Host header field to determine which web site (or *virtual host*), as well as page, to show the user. The browser specifies the address by setting the Host HTTP header with the host specified by the user. The Host header is required in all HTTP/1.1 requests.

- For instance, a server could be receiving requests for two domains, www.example.com and www.example.net, both of which resolve to the same IP address. For www.example.com, the server would send the HTML file from the directory /var/www/user/Joe/site/, while requests for www.example.net would make the server serve pages from /var/www/user/Mary/site/
- Example: A blog server can be hosted using Name base hosting. blog1.example.com and blog2.example.com

## STEPS TO CONFIGURE NAME BASED WEB HOSTING:

Step1: Make a directory in document root i.e. /var/www/ with some name say "ktname"

```
#mkdir /var/www/ktname
```

```
[root@ktadm ~]# mkdir /var/www/ktname
```

- Add an index page in it

```
#vim /etc/var/www/ktname/index.html
```

```
<h1> NAME BASED WEB HOSTING </h1>
##### Welcome to Kernel Tech #####
```

Step2: Give one more hostname to the server where you want to have name based webhosting.

```
[root@ktadm ~]# hostname
ktadm.kt.com
[root@ktadm ~]# hostname ktaadm.kt.com ktadmin.kt.com
```

- Make the hostname permanent in /etc/sysconfig/network file  
#vim /etc/sysconfig/network

```
NETWORKING=yes
HOSTNAME=ktadm.kt.com
HOSTNAME=ktadmin.kt.com
```

Step3: Update the DNS zone configuration files with the new hostname of the web server

```
#vim /var/named/kt.flz
```

```
$TTL 86400
@ IN SOA ktadmin.kt.com. root.kt.com. (
                                         201205191      ; serial
                                         1D             ; refresh
                                         1H             ; retry
                                         1W             ; expire
                                         3H )           ; minimum
                                         NS            ktadmin.kt.com.
ktadmin A 192.168.10.99
ktadm A 192.168.10.99
www CNAME ktadmin
ktcl1 A 192.168.10.91
ktcl2 A 192.168.10.92
ktcl3 A 192.168.10.93
ktcl4 A 192.168.10.94
                                         A 127.0.0.1
```

#vim /var/named/kt.rlz

```
$TTL 86400
@ IN SOA ktadmin.kt.com. root.kt.com. (
                                         201205191      ; serial
                                         1D             ; refresh
                                         1H             ; retry
                                         1W             ; expire
                                         3H )           ; minimum
                                         NS            ktadmin.kt.com.
ktadmin A 192.168.10.99
99 PTR ktadmin.kt.com.
99 PTR ktadm.kt.com.
91 PTR ktcl1.kt.com.
92 PTR ktcl2.kt.com.
93 PTR ktcl3.kt.com.
94 PTR ktcl4.kt.com.
```

Restart the named services

#service named restart

```
[root@ktadm ~]# service named restart
Stopping named: . [ OK ]
Starting named: [ OK ]
```

Step2: Edit the configuration file as shown below

- Open the configuration file and add the name host information , search for NameVirtualHost and your host details

#vim /etc/httpd/conf/httdp.conf

- Copy the same <VirtualHost> 7 lines, paste it at the last of the page and edit it as follows

```
#####NAME BASED#####
<VirtualHost 192.168.10.99:80>
    ServerAdmin root@ktadm.kt.com
    DocumentRoot /var/www/name
    ServerName kadm.kt.com
    ErrorLog logs/ktadm.kt.com-error_log
    CustomLog logs/ktadm.kt.com-access_log common
</VirtualHost>
```

```
#
#NameVirtualHost *:80
NameVirtualHost kadm.kt.com:80
#
# NOTE: NameVirtualHost cannot be used without a port specifier
# (e.g. :80) if mod_ssl is being used, due to the nature of the
# SSL protocol.
#
```

Step3: Restart the server and open the web page from Firefox

**#service httpd restart**

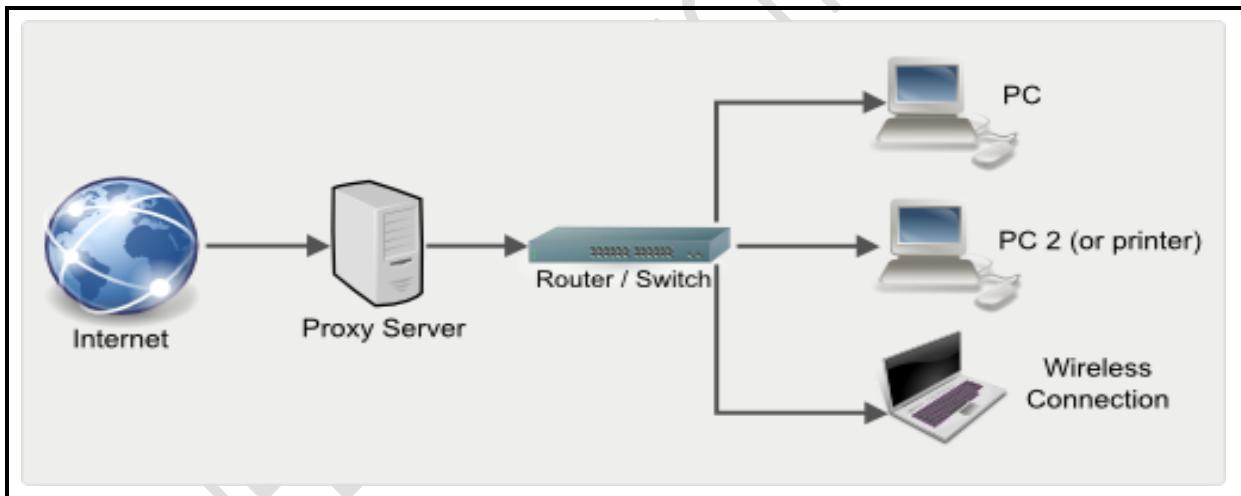
```
[root@ktadm ~]# service httpd restart
Stopping httpd: [OK]
Starting httpd: [OK]
[root@ktadm ~]#
```

http://kadm.kt.com now it will navigate to our name based web page



# SQUID PROXY SERVER

A proxy server is one that receives requests intended for another server and that acts on the behalf of the client (as the client proxy) to obtain the requested service. It is often used when the client and the server are incompatible for direct connection. For example, the client may be unable to meet the security authentication requirements of the server but may be required to access some services. It may also be used for screening purposes to enable the administrator to control access to undesirable sites. The proxy server may also be used for caching purposes, which enables faster access to frequently used websites. All the computers connected to the LAN access the Internet through a single IP address, resulting in improved security simply because the number of ports exposed is reduced.



## Profile for Apache Server

Use	:	To Share Internet, Block unwanted sites.
Package	:	squid
Port	:	3128 (default)
Configuration Files	:	/etc/squid/squid.conf
Daemon	:	squid

Script : /etc/initd/squid

Configuring a proxy server for internet sharing:

Step1: Check and Install the squid package

```
[root@ktlinux ~]# rpm -qa squid
[root@ktlinux ~]# yum install squid* -y
Loaded plugins: product-id, refresh-packagekit, security, subscription-manager
Updating certificate-based repositories.
ftp://192.168.10.96/pub/rhel6/repo/repodata/repomd.xml: [Errno 14] PYCURL ERROR 7 - "
couldn't connect to host"
Trying other mirror.
Setting up Install Process
Resolving Dependencies
--> Running transaction check
---> Package squid.x86_64 7:3.1.10-1.el6_1.1 will be installed
--> Finished Dependency Resolution

Dependencies Resolved

=====
Package      Arch      Version      Repository      Size
=====
Installing:
squid        x86_64    7:3.1.10-1.el6_1.1      KTREPO      1.7 M

Transaction Summary

[root@ktadm ~]# rpm -qa squid
squid-3.1.10-1.el6_1.1.x86_64
```

Step2: Edit the configuration file for squid i.e. “/etc/squid/squid.conf”, Add the network range from where the clients can connect to proxy server.

#vim /etc/squid/squid.conf

```
#
# INSERT YOUR OWN RULE(S) HERE TO ALLOW ACCESS FROM YOUR CLIENTS
#
acl trm src 192.168.10.0/24
```

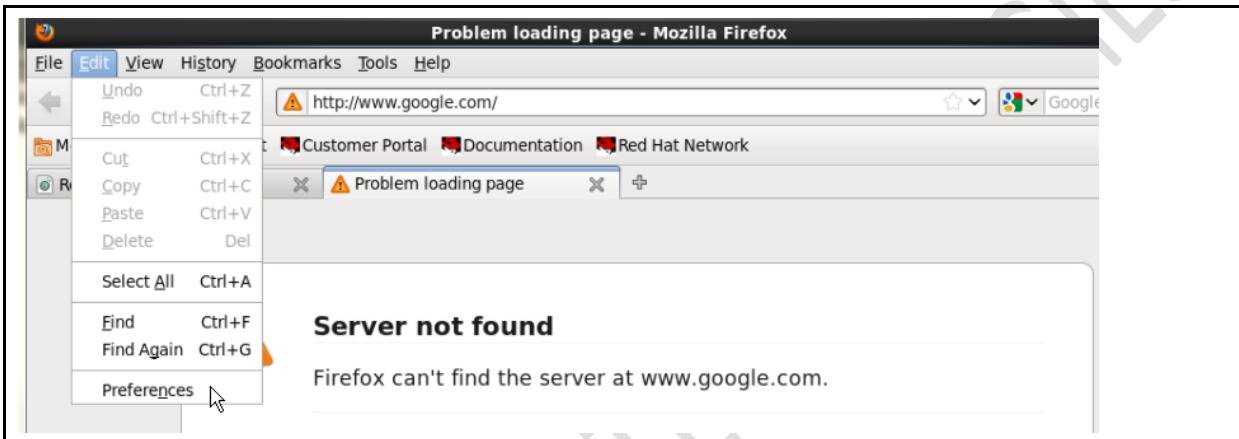
Step3: Start the squid services and make it permanent

```
[root@ktadm ~]# service squid start
Starting squid: .
[root@ktadm ~]# chkconfig squid on
```

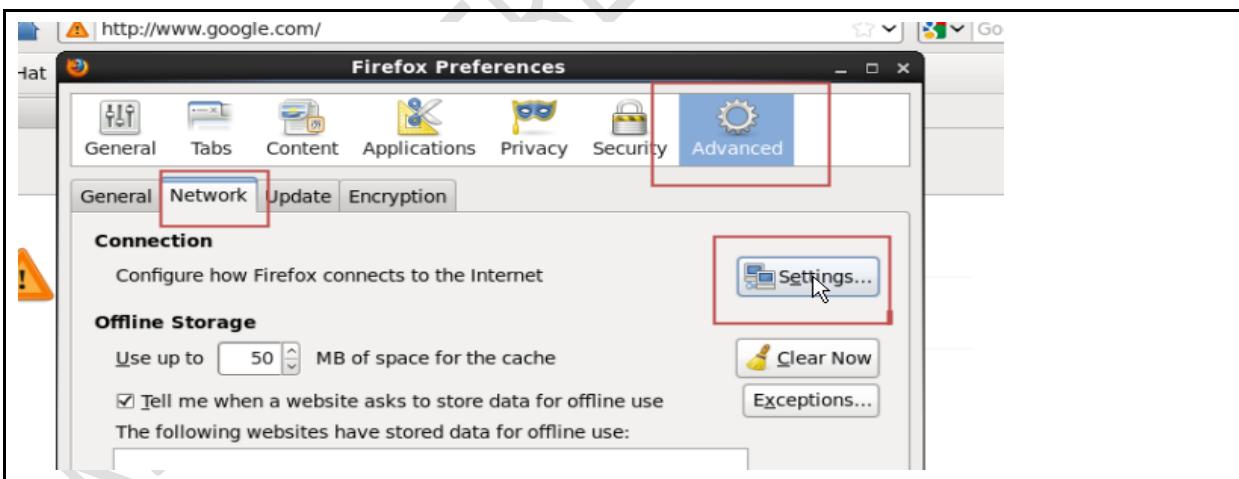
[ OK ]

### Client side configuration for Internet Sharing:

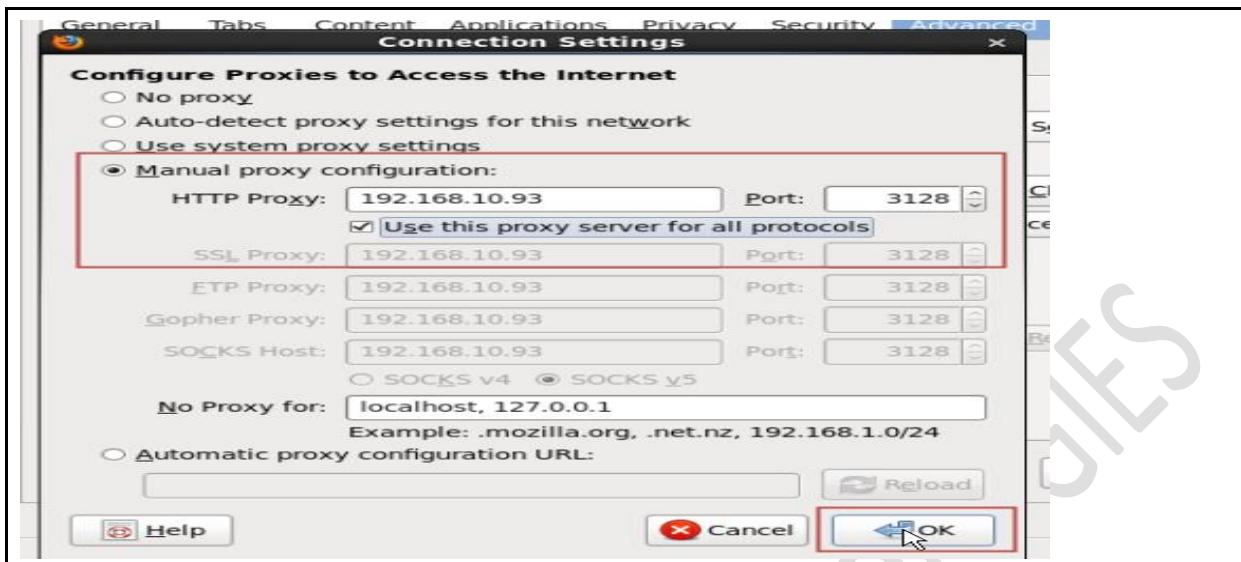
Step1: Open Browser, ex: firefox, go to edit/tool → Preferences



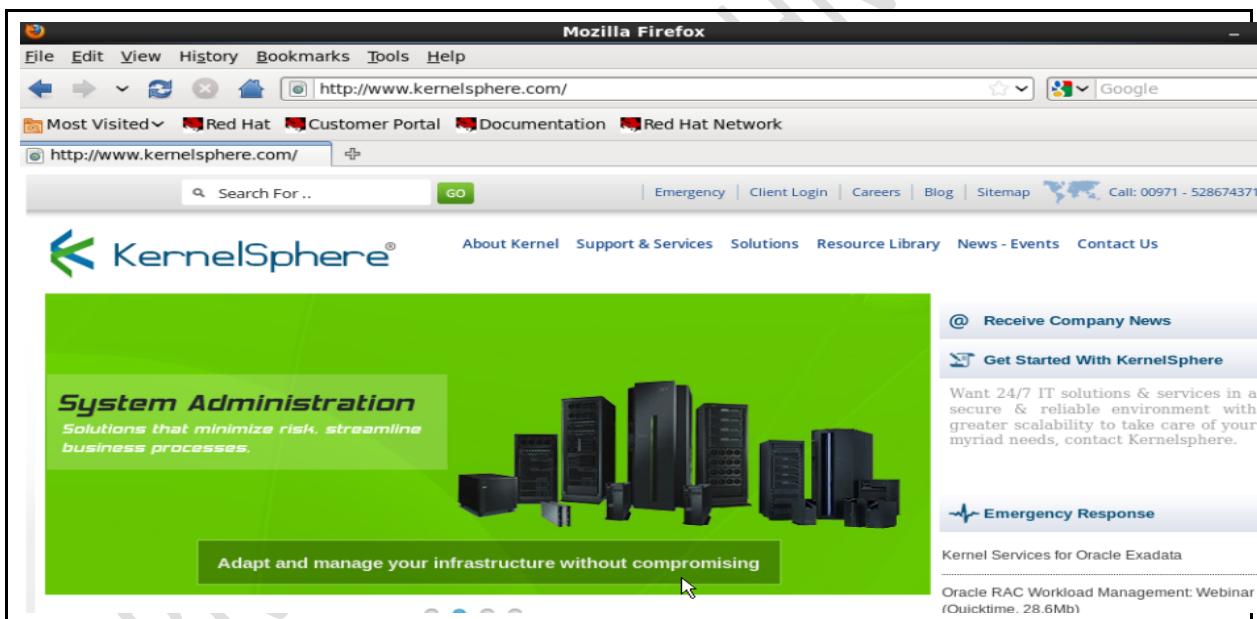
Step2: Go to Advanced → Network and select Settings



Step3: Enter the proxy server ip and port number as shown below



Step 3: Type the website address to see if it connecting



Blocking websites through proxy:-

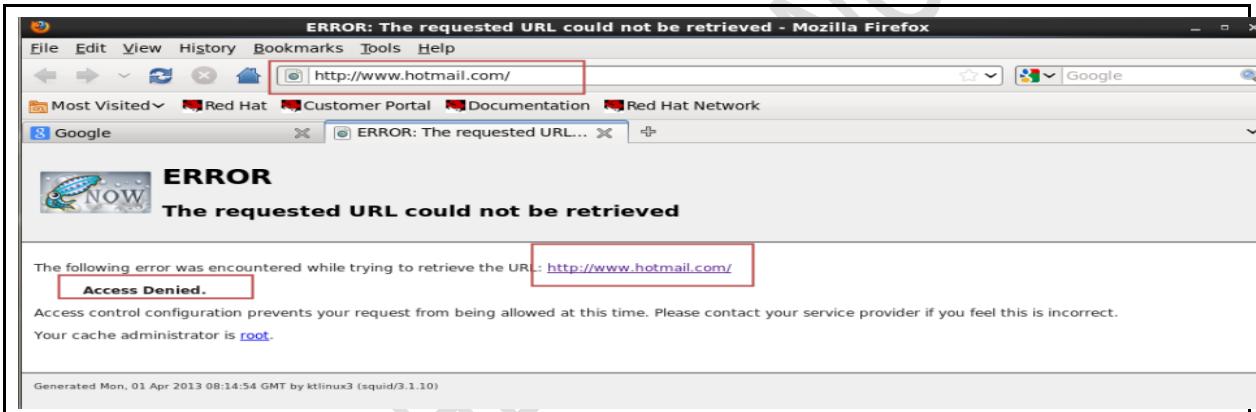
Step1: Go to the configuration file, /etc/squid/squid.conf and add the following parameters.

```
#  
# INSERT YOUR OWN RULE(S) HERE TO ALLOW ACCESS FROM YOUR CLIENTS  
#  
visible_hostname ktlinux3  
acl trm src 192.168.10.0/24  
acl block url regex .hotmail.com  
http_access deny block  
http_access allow trm
```

Step2: restart the services

```
[root@ktlinux2 ~]# service squid restart  
Stopping squid: ..... [ OK ]  
starting squid: ..... [ OK ]
```

Step2: Check with the browser can you access [www.hotmail.com](http://www.hotmail.com) through your browser



Blocking multiple sites using proxy:

Step1: Create a file in /etc/squid with any name and add the phrase of the website, which you want to block

```
[root@hil test]# cat /etc/squid/block  
hotmail  
yahoo  
rediff
```

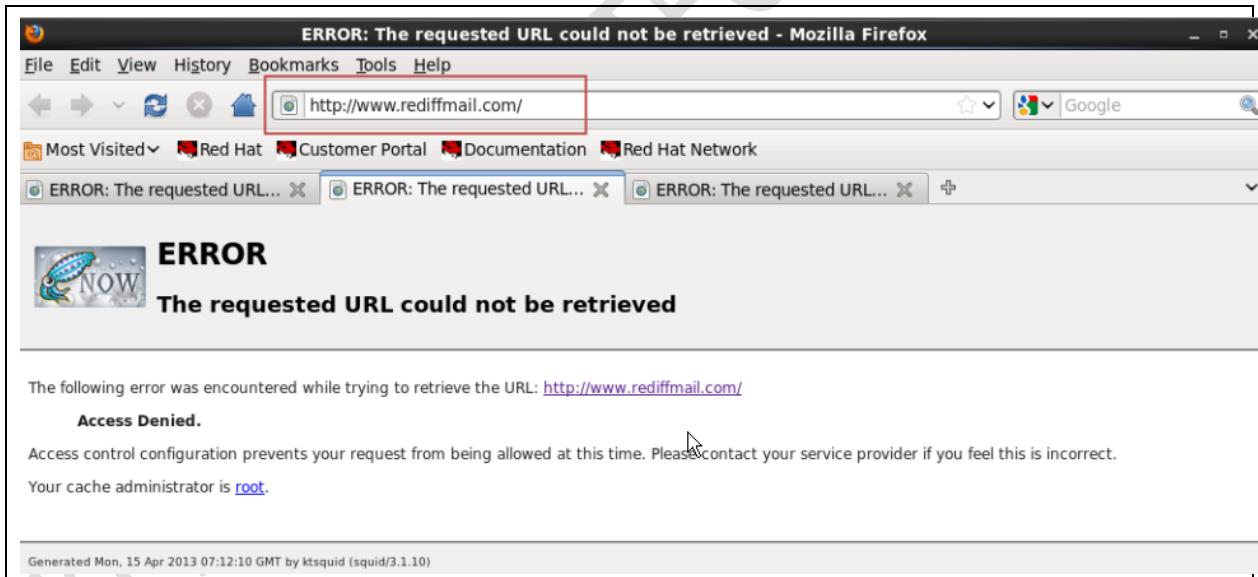
Step2: Add the same file info in configuration file, i.e., /etc/squid/squid.conf

```
#  
# INSERT YOUR OWN RULE(S) HERE TO ALLOW ACCESS FROM YOUR CLIENTS  
#  
visible_hostname ktlinux3  
acl trm src 192.168.10.0/24  
acl block url_regex "/etc/squid/block"  
http_access deny block  
http_access allow trm
```

### Step3: restart the services

```
[root@ktlinux2 ~]# service squid restart  
Stopping squid: ..... [ OK ]  
Starting squid: . [ OK ]
```

### Step4: Go to client browser and check whether the sites are being blocked



### Changing the default port of Proxy:

Step1: By default the port no. for proxy is 3128, which can be changed by making a small change in the configuration file as shown below and change it to 8000.

```
[root@ktlinux2 ~]# vim /etc/squid/squid.conf
```

```
# Squid normally listens to port 3128
http_port 8000
```

Step2: restart the services

```
[root@ktlinux2 ~]# service squid restart
```

```
Stopping squid: .....
```

```
[ OK ]
```

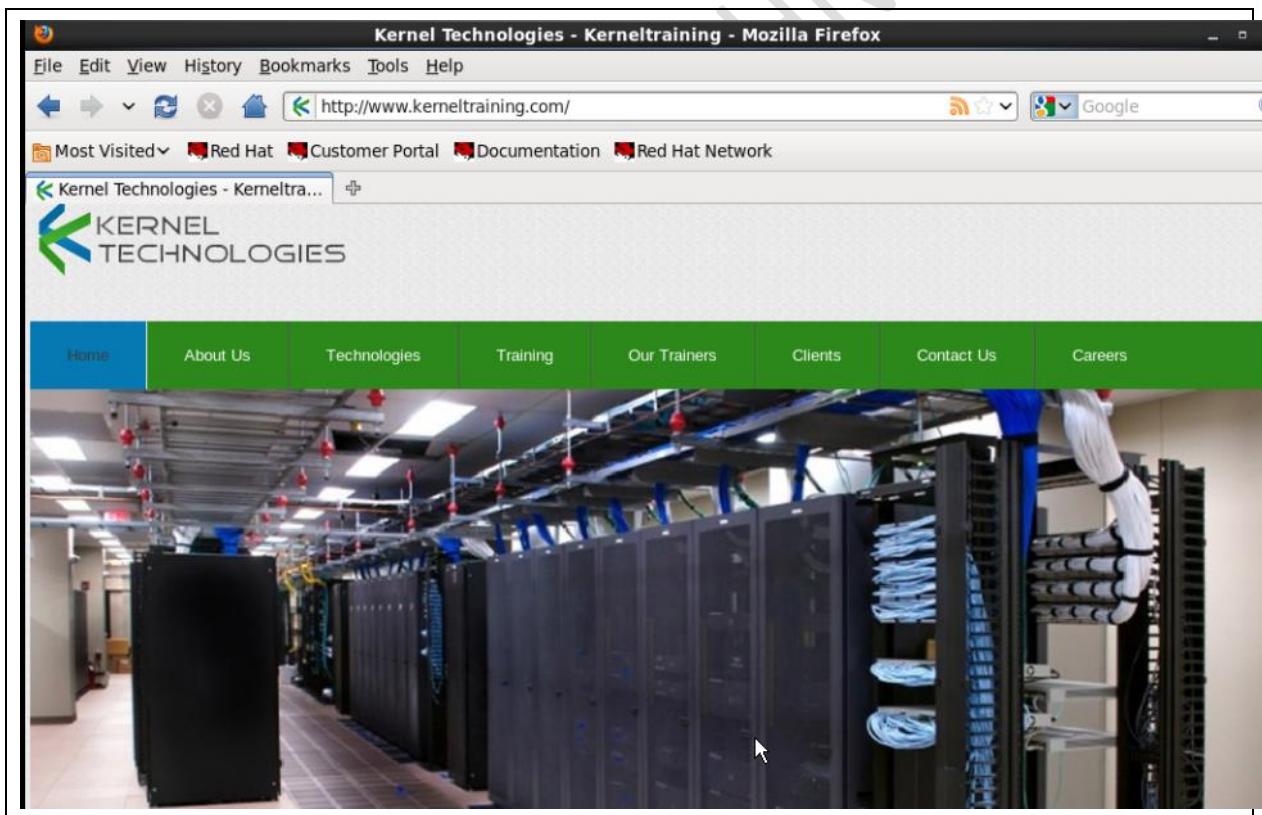
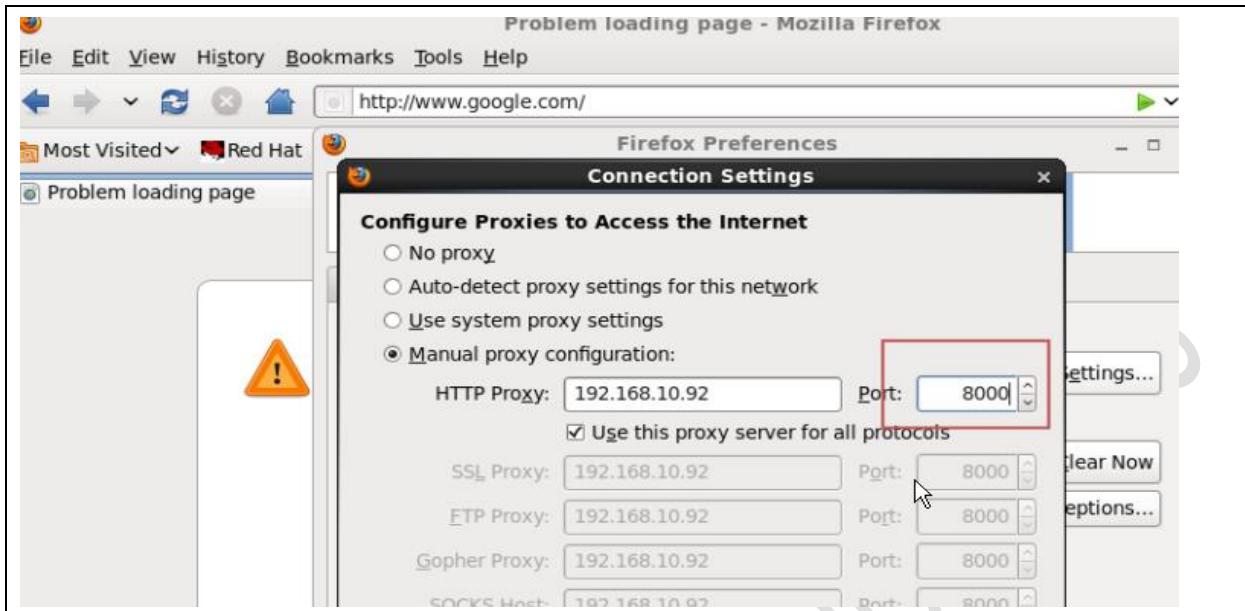
```
Starting squid: .
```

```
[ OK ]
```

Step3: Go to client's browser and check whether with default port, i.e: 3128 , whether it is allowing internet or not.

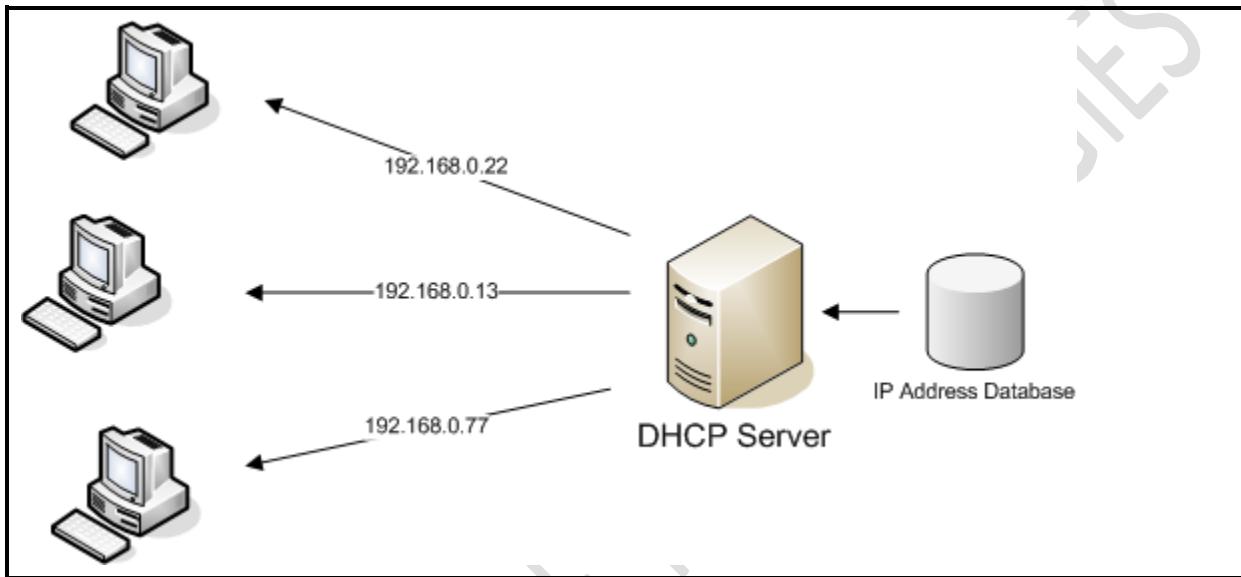


Step 4: change the port to 8000 and check whether internet is allowed or not.



Note: Squid Proxy is only the basic proxy, to learn more on proxy google for the third party tools like; Squidguard, Untangle and Smoothwall. There is lot to do with squid, try doing google and read the /etc/squid/squid.conf for more information.

# DHCP SERVER



What is DHCP?

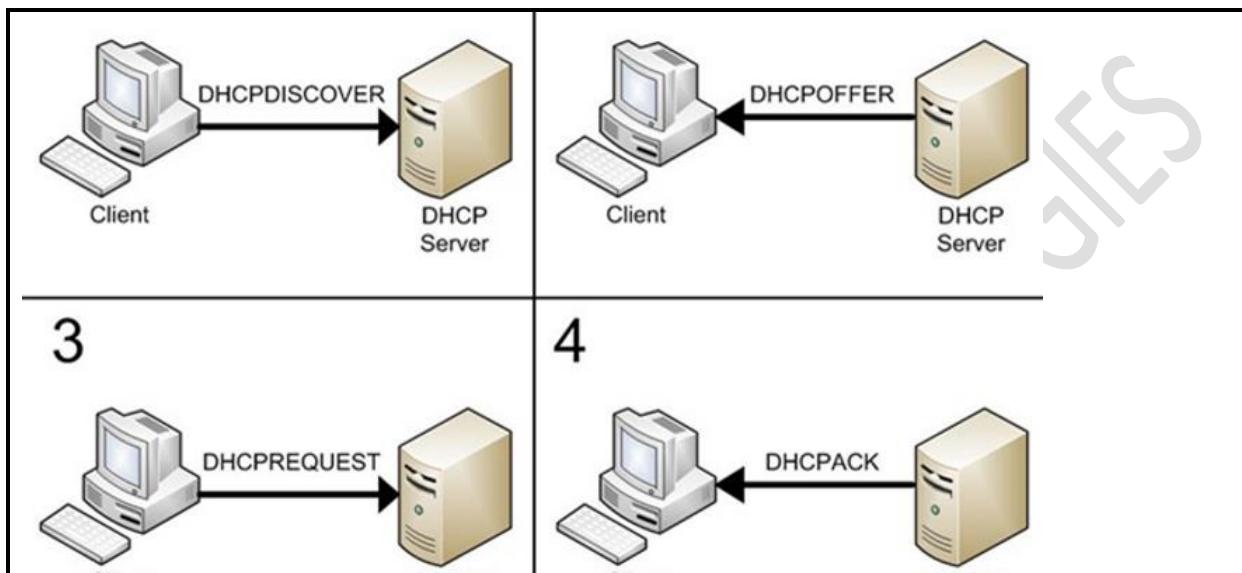
Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP) is a network protocol that enables a server to automatically assign an IP address to a computer from a defined range of numbers (i.e., a scope) configured for a given network.

**DHCP** allows a computer to join an IP-based network without having a pre-configured IP address. DHCP is a protocol that assigns unique IP addresses to devices, then releases and renews these addresses as devices leave and re-join the network.

Internet service providers usually use DHCP to help customers join their networks with minimum setup effort required. Likewise, home network equipment like broadband routers offers DHCP support for added convenience in joining home computers to local area networks (LANs).

How does DHCP works?

The “DORA” process in DHCP



DHCP assigns an IP address when a system is started, for example:

1. A user turns on a computer with a DHCP client.
2. The client computer sends a broadcast request (called a **DISCOVER** or **DHCPDISCOVER**), looking for a DHCP server to answer.
3. The router directs the DISCOVER packet to the correct DHCP server.
4. The server receives the DISCOVER packet. Based on availability and usage policies set on the server, the server determines an appropriate address (if any) to give to the client. The server then temporarily reserves that address for the client and sends back to the client an **OFFER** (or **DHCPOFFER**) packet, with that address information. The server also configures the client's DNS servers, WINS servers, NTP servers, and sometimes other services as well.
5. The client sends a **REQUEST** (or **DHCPREQUEST**) packet, letting the server know that it intends to use the address.
6. The server sends an **ACK** (or **DHCPACK**) packet, confirming that the client has been given a lease on the address for a server-specified period of time.

When a computer uses a static IP address, it means that the computer is manually configured to use a specific IP address. One problem with static assignment, which can result from user error or inattention to detail, occurs when two computers are configured with the same IP address. This creates a conflict that results in loss of service. Using DHCP to dynamically assign IP addresses minimizes these conflicts.

### Profile for DHCP server

Usage : To assign IP's to the computers in the network dynamically.  
Package : Dhcpc  
Configuration file : /etc/dhcp/dhcpd.conf  
Port no : 67  
Daemon : dhcpcd  
Script : /etc/init.d/dhcpcd

### Configuring a DHCP server:

Step1: Check whether the package is installed or not

```
[root@ktcl5 ~]# rpm -q dhcp  
package dhcp is not installed
```

Step2: Install the package using yum,

```
[root@ktcl5 ~]# yum install dhcp* -y  
Loaded plugins: product-id, refresh-packagekit, security, subscription-manager  
Updating certificate-based repositories.  
Setting up Install Process  
Package 12:dhcp-common-4.1.1-25.P1.el6.x86_64 already installed and latest version  
Resolving Dependencies  
--> Running transaction check  
--> Package dhcp.x86_64 12:4.1.1-25.P1.el6 will be installed  
--> Finished Dependency Resolution
```

Step3: Copy the example file for dhcp configuration over dhcp configuration file, i.e.,  
**/etc/dhcp/dhcpd.conf**

```
# cp -p /usr/share/doc/dhcp*/dhcpd.conf.sample /etc/dhcp/dhcpd.conf
```

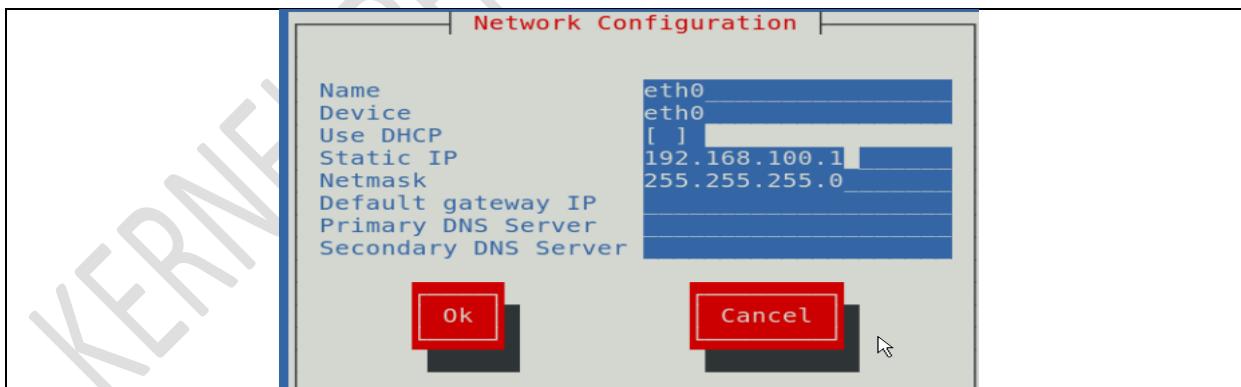
Step4: Open the configuration file and edit it as per the requirement.

```
[root@ktcl5 ~]# vim /etc/dhcp/dhcpd.conf

# dhcpd.conf
#
# Sample configuration file for ISC dhcpcd
#
# A slightly different configuration for an internal subnet.
subnet 192.168.100.0 netmask 255.255.255.0 {
    range 192.168.100.10 192.168.100.50;
    default-lease-time 600;
    max-lease-time 7200;
}
```

- Subnet : The subnet of the network
- Netmask : The netmask of the network
- Range : The range of IP address to be assigned to the clients, in short “Scope”
- Default-lease-time : The minimum lease time of the ip assigned to the clients
- Max-lease-time : The maximum lease time of the IP assigned to the clients

Step4: Assign the static IP on the DHCP server by using *setup* command



Step5: Restart the network services and check the ip address

```
[root@ktcl5 ~]# service network restart
Shutting down interface eth0: Device state: 3 (disconnected) [ OK ]
Shutting down loopback interface: [ OK ]
Bringing up loopback interface: [ OK ]
Bringing up interface eth0: Active connection state: activated
Active connection path: /org/freedesktop/NetworkManager/ActiveConnection/1 [ OK ]

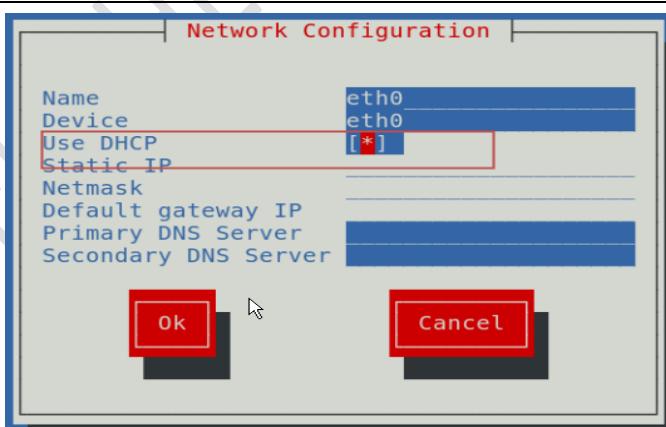
[root@ktcl5 ~]# ifconfig eth0
eth0      Link encap:Ethernet HWaddr 52:54:00:66:99:EF
          inet addr:192.168.100.1 Bcast:192.168.100.255 Mask:255.255.255.0
          inet6 addr: fe80::5054:ff:fe66:99ef/64 Scope:Link
          UP BROADCAST RUNNING MULTICAST MTU:1500 Metric:1
          RX packets:36 errors:0 dropped:0 overruns:0 frame:0
          TX packets:56 errors:0 dropped:0 overruns:0 carrier:0
          collisions:0 txqueuelen:1000
          RX bytes:2124 (2.0 KiB) TX bytes:8636 (8.4 KiB)
          Interrupt:11
```

#### Step6: Start/Restart the dhcp services

```
[root@ktcl5 ~]# service dhcpcd restart
Shutting down dhcpcd: [ OK ]
Starting dhcpcd: [ OK ]
```

#### Client side configuration for DHCP:

##### Step1: Make the dhcp option enabled in network configuration using #setup command.



##### Step2: Restart the network services and check the IP address is in dhcp scope.

```
[root@ktcl6 Desktop]# setup
[root@ktcl6 Desktop]# service network restart
Shutting down interface eth0: Device state: 3 (disconnected) [ OK ]
Shutting down loopback interface: [ OK ]
Bringing up loopback interface: [ OK ]
```

Step3: Check the IP address using #ifconfig command

```
[root@ktcl6 Desktop]# ifconfig eth0
eth0      Link encap:Ethernet HWaddr 52:54:00:5A:40:95
          inet addr:192.168.100.10 Bcast:192.168.100.255 Mask:255
                     inet6 addr: fe80::5054:ff:fe5a:4095/64 Scope:Link
                           UP BROADCAST RUNNING MULTICAST MTU:1500 Metric:1
                           RX packets:141 errors:0 dropped:0 overruns:0 frame:0
                           TX packets:19 errors:0 dropped:0 overruns:0 carrier:0
                           collisions:0 txqueuelen:1000
                           RX bytes:8914 (8.7 KiB) TX bytes:1730 (1.6 KiB)
                           Interrupt:11 Base address:0x4000
```

Make the same changes in all the clients to get the dynamic IP.

# MAIL SERVER

Electronic mail is one of the best way to communicate for computer users anywhere in the world. If i wanted to write an email message to my friend who is sitting somewhere in the world, i simply open up my outlook-click on compose-type my friends email address in the to box-mention the subject-draft the message-attach files (if needed)-click on send.That's it. This is what i do to send an email to my friends.Not only me, all the computer users will do the exact same thing.But for most of the time i didn't know how the mail flow takes place.How the transfer takes place and how will it reach the recipient and the intermediate process and so on....

There are a few new keywords we need to look into.....

## 1. Mail User Agent

Mail User Agent. MUA is the email client which we use to create-draft-send emails. Generally Microsoft Outlook, Thunderbird,Kmail and so on..... are examples of MUA's

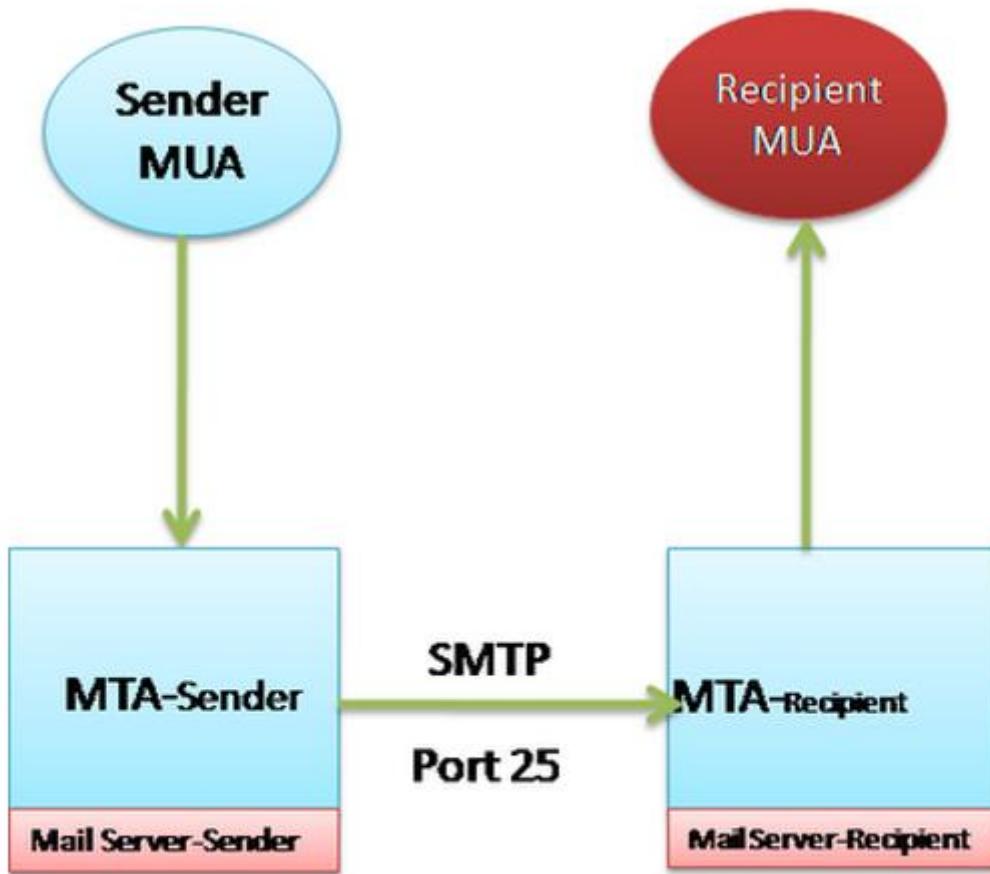
## 2. Mail Transfer Agent

Mail Transfer Agent. Message.Mail transfers between sender(s) and recipient(s) will take place between the MTA's. Exchange, Qmail, Sendmail, PostFix and so on.... are example of MTA's

## 3. SMTP

Simple Mail Transfer Protocol will transfer the mails between the MTA's

Lets take a deeper look into this with a small example. The below picture will depict how mail flow takes place between sender and recipient



From the above picture, when the sender clicks on Send in his MUA, the mail will be transferred to the MTA of the sender which exists in the Mail server of the Sender. The MTA of the sender will check for the recipients address (MX records-Mail Exchange Records) and if it finds the recipients address then the mail will be flowed from Senders MTA to Recipient MTA using the SMTP Via TCP Port 25. Once the Recipients MTA receives the email, it will be transferred to MUA of recipient. Once the Recipient Clicks on the Send/Receive button then the email will be once click away from him residing in his inbox.

In addition to the above processes there is another agent called as MDA-Mail delivery agent. MDA will receive the email from the MTA and will deliver it to the recipients MUA.

Lab work:

```
[root@blog1 ~]# hostname  
blog1.kernelclass4.com
```

```
[root@blog1 ~]# yum install postfix dovecot -y
```

#### SEARCH THE PARAMETERS AND EDIT THE FILE AS SHOWN:

```
[root@blog1 ~]# vim /etc/postfix/main.cf  
myhostname = blog1.kernelclass4.com  
mydomain = kernelclass4.com  
myorigin = $mydomain  
inet_interfaces = $myhostname, localhost  
mydestination = $myhostname, localhost.$mydomain, localhost, $mydomain  
home_mailbox = Maildir/  
  
wq!
```

#### SEARCH THE PARAMETERS AND EDIT THE FILE AS SHOWN:

```
#vim /etc/dovecot/dovecot.conf  
# Protocols we want to be serving.  
protocols = imap pop3 lmtp  
  
wq!
```

```
[root@blog1 ~]# service postfix start  
Starting postfix:  
[root@blog1 ~]# service dovecot start  
Starting dovecot:  
[OK]
```

```
[root@blog1 ~]# chkconfig postfix on  
[root@blog1 ~]# chkconfig dovecot on
```

```
[root@blog1 ~]# tail /etc/passwd
postfix:x:89:89::/var/spool/postfix:/sbin/nologin
mysql:x:27:27:MySQL Server:/var/lib/mysql:/bin/bash
pulse:x:497:495:PulseAudio System Daemon:/var/run/pulse:/sbin/nologin
sshd:x:74:74:Privilege-separated SSH:/var/empty/sshd:/sbin/nologin
tcpdump:x:72:72::/sbin/nologin
ktstudent:x:500:500::/home/ktstudent:/bin/bash
named:x:25:25:Named:/var/named:/sbin/nologin
dovecot:x:97:97:Dovecot IMAP server:/usr/libexec/dovecot:/sbin/nologin
dovenull:x:496:492:Dovecot's unauthorized user:/usr/libexec/dovecot:/sbin/nologin
squid:x:23:23::/var/spool/squid:/sbin/nologin
[root@blog1 ~]# mail -s testmail ktstudent
HI! this is test mail
EOT
[root@blog1 ~]# su - ktstudent
[ktstudent@blog1 ~]$ ls
Maildir
[ktstudent@blog1 ~]$ cd Maildir/
[ktstudent@blog1 Maildir]$ ls
cur new tmp
[ktstudent@blog1 Maildir]$ cd new
[ktstudent@blog1 new]$ cat 1391492166.V802Ia3c8aM423716.blog1.kernelclass4.com
Return-Path: <root@kernelclass4.com>
X-Original-To: ktstudent
Delivered-To: ktstudent@kernelclass4.com
Received: by blog1.kernelclass4.com (Postfix, from userid 0)
id 4DC458487B; Tue, 4 Feb 2014 11:06:06 +0530 (IST)
Date: Tue, 04 Feb 2014 11:06:06 +0530
To: ktstudent@kernelclass4.com
Subject: testmail
User-Agent: Heirloom mailx 12.4 7/29/08
MIME-Version: 1.0
Content-Type: text/plain; charset=us-ascii
Content-Transfer-Encoding: 7bit
Message-Id: <20140204053606.4DC458487B@blog1.kernelclass4.com>
From: root@kernelclass4.com (root)

Hi this is test mail
[ktstudent@blog1 new]$ mail -s re: test mail root
Reverived the mail    test mail. Thank you!
EOT
[ktstudent@blog1 new]$ mail -s re:testmail root
Received the test mail...
Thank you!
EOT
```

```
[ktstudent@blog1 new]$ exit
logout
[root@blog1 ~]#
[root@blog1 ~]# cd Maildir/new
[root@blog1 new]# cat 1391492254.V802I101015M531066.blog1.kernelclass4.com
Return-Path: <ktstudent@kernelclass4.com>
X-Original-To: root
Delivered-To: root@kernelclass4.com
Received: by blog1.kernelclass4.com (Postfix, from userid 500)
id 773448487B; Tue, 4 Feb 2014 11:07:34 +0530 (IST)
Date: Tue, 04 Feb 2014 11:07:34 +0530
To: root@kernelclass4.com
Subject: re:testmail
User-Agent: Heirloom mailx 12.4 7/29/08
MIME-Version: 1.0
Content-Type: text/plain; charset=us-ascii
Content-Transfer-Encoding: 7bit
Message-Id: <20140204053734.773448487B@blog1.kernelclass4.com>
From: ktstudent@kernelclass4.com

Received the test mail...
Thank you!
```

That is all with the Mail Server, keep practicing...

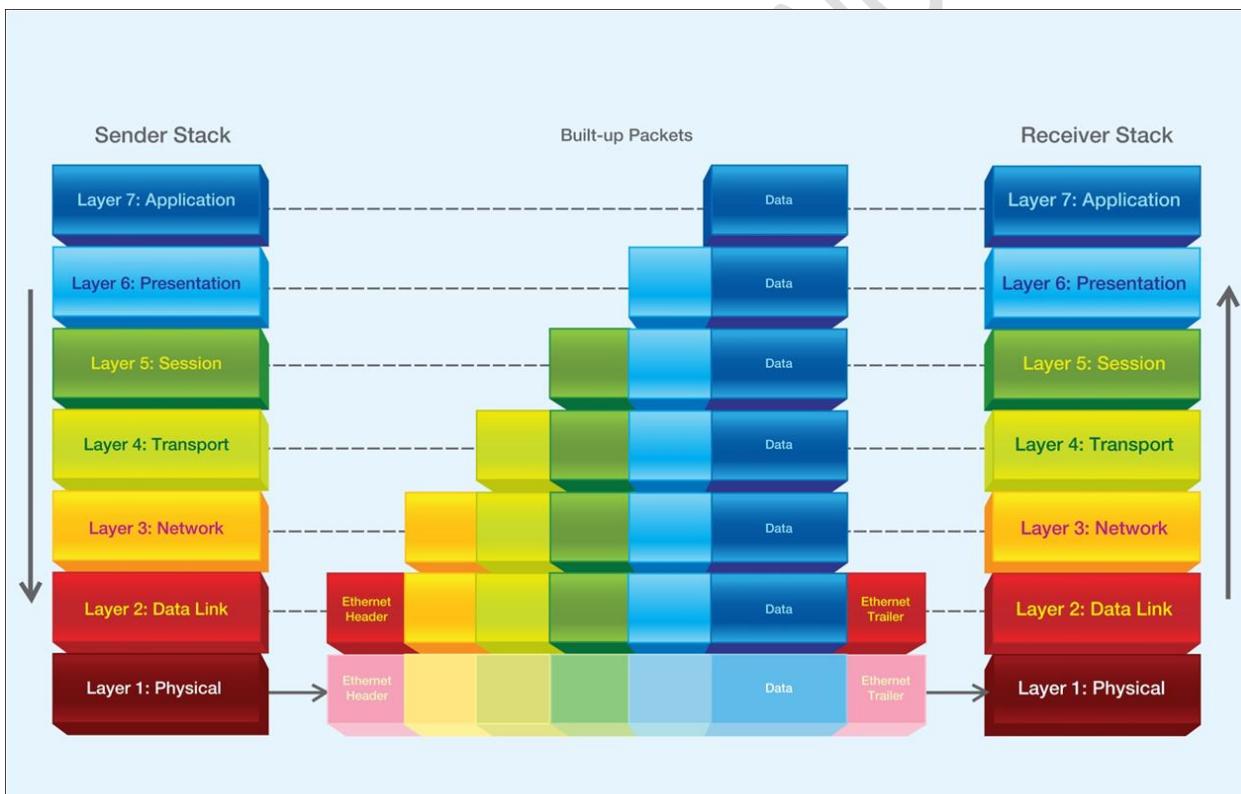
# CONFIGURING FIREWALL THROUGH IPTABLES

iptables is the userspace command line program used to configure the Linux 2.4.x and later packet filtering ruleset. It is targeted towards system administrators.

Since Network Address Translation is also configured from the packet filter ruleset, iptables is used for this, too.

The iptables package also includes ip6tables. ip6tables is used for configuring the IPv6 packet filter.

Iptables typically manipulates layer 3 (Routing – ipv4/ipv6 – source and/or destination filtering) and layer 4 (Transport – TCP | UDP – source and/or destination port filtering) of the OSI model



## DEPENDENCIES

iptables requires a kernel that features the ip\_tables packet filter. This includes all 2.4.x and later kernel releases.

## MAIN FEATURES

- listing the contents of the packet filter ruleset

- adding/removing/modifying rules in the packet filter ruleset
- listing/zeroing per-rule counters of the packet filter ruleset

## THE PACKAGE

- The package for iptables is installed by default, let's query it

```
[root@ktlinux1 ~]# rpm -qa | grep -i iptables
iptables-ipv6-1.4.7-9.el6.x86_64
iptables-1.4.7-9.el6.x86_64
```

## THE BASE RULESET

List of the Current rules

```
[root@linux2 ~]# iptables --list
Chain INPUT (policy ACCEPT)
target     prot opt source          destination
Chain FORWARD (policy ACCEPT)
target     prot opt source          destination
Chain OUTPUT (policy ACCEPT)
target     prot opt source          destination
```

In a default install there are three predefined Chains that will take care of the three major activities:

1. Incoming Traffic,
2. Forwarded Traffic and
3. Outgoing Traffic.

The "policy" is probably the most important thing to take away from the above table. The policy is the default ruleset for that particular Chain, with a standard install all policies will be "Accept".

## POLICIES

The three common policies are:

1. Accept - This is used to explicitly pass through as long as no target rules apply.
2. Reject - This is used to send back an error packet in response to the matched packet: otherwise it is equivalent to DROP so it is a terminating TARGET, ending rule traversal.
3. Drop - This policy will halt a connection to a host without any communication unless there is a target rule that applies.

## AVAILABLE OPTIONS

The options that are recognized by iptables can be divided into several different groups:

1. Commands - These options specify a specific action to perform.
2. Parameters - Parameters set rule specifications for the commands used.
3. Other Options - Other options can be specified, as necessary, for commands used.

## SIMPLE FIREWALL

*Allow connections that are already connected to your server*

```
[root@linux2 ~]# iptables -A INPUT -i eth0 -m state --state ESTABLISHED,RELATED -j ACCEPT
```

Appen      Network      Match      Jump

```
[root@linux2 ~]# iptables --list
Chain INPUT (policy ACCEPT)
target     prot opt source          destination
ACCEPT    all  --  anywhere        anywhere         state RELATED,ESTABLISHED

Chain FORWARD (policy ACCEPT)
target     prot opt source          destination

Chain OUTPUT (policy ACCEPT)
target     prot opt source          destination
```

## ALLOW CONNECTIONS TO SSH

In this case we can make a few different choices, the choices can be applied to other ports or situations to make customizations.

In this command, we will allow connections for all TCP connections attempts at SSH connections.

```
[root@linux2 ~]# iptables -I INPUT 1 -p tcp --dport 22 -j ACCEPT
```

```
[root@linux2 ~]# iptables --list
Chain INPUT (policy ACCEPT)
target     prot opt source          destination
ACCEPT    tcp  --  anywhere        anywhere         tcp dpt:ssh
ACCEPT    all  --  anywhere        anywhere         state RELATED,ESTABLISHED

Chain FORWARD (policy ACCEPT)
target     prot opt source          destination

Chain OUTPUT (policy ACCEPT)
target     prot opt source          destination
```

In this command, we will allow connections only coming from a certain IP subnet using CIDR notation. In this example we are going to lockdown to any IP address lying in the range of 192.168.10.0 - 192.168.10.255

```
[root@linux2 ~]# iptables -I INPUT 1 -p tcp --dport 22 -s 192.168.10.0/24 -j ACCEPT
```

source

```
[root@linux2 ~]# iptables --list
Chain INPUT (policy ACCEPT)
target     prot opt source               destination
ACCEPT    tcp  --  192.168.10.0/24      anywhere             anywhere             state RELATED,ESTABLISHED
ACCEPT    tcp  --  anywhere            anywhere             state RELATED,ESTABLISHED
ACCEPT    all   --  anywhere            anywhere
Chain FORWARD (policy ACCEPT)
target     prot opt source               destination
Chain OUTPUT (policy ACCEPT)
target     prot opt source               destination
```

## ALLOWING CONNECTIONS TO HTTP/HTTPS

The following iptables rules will allow connections from both port 80 (HTTP) and port 443 (HTTPS) from any connections.

```
[root@linux2 ~]# iptables -I INPUT 1 -p tcp --dport 80 -j ACCEPT
[root@linux2 ~]# iptables -I INPUT 1 -p tcp --dport 443 -j ACCEPT
```

## CHANGING THE DEFAULT POLICY

The only real policy change that we are going to make is going to effect incoming traffic, as a general rule we are going to **Drop** all connections, and only allow those we have deemed legit.

```
[root@linux2 ~]# iptables -P INPUT DROP
[root@linux2 ~]# iptables --list
Chain INPUT (policy DROP)
target     prot opt source               destination
ACCEPT    tcp  --  anywhere            anywhere             state RELATED,ESTABLISHED
ACCEPT    tcp  --  anywhere            anywhere             state RELATED,ESTABLISHED
ACCEPT    tcp  --  192.168.10.0/24      anywhere             state RELATED,ESTABLISHED
ACCEPT    tcp  --  anywhere            anywhere             state RELATED,ESTABLISHED
ACCEPT    all   --  anywhere            anywhere
Chain FORWARD (policy ACCEPT)
target     prot opt source               destination
Chain OUTPUT (policy ACCEPT)
target     prot opt source               destination
```

This rule should be run only after you have setup your access rules to allow you to ssh in.

## SAVE YOUR RULESET

If your server reboots for any reason or you restart IPTables you will lose your changes. The rules that you input by hand are stored in volatile memory. Make sure that you save IPtables rules for any change you want to make permanent:

```
[root@linux2 ~]# /etc/init.d/iptables save
iptables: Saving firewall rules to /etc/sysconfig/iptables:[  OK  ]
```

# KICKSTART AND NETWORK INSTALLATIONS OF RHEL6

- Many system administrators would prefer to use an automated installation method to install Red Hat Enterprise Linux on their machines. To answer this need, Red Hat created the kickstart installation method. Using kickstart, a system administrator can create a single file containing the answers to all the questions that would normally be asked during a typical installation.
- Kickstart files can be kept on a single server system and read by individual computers during the installation. This installation method can support the use of a single kickstart file to install Red Hat Enterprise Linux on multiple machines, making it ideal for network and system administrators.
- Kickstart installations can be performed using a local CD-ROM, a local hard drive, or via NFS, FTP, or HTTP
- To use kickstart, you must:
  1. Create a kickstart file.
  2. Create a boot media with the kickstart file or make the kickstart file available on the network.
  3. Make the installation tree available.
  4. Start the kickstart installation.

Let's configure the kickstart installation by following above steps:

1. Create a kickstart file

*Kickstart* configuration files can be built by hand or using the GUI `system-config-kickstart` tool. Additionally the standard Red Hat installation program `Anaconda` will produce a *kickstart* configuration file at the end of any manual installation process. This file can then be taken and either used to automatically reproduce the same installation or edited (either manually or with `system-config-kickstart`).

To create a kickstart file using GUI, first install the package “`system-config-kickstart`”

Check and install package for kickstart

**#rpm -q system-config-kickstart**

```
[root@localhost Desktop]# rpm -q system-config-kickstart  
package system-config-kickstart is not installed
```

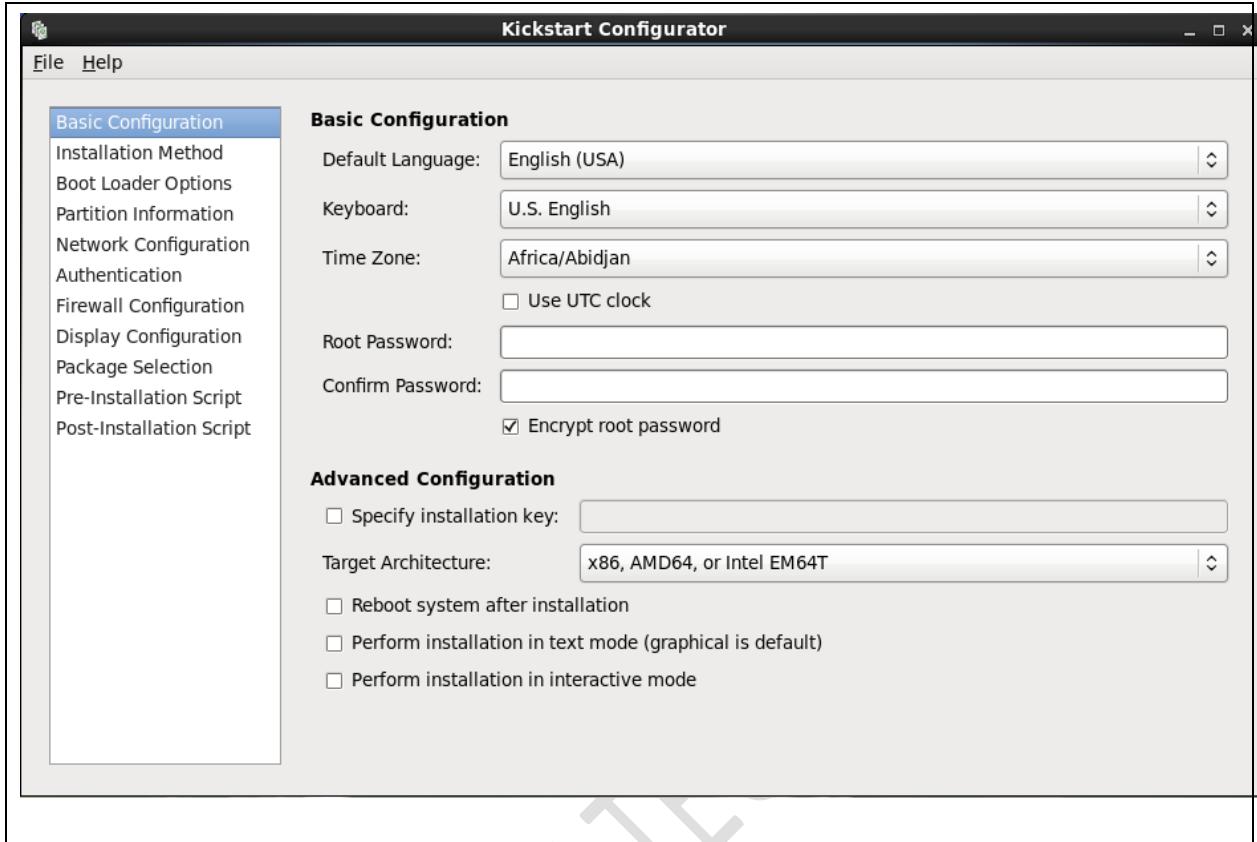
- Install the package using yum or rpm command

**#yum install system-config-kickstart**

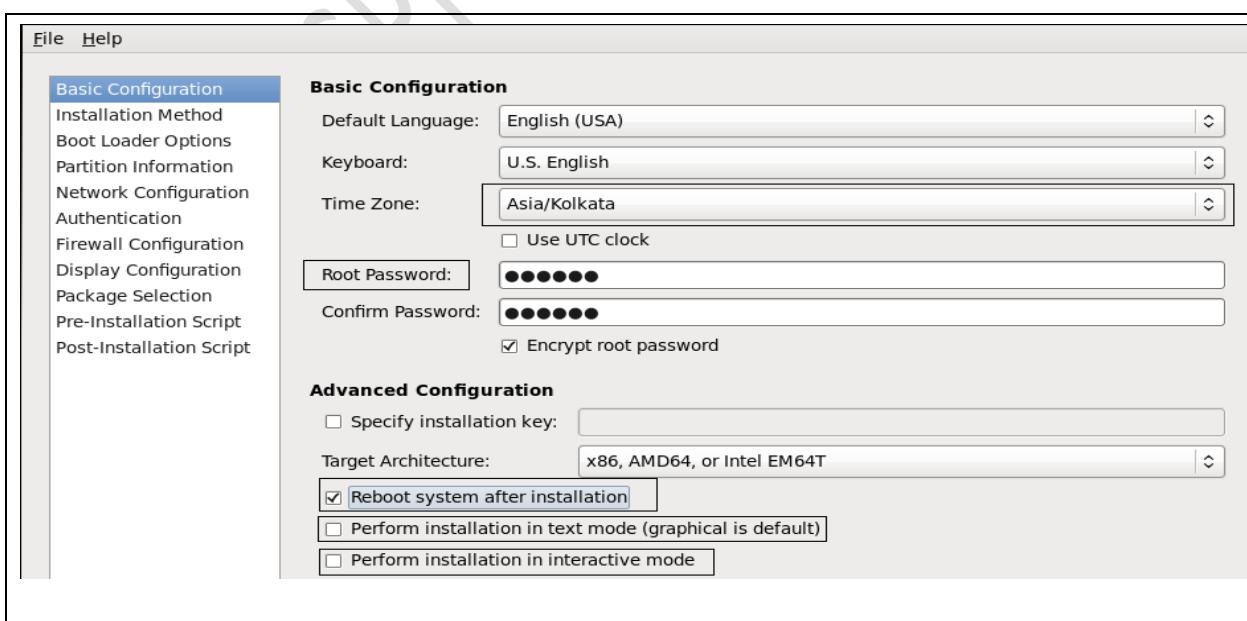
```
[root@ktcl2 ~]# yum install system-config-kickstart -y  
Loaded plugins: refresh-packagekit, rhnplugin  
This system is not registered with RHN.  
RHN support will be disabled.  
KTREPO  
Setting up Install Process | 3.7 kB     00:00  
^@Resolving Dependencies  
--> Running transaction check  
---> Package system-config-kickstart.noarch 0:2.8.6.2-1.el6 set to be updated  
---> Processing Dependency: pykickstart >= 0.96 for package: system-config-kickst
```

- Once it is installed use “*system-config-kickstart*” command to create a kickstart file.

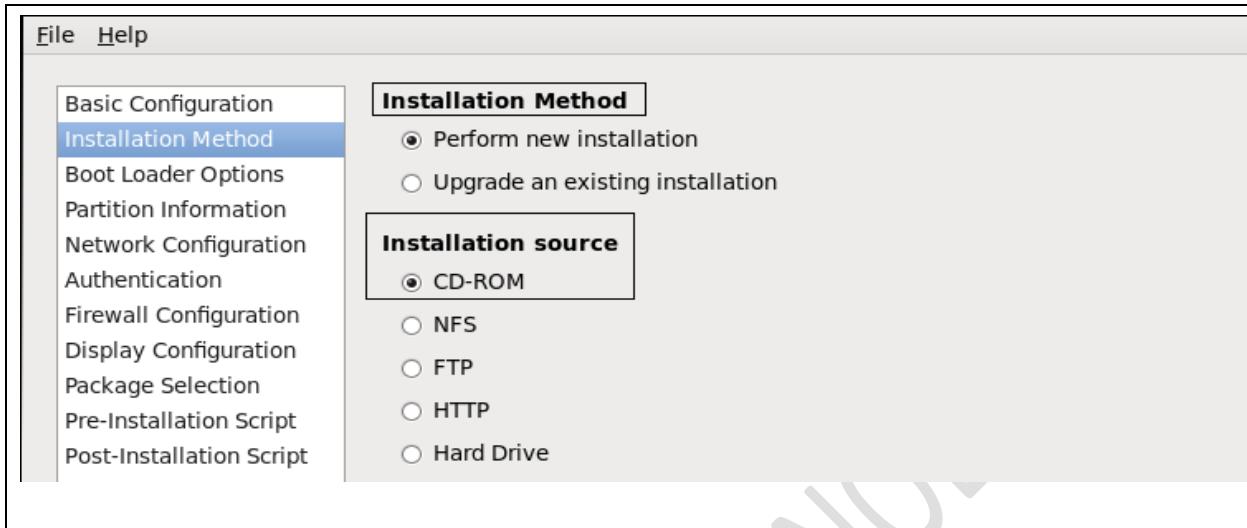
**#system-config-kickstart**



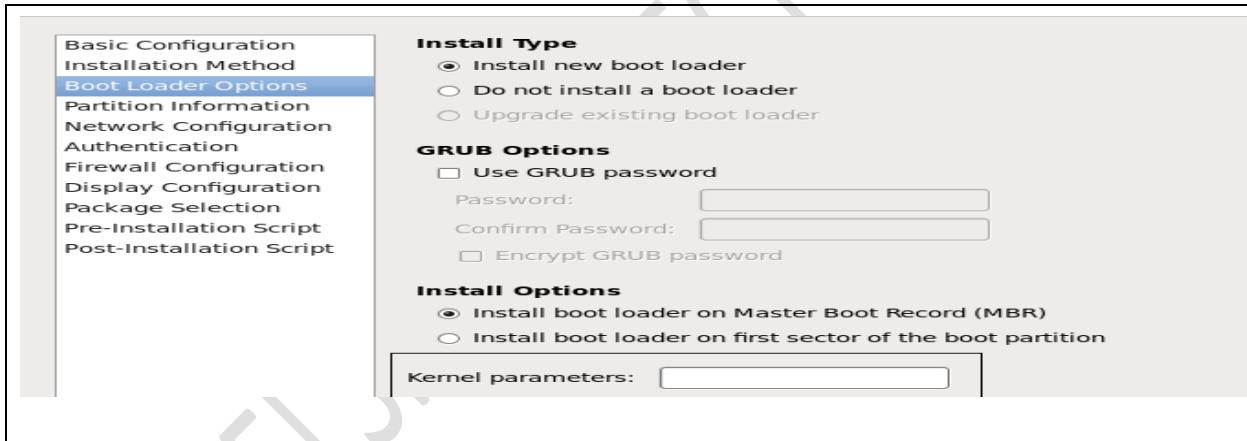
- Let's see each option of kickstart file and create a new kickstart file.
- The first option in kickstart is basic configuration, Select the options required as below
- Select the language, keyboard layout, Time Zone, assign root password, etc



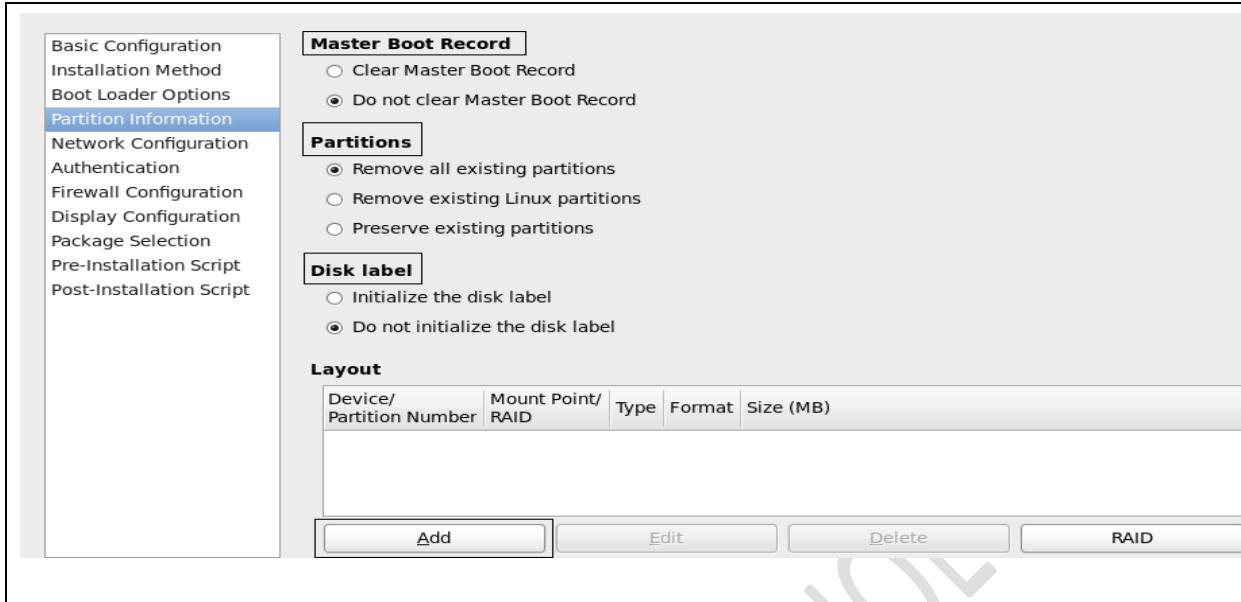
- The second tab is installation Method. For normal installation select CD-ROM



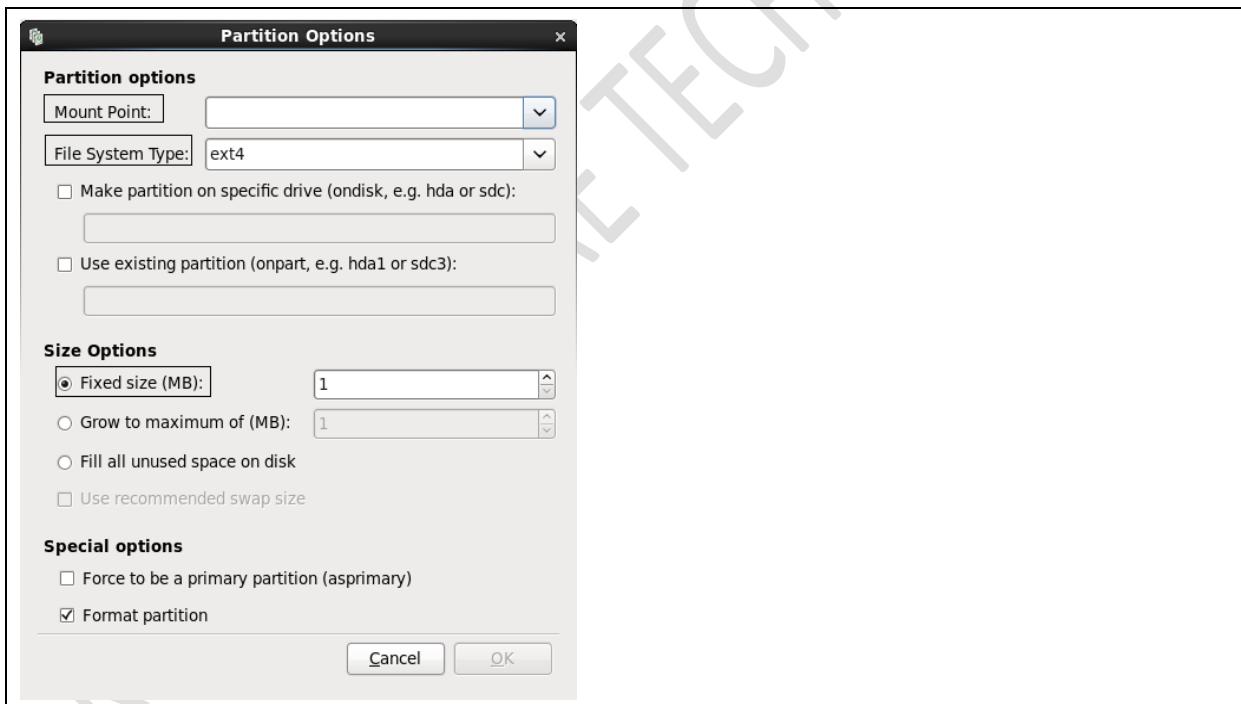
- The next tab is of Boot Loader Options



- The next tab is an important tab called "*Partition Information*"



- To create partitions layout, click on Add button and follow the screens below



- Select the mount points like /, /boot, /opt etc and create some partitions as usual
- The layout after the creation of partition will be as follows

Device/ Partition Number	Mount Point/ RAID	Type	Format	Size (MB)
▽ Hard Drives				
▽ Auto				
/	ext4	Yes	25000	
/boot	ext4	Yes	200	
swap	swap	Yes	2048	

Add Edit Delete RAID

- The next tab is about “Network Configuration”

**Network Configuration**

Device | Network Type

Add Network Device    Edit Network Device    Delete Network Device

Network Device Information

Network Device: eth0

Network Type:  DHCP  Static IP  BOOTP

IP Address:

Netmask:

Gateway:

Name Server:

Cancel OK

- Click on “Add Network Device” and add an NIC adapter as “eth0”.
- Select any of Network Type from list, but if selected Static IP, then you need to specify the IP address, net mask and other attributes to it.
- The subsequent tab is “Authentication” where you can select the security type you want

**Authentication Configuration**

Use Shadow Passwords MD5

Enable Fingerprint Reader

NIS LDAP Kerberos 5 Hesiod SMB Name Switch Cache

**NIS Authentication**

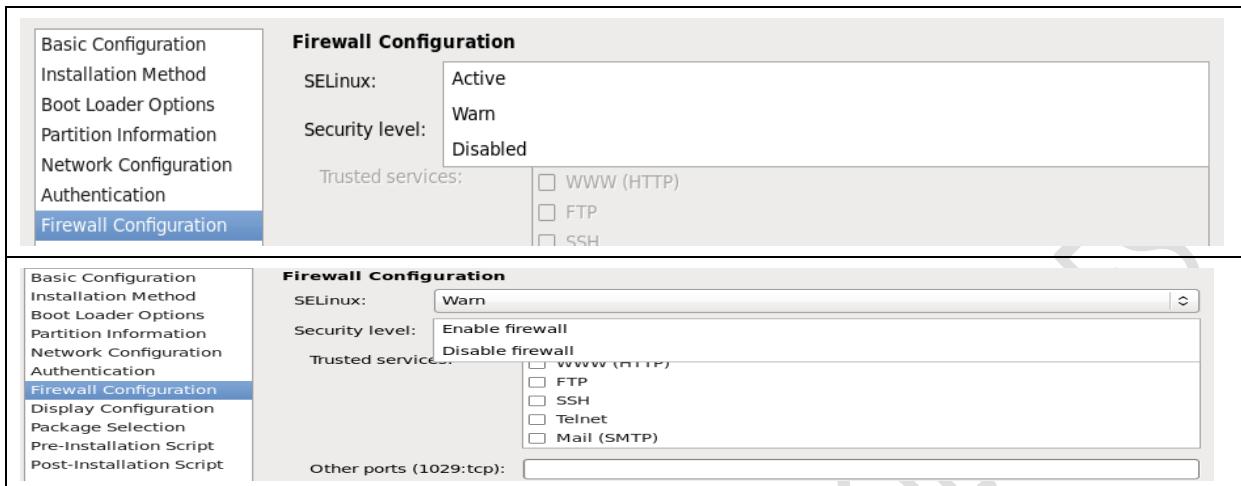
Enable NIS

NIS Domain:

Use broadcast to find NIS server

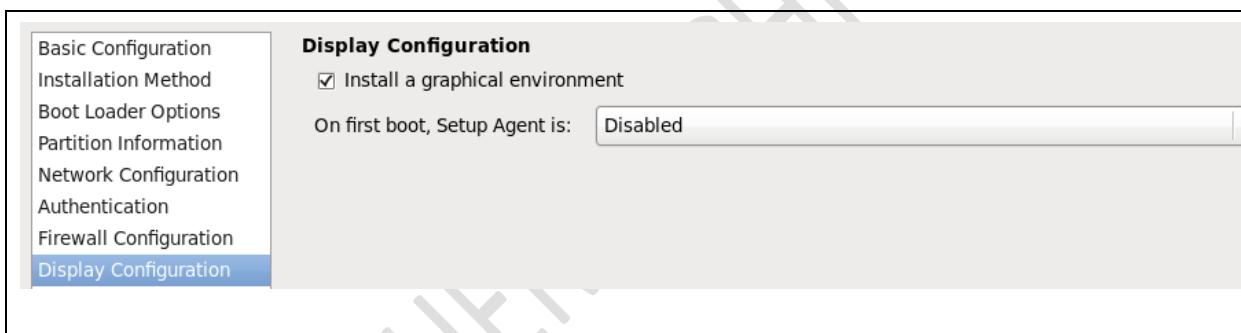
NIS Server:

- After “*Authentication*” the next tab is “*Firewall Configuration*”, where we can configure some firewall settings and SELinux settings.

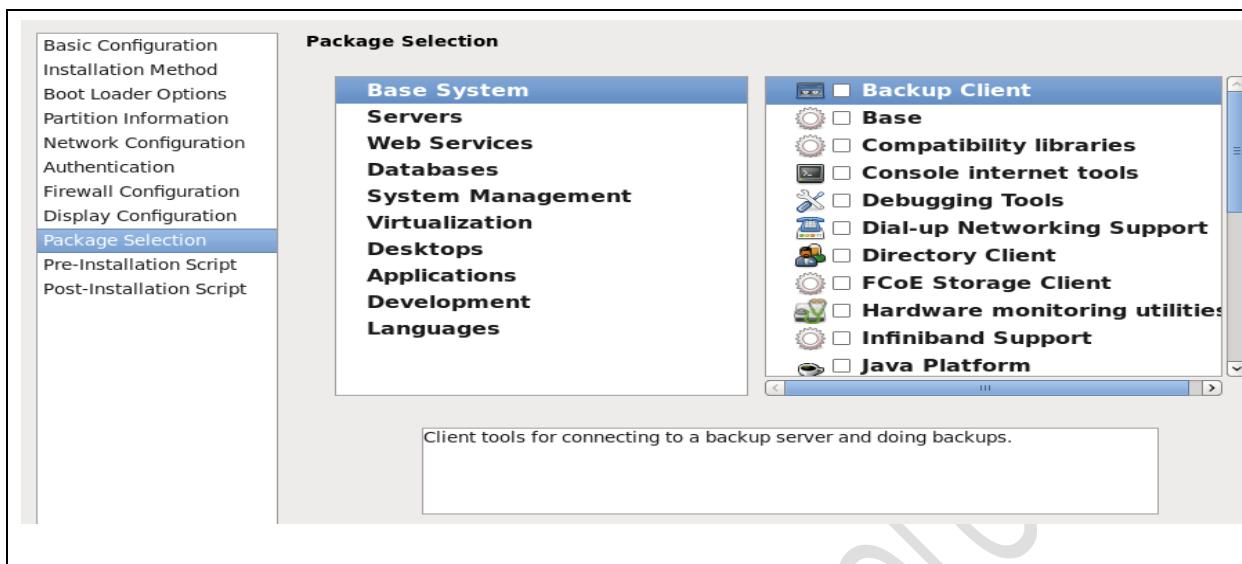


Note: If Firewall is enabled assign some services which are allowed in it.

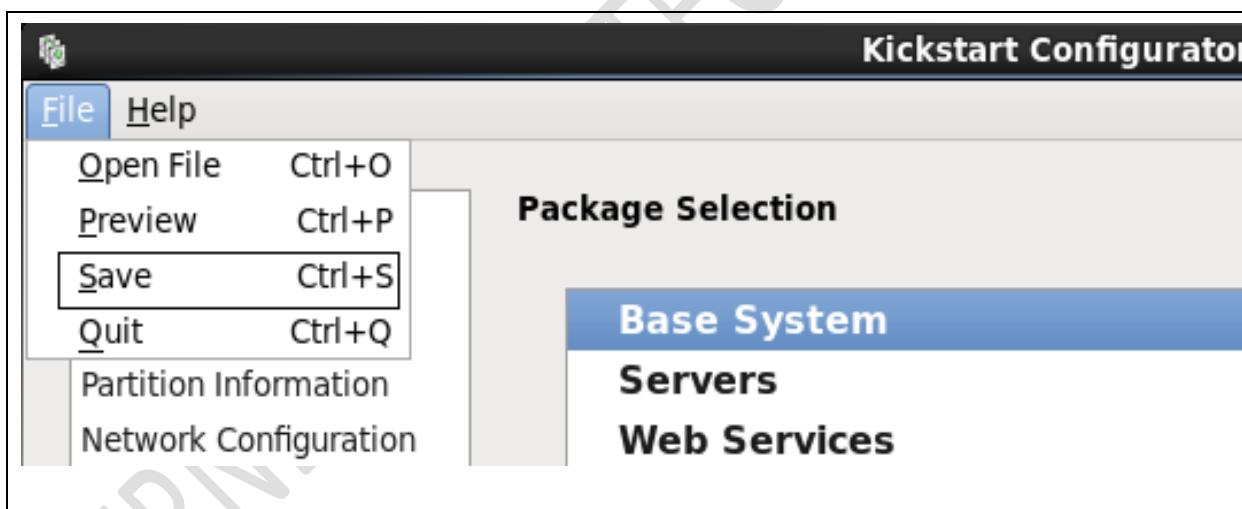
- “*Display Configuration*” Tab for selecting display environment of the O/S



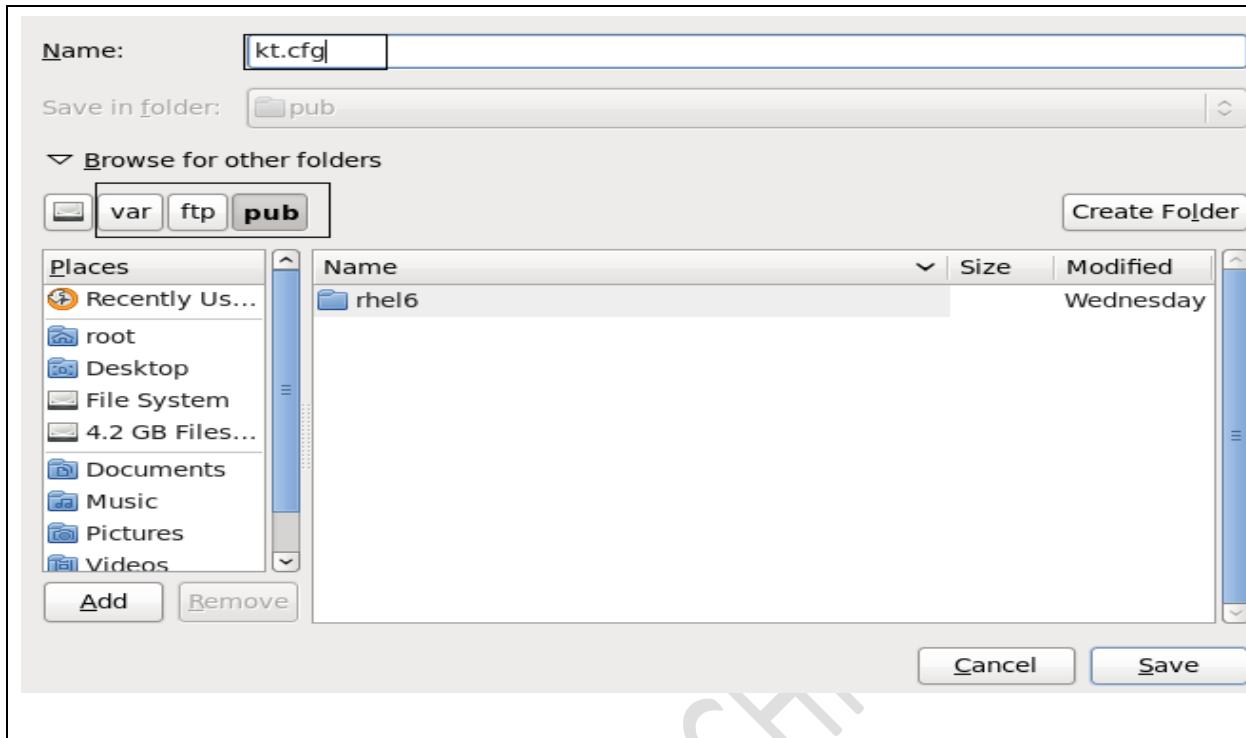
- The next tab after above is “*Package Selection*” where you can select various packages that will be installed with O/S



- After Package selection if you want to run any scripts pre and post- installation, you can go for remaining two tabs, otherwise leave it.
- Finally save the kickstart file in ftp's document root, so that it can be accessible from any machine in the network



- Save it with some name with .cfg in /var/ftp/pub directory



- Verify it in document root of ftp whether it is created or not

```
[root@ktadm pub]# ls  
kt.cfg  rhel6  
[root@ktadm pub]#
```

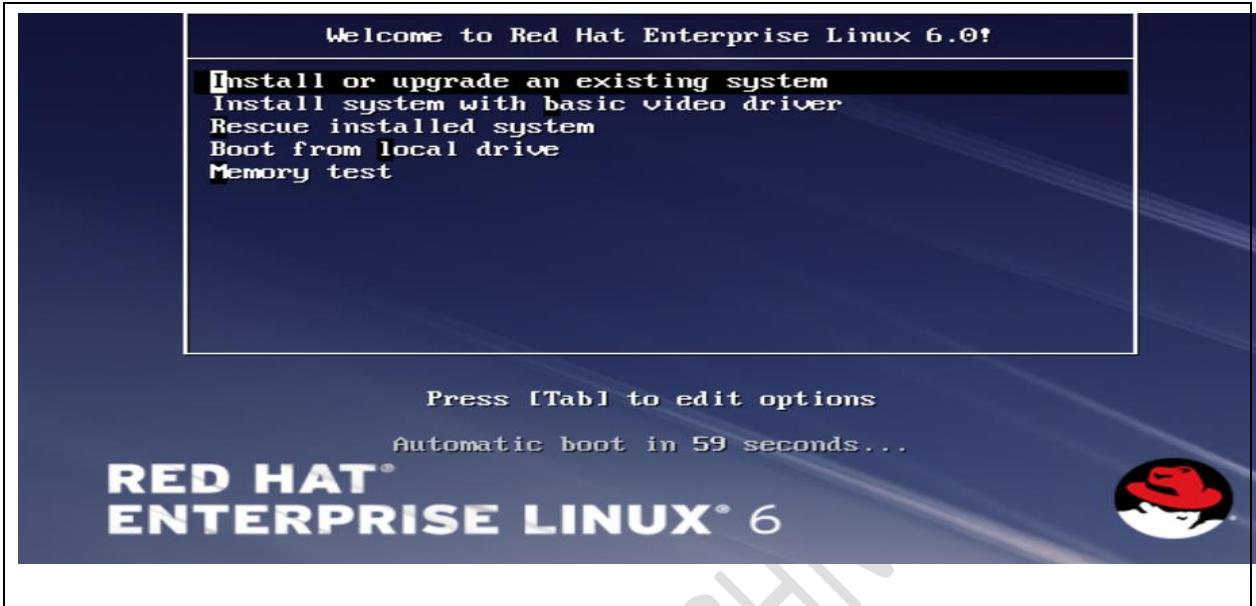
- To modify the same, open system-config-kickstart application go to File -> Open and navigate to the document root of ftp and select the file to be opened.



- Once the kickstart file is opened modify it as per the requirement

### Client side operation for kickstart

- Boot the system using RHEL 6 DVD and press "Esc" at splash screen

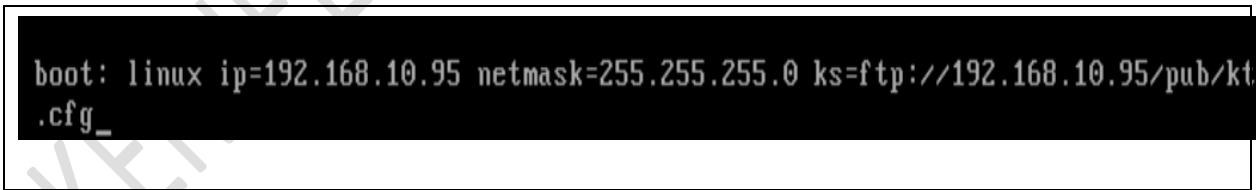


- After pressing "Esc", the following screen will be displayed

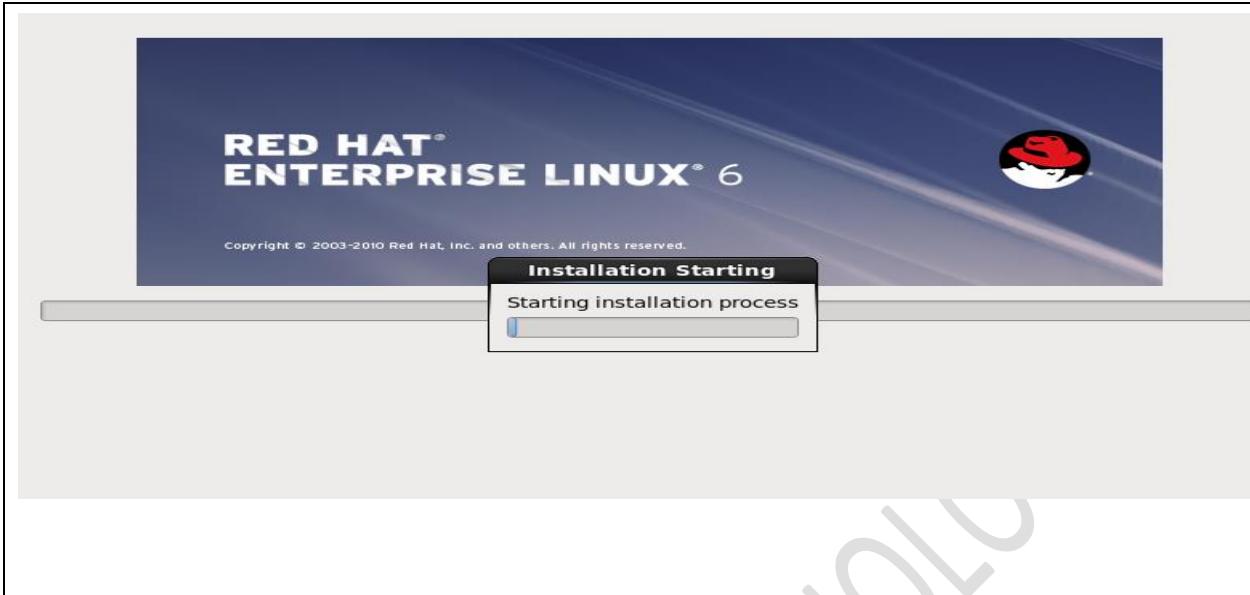


- Type the following information about the kickstart file and its server and also assign some IP address to the machine to communicate with kickstart server.

```
# linux ip=192.168.10.96 netmask=255.255.255.0 ks=ftp://192.168.10.95/pub/kt.cfg
```



- After entering above information just press enter to continue with your kickstart installation. Wait till installation is completed.



## NETWORK INSTALLATIONS

Network installations can be performed using following methods.

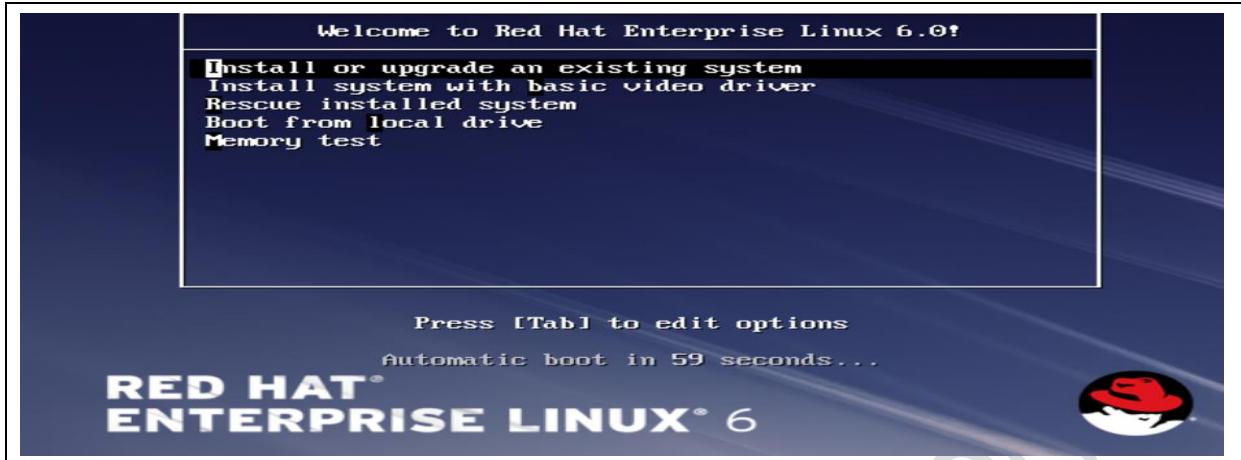
- FTP
- NFS
- HTTP

Steps to perform installation using FTP:

- Copy the entire RHEL6 DVD on document root of ftp i.e. /var/ftp/pub/

```
[root@ktadm ~]# cd /var/ftp/pub
[root@ktadm pub]# ls
kt.cfg  kts.cfg  rhel6
[root@ktadm pub]#
```

- Start installation using FTP directory
- As we are trying to install RHEL6 from network still we require a boot media so that at least we can get the boot screen where we can type our required command.
- To get the boot screen we can have a media like CD/DVD or USB drive with *boot.iso* image copied in it.
- “*boot.iso*” image will produce a boot screen as follows



To make a DVD / Pen Drive bootable using boot.iso image

- Download the boot.iso from redhat website.
- Copy the boot.iso in DVD or PENDRIVE using following command

For DVD

```
# cdrecord /root/boot.iso (where "/root/boot.iso" is the path of boot.iso image)
```

For USB Drive

```
#dd if=/root/boot.iso of=/dev/sdb1 (where /dev/sdb1 is the address of the USB drive)
```

- After making the boot media, make the system boot with it, press "Esc" to type the following command to take installation media from network

```
# boot: linux askmethod
```

A terminal window showing the command "boot: linux askmethod" on a black background.

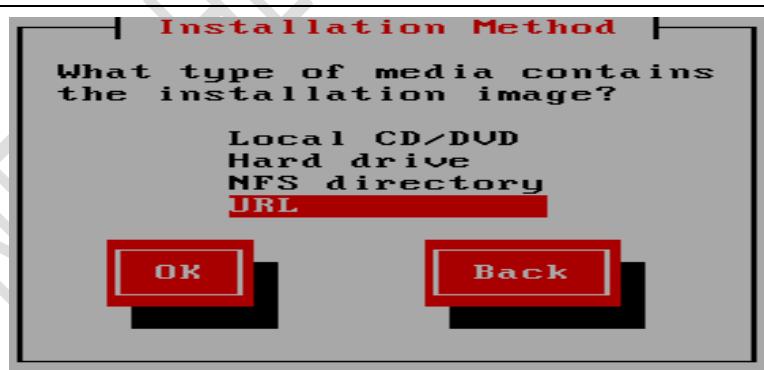
- After a while the following prompt will be display where you can select the preferred language



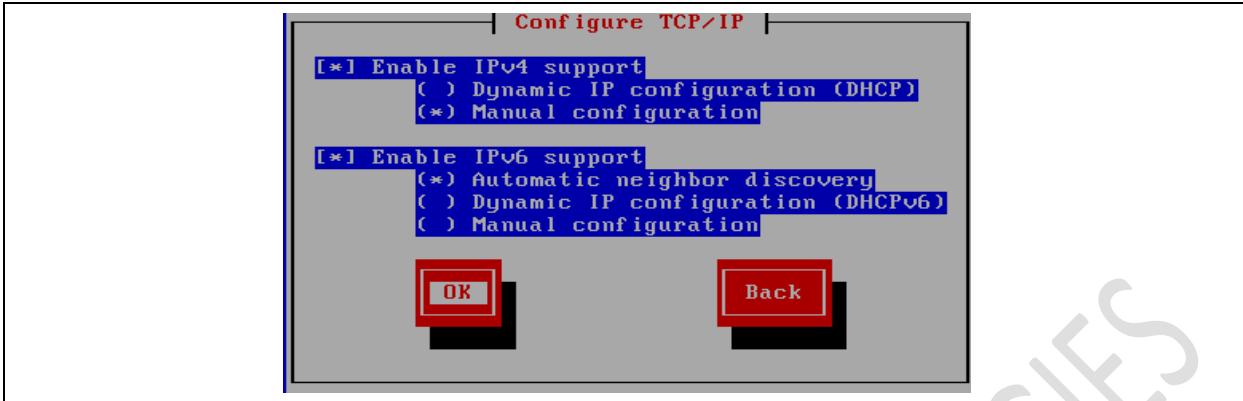
- Select the required keyboard layout



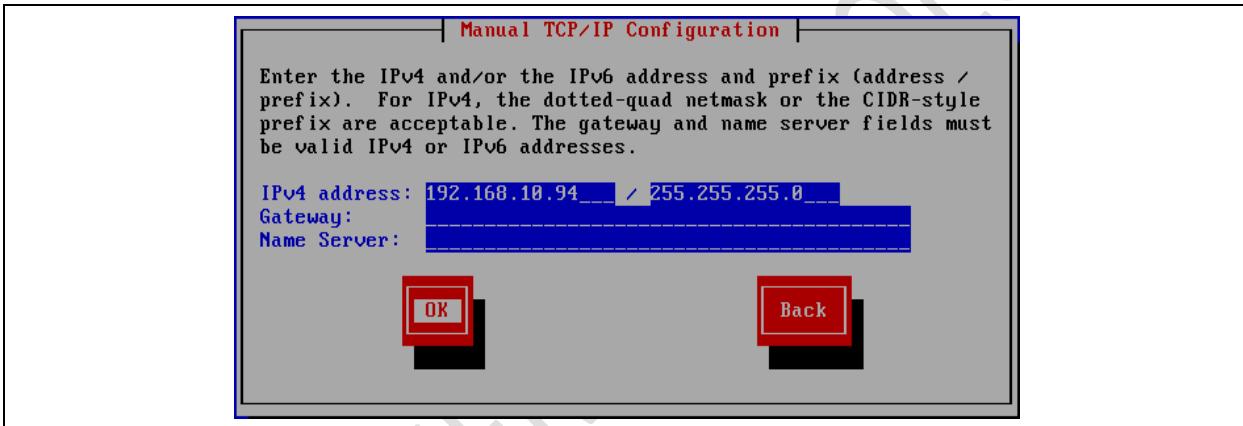
- It is the time now to select the medium from which you want to install the O/S



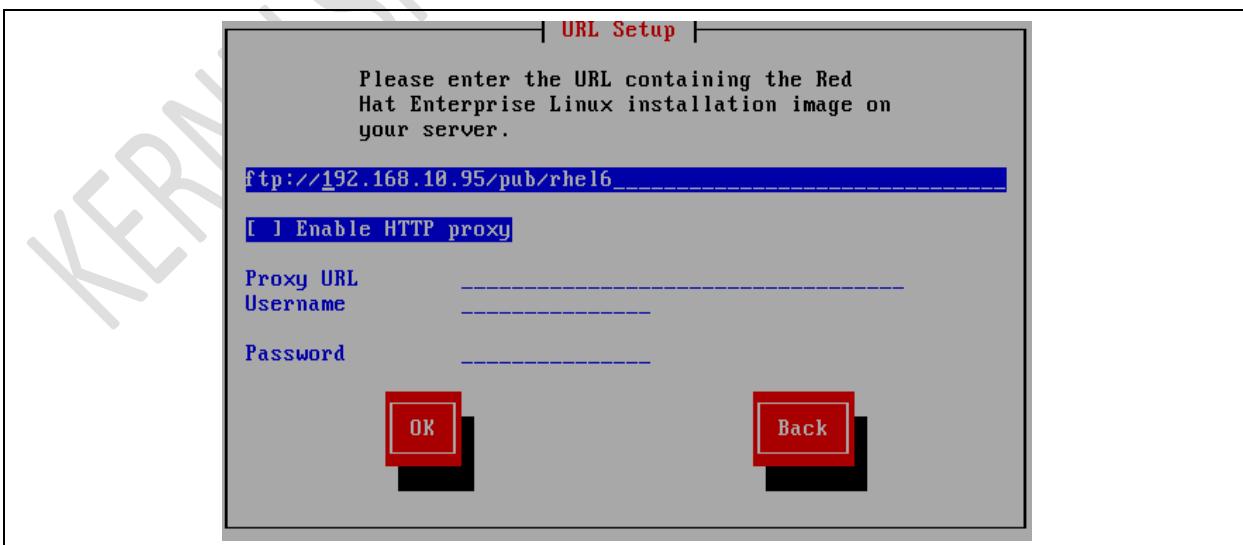
- Select *URL* for *ftp* and *http*, whereas *NFS* for installing from *NFS*
- Define the network settings, if DHCP is configured in your environment select *Dynamic* if not select *Manual* in *IPv4 support*



- Assign some IP address to your machine so that it can communicate with the server. Make sure that IP should be in the same range that of the server.



- Once the network is configured automatically the following screen will appear, provide the details of the ftp server as following



- Bingo..., we've got the installation media from ftp server as follows.



Now you can install as usual from here.

## CONFIGURING NFS AND HTTP SERVERS FOR NETWORK INSTALLATIONS

### NFS Configuration

- Make an entry in **/etc(exports** to export the RHEL6 media.
- Let us say my RHEL6 DVD is dumped in **/var/ftp/pub/rhel6** directory

```
/var/ftp/pub/rhel6 192.168.10.0/24(rw, sync)
```

- Use the **exportfs** command to export the directory.

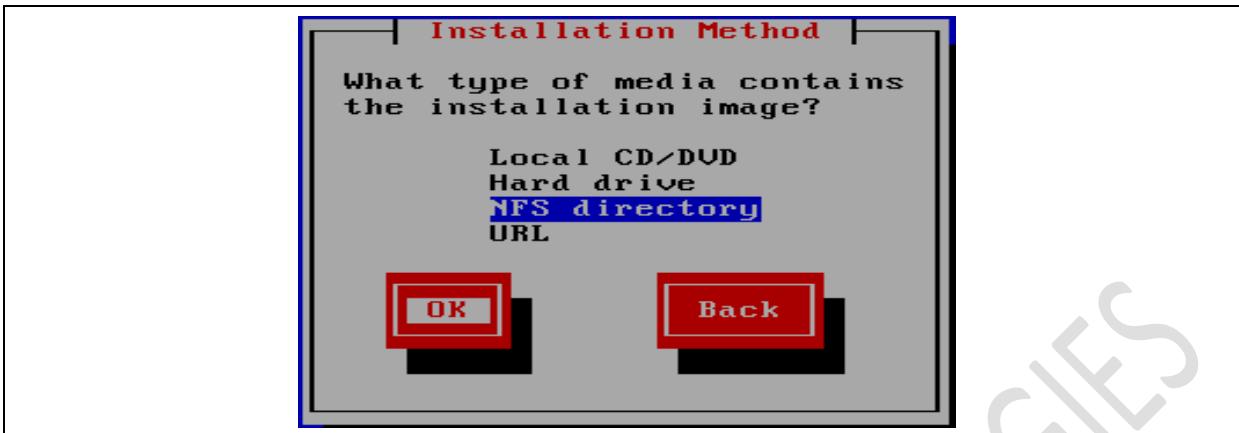
```
[root@ktadm ~]# exportfs -rv
exporting 192.168.10.0/24:/var/ftp/pub/rhel6
```

Don't forget to restart the services of *NFS*

Your NFS server is now ready to host the media, Login to client and start the N/W installation.

### Client Side Setup

- Follow the same steps of what we have done in **ftp** method, the only change will be selecting NFS directory instead of **URL**



- Give the information about the NFS server and directory as following



That's it; your installation will be started from NFS server

#### HTTP Configuration for network installations

- Copy the **RHEL6 DVD** dump in the document root of http i.e., **/var/www/html** , else just create a soft link of the directory in the document root of http.

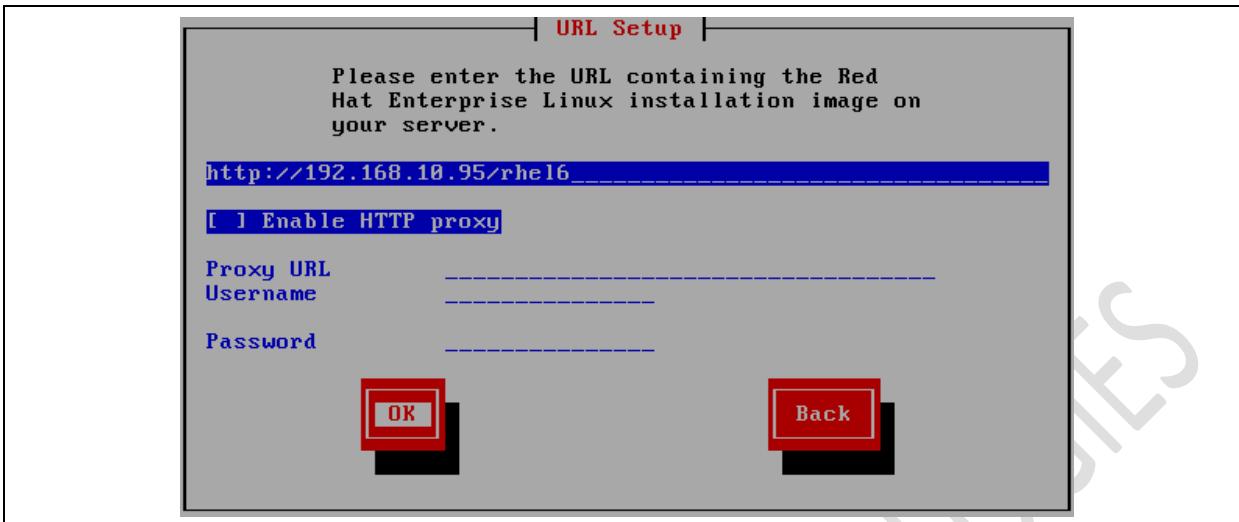
```
ln -s /var/ftp/pub/rhel6 /var/www/html/rhel6
```

```
[root@ktadm ~]# cd /var/www/html/
[root@ktadm html]# ls
index.html  rhel6
[root@ktadm html]#
```

- Restart the services of http and you are done with the server side configuration

#### Client side setup

- Repeat all the steps as done for *FTP* installation, the only change would be In the *URL* address which will as below



Once continued with *OK* installation will be started through http

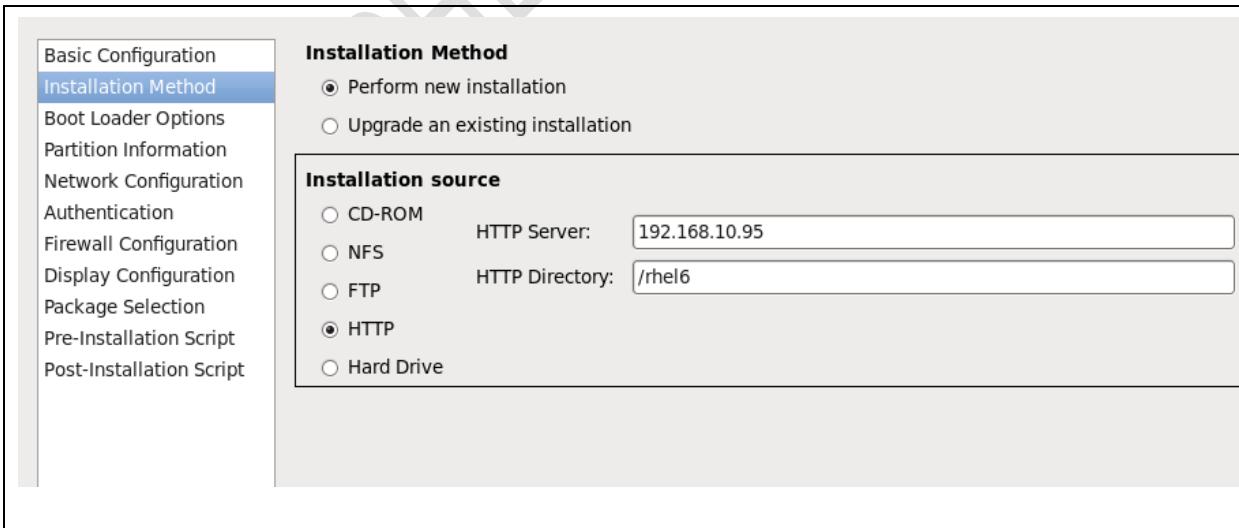
## PERFORMING FULLY AUTOMATED INSTALLATION BY COMBINING KICKSTART AND NETWORK INSTALLATION

In such type of installation we will take the media from network and also use kickstart to answer all the queries asked during installation.

Creating a Kickstart file with network installation predefined

- Create a kickstart file as usual, the only change we need to do is in method of installation.

### #system-config-kickstart



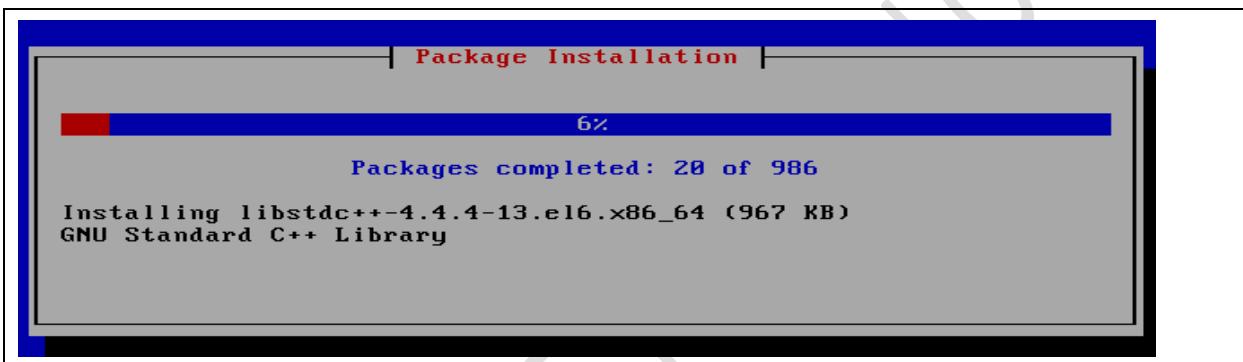
- We can select any method of installation from the list and specify the details regarding the server.
- If using ftp to access the kickstart file save it in document root of ftp

### Client side setup

- Boot the system with boot.iso image and press *Esc* when blue screen is appear.
- Give the information for kickstart file as shown below

```
boot: linux ip=192.168.10.94 netmask=255.255.255.0 ks=ftp://192.168.10.95/pub/ks
.cfg_
```

Observe that an automated installation will be perform and the installation media will be taken from network.



Isn't it Amazing....!

# ADDITIONAL TOPICS FOR YOU TO LEARN YOURSELF

## Installing Oracle Database 11g on Linux

To install the Oracle software, you must use the Oracle Universal installer.

1. For this installation, you need either the DVDs or a downloaded version of the DVDs. In this tutorial, you install from the downloaded version. From the directory where the DVD files were unzipped, open a terminal window and enter the following:

```
# ./runInstaller
```

```
[oracle@stctestbox03 Disk1]$ ls
doc install response runInstaller stage welcome.html
[oracle@stctestbox03 Disk1]$ ./runInstaller
Starting Oracle Universal Installer...

Checking installer requirements...

Checking operating system version: must be redhat-3, SuSE-9, redhat-4, UnitedLinux-1.0, asianux-1 or asianux-2
                                                Passed

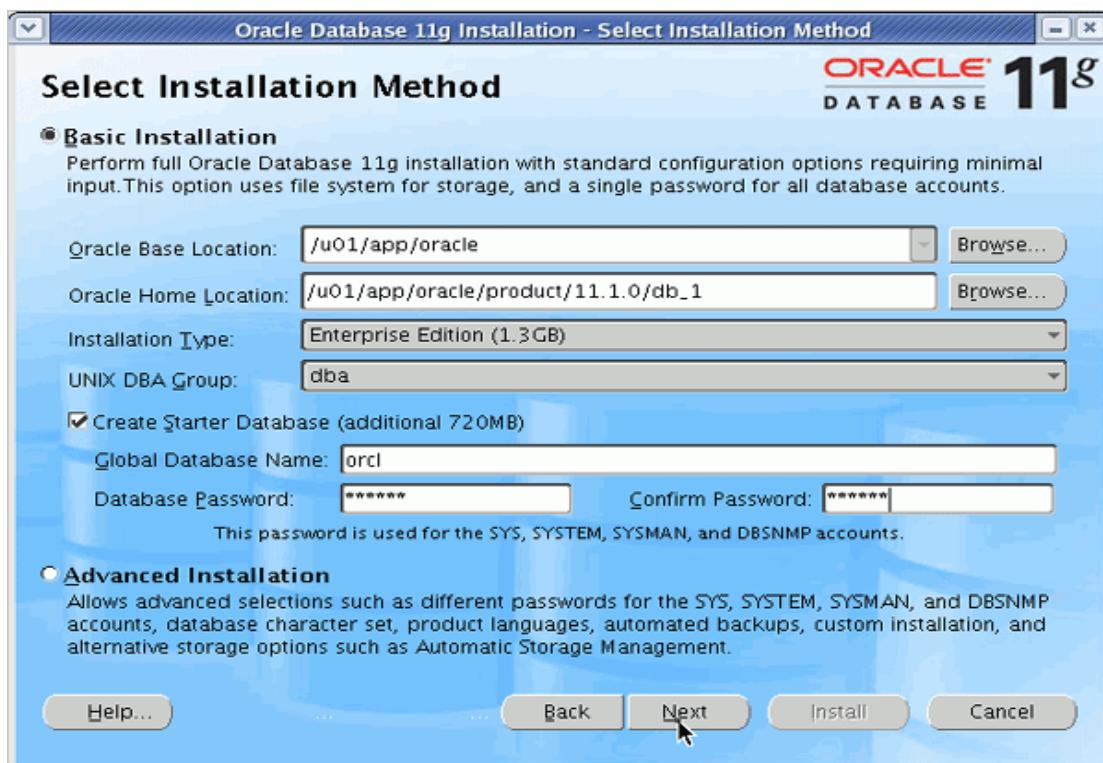
All installer requirements met.

Preparing to launch Oracle Universal Installer from /tmp/OraInstall2007-01-31_08-10-22AM. Please wait ... }
```

2. The product you want to install is **Oracle Database 11g**. Make sure the product is selected and click **Next**.



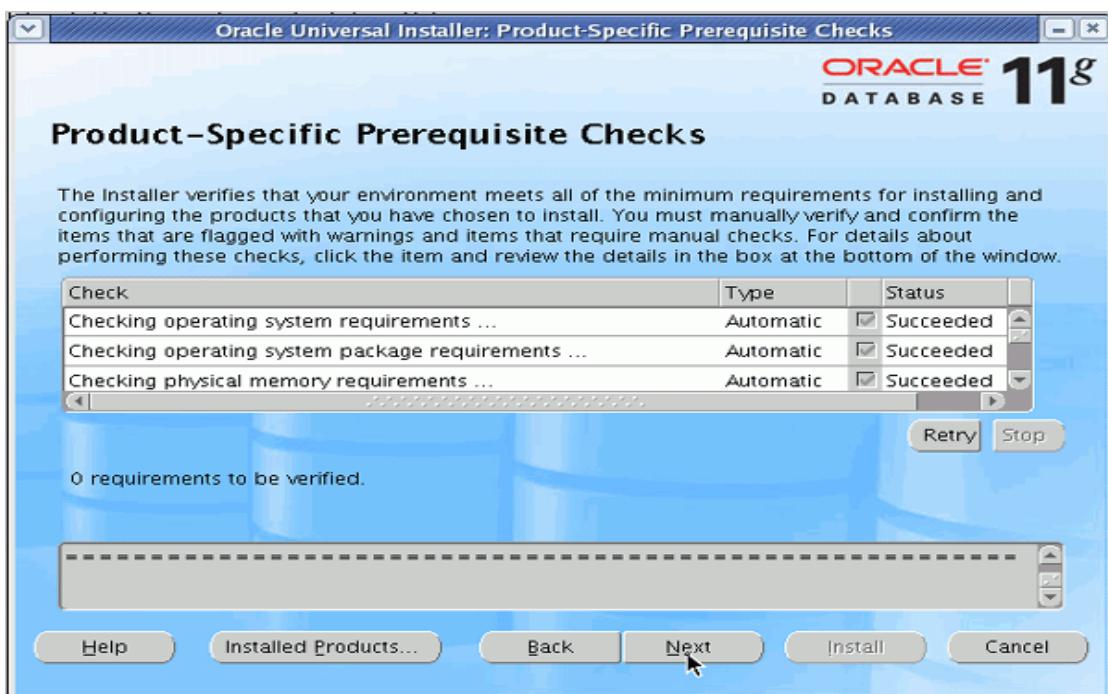
2. You will perform a basic installation with a starter database. Enter **orcl** for the Global Database Name and **oracle** for Database Password and Confirm Password. Then, click **Next**.



3. You need to specify your Inventory directory. The location should be set to **/u01/app/oracle/oralInventory**. Accept the default Operating System group name, **oinstall**. Then, click **Next**.



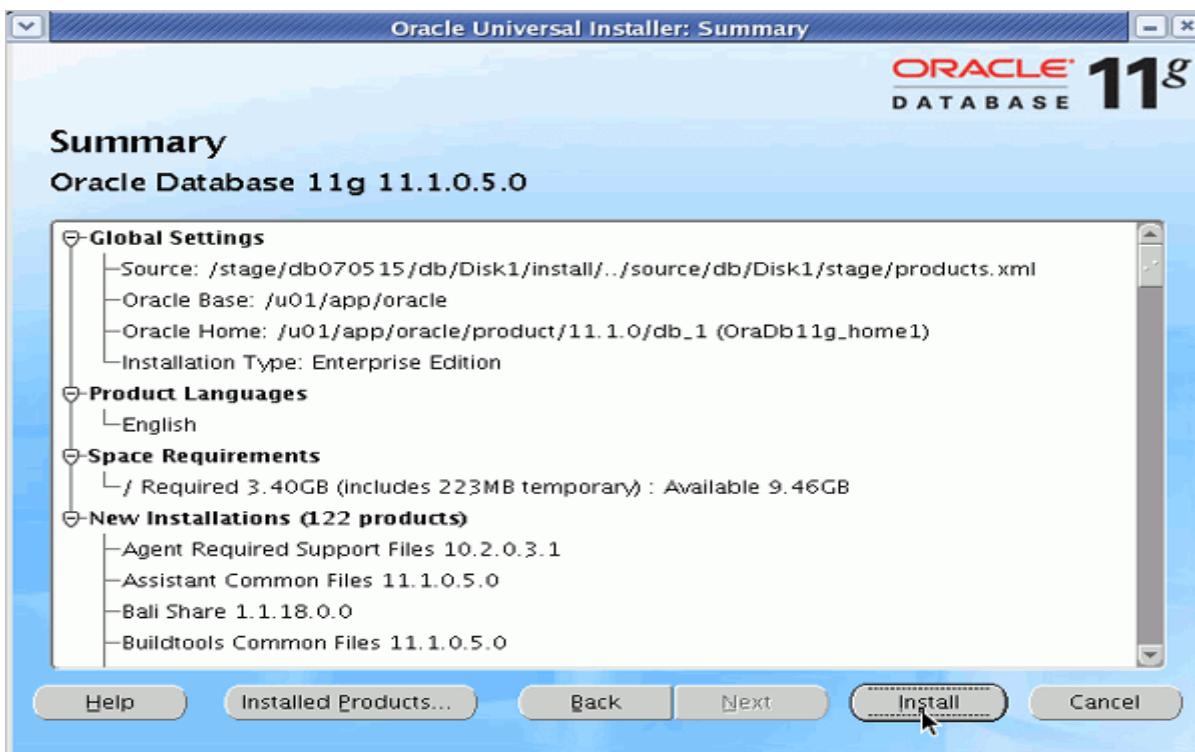
4. The installer now verifies that the system meets all the minimum requirements for installing and configuring the chosen product. Please correct any reported errors before continuing. When the check successfully completes, click **Next**.



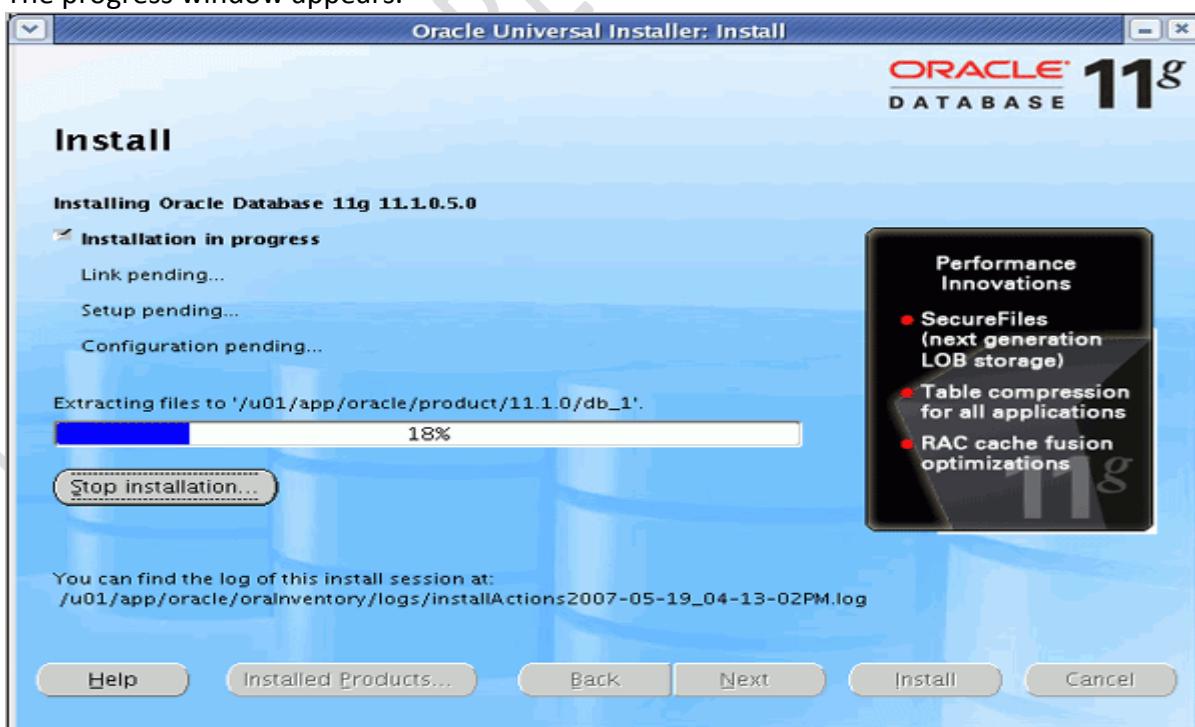
5. Oracle Configuration Manager allows you to associate your configuration information with your Metalink account. You can choose to enable it on this window. Then, click **Next**.



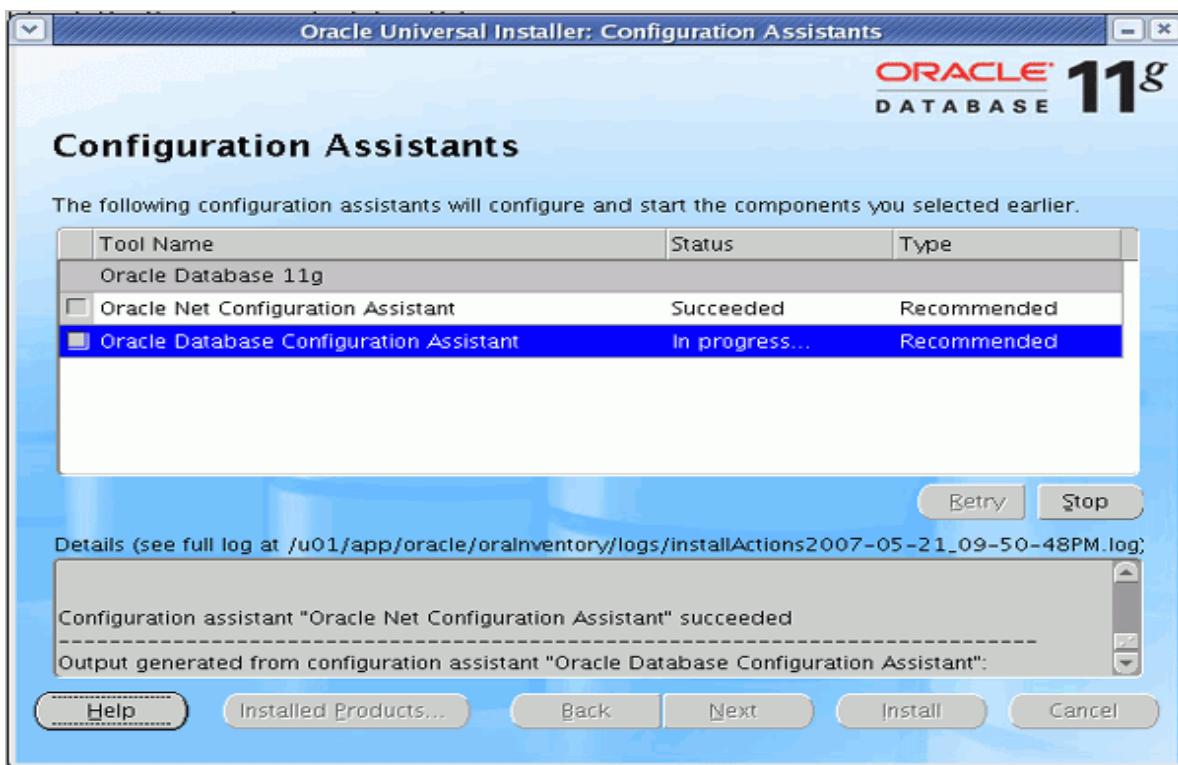
6. Review the Summary window to verify what is to be installed. Then, click **Install**.



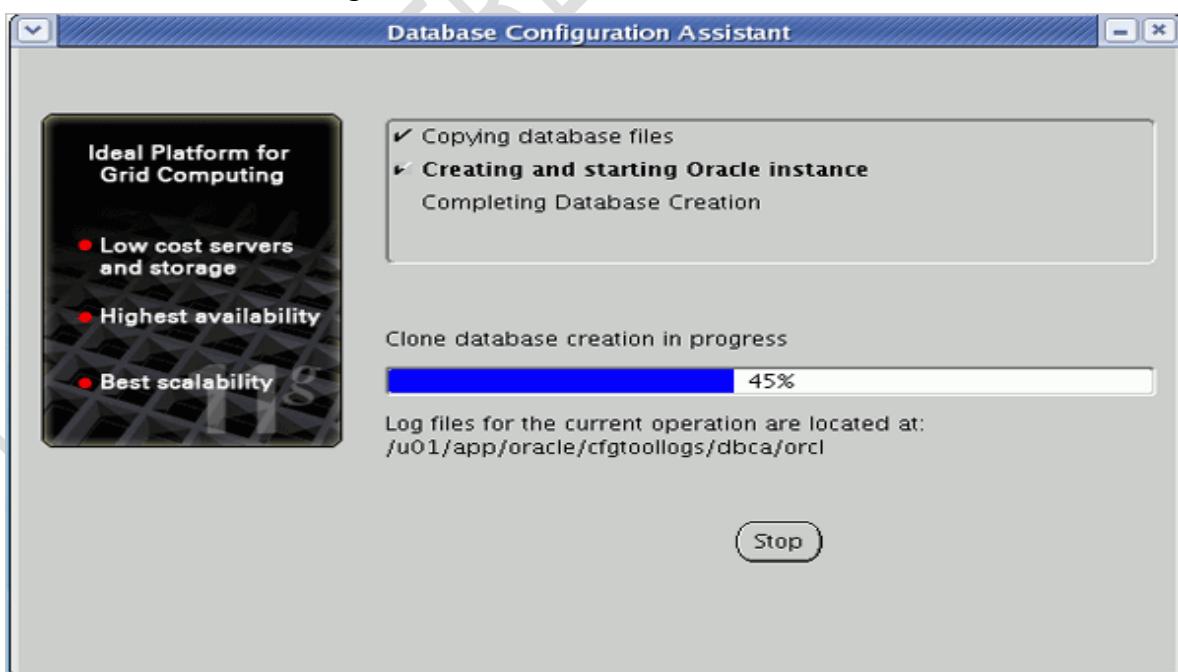
7. The progress window appears.



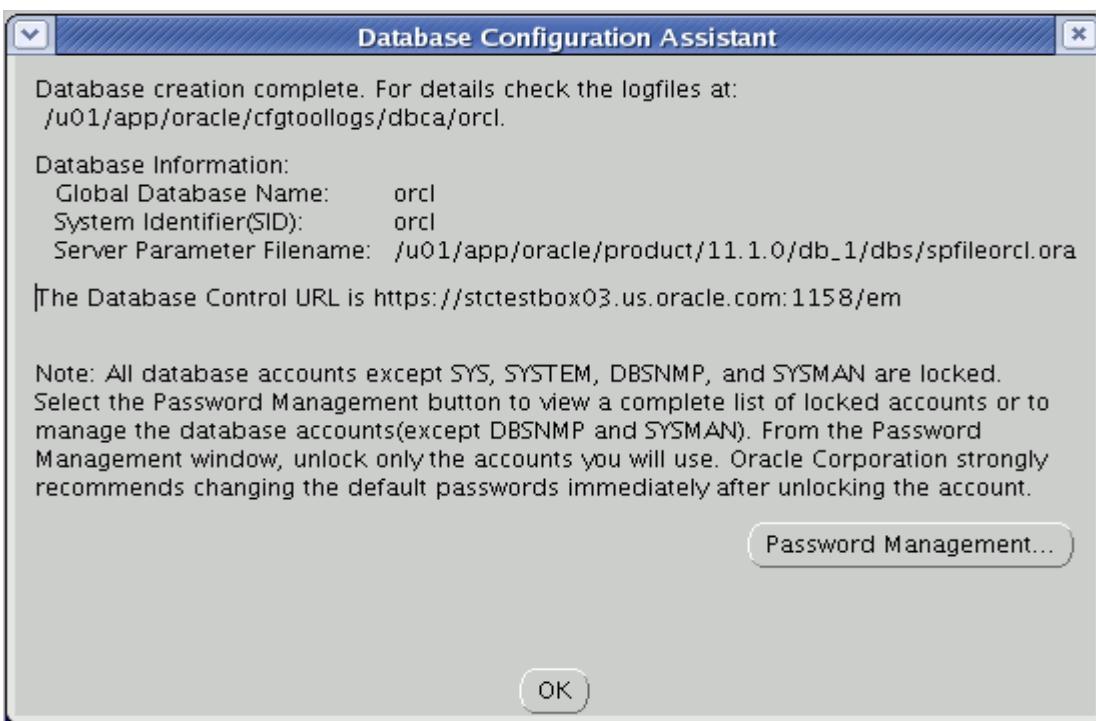
8. The Configuration Assistants window appears.



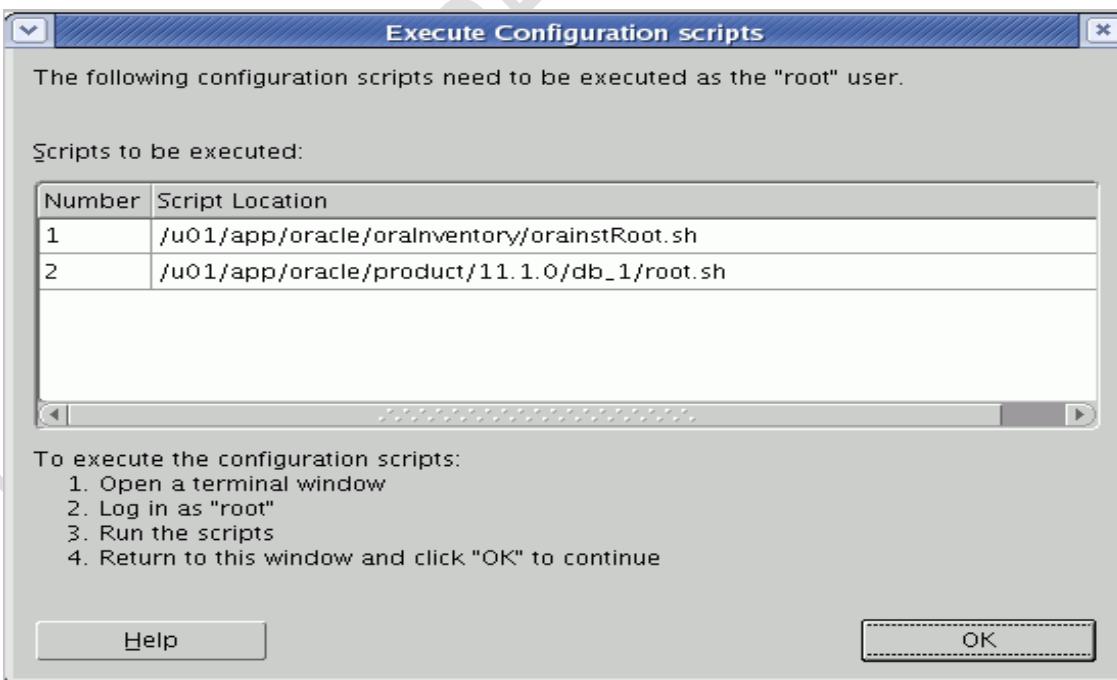
9. Your database is now being created.



9. When the database has been created, you can unlock the users you want to use. Click **OK**.



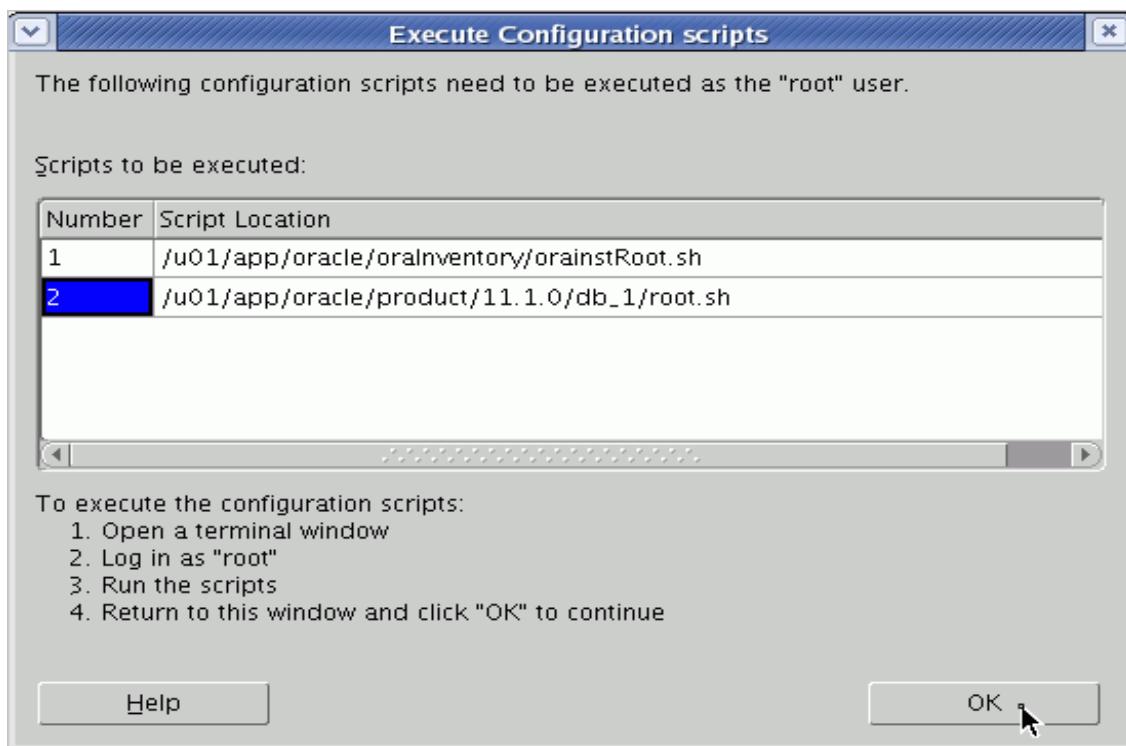
10. You need to execute **orainstRoot.sh** and **root.sh** as the **root** user.



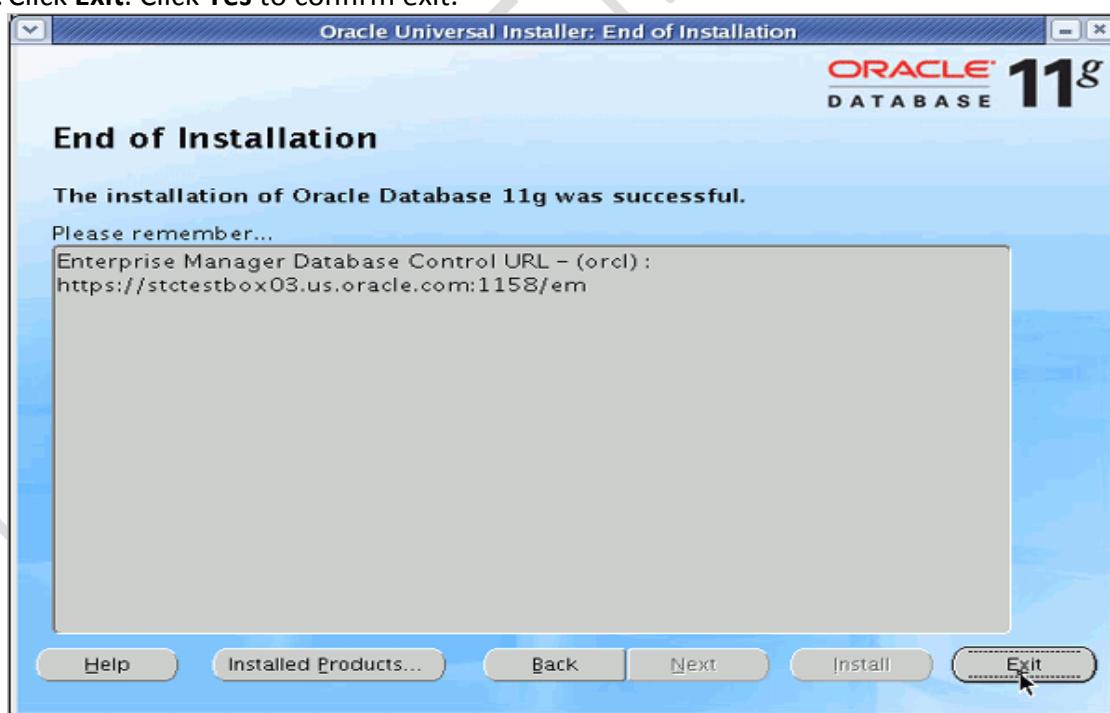
11. Open a terminal window and enter the following commands. Follow the prompts as instructed.

```
su -  
<rootpassword>  
cd /u01/app/oracle/oraInventory  
.oraInstRoot.sh  
cd ../product/11.1.0/db_1  
.root.sh  
exit  
exit  
[oracle@stctestbox06 ~]$ su -  
Password:  
[root@stctestbox06 ~]# cd /u01/app/oracle/oraInventory  
[root@stctestbox06 oraInventory]# ./oraInstRoot.sh  
Changing permissions of /u01/app/oracle/oraInventory to 770.  
Changing groupname of /u01/app/oracle/oraInventory to oinstall.  
The execution of the script is complete  
[root@stctestbox06 oraInventory]# cd ../product/11.1.0/db_1  
[root@stctestbox06 db_1]# ./root.sh  
Running Oracle 11g root.sh script...  
  
The following environment variables are set as:  
ORACLE_OWNER= oracle  
ORACLE_HOME= /u01/app/oracle/product/11.1.0/db_1  
  
Enter the full pathname of the local bin directory: [/usr/local/bin]:  
Copying dbhome to /usr/local/bin ...  
Copying oraenv to /usr/local/bin ...  
Copying coraenv to /usr/local/bin ...  
  
Creating /etc/oratab file...  
Entries will be added to the /etc/oratab file as needed by  
Database Configuration Assistant when a database is created  
Finished running generic part of root.sh script.  
Now product-specific root actions will be performed.  
Finished product-specific root actions.  
[root@stctestbox06 db_1]# █
```

12. Switch back to the Universal Installer and click **OK**.



13. Click **Exit**. Click **Yes** to confirm exit.



# IMPLEMENTING NAGIOS CORE ON RHEL6.4

## OVERVIEW

Nagios® Core™ is an Open Source system and network monitoring application. It watches hosts and services that you specify, alerting you when things go bad and when they get better.

Nagios Core was originally designed to run under Linux, although it should work under most other unices as well.

Some of the many features of Nagios Core include:

- ✓ Monitoring of network services (SMTP, POP3, HTTP, NNTP, PING, etc.)
- ✓ Monitoring of host resources (processor load, disk usage, etc.)
- ✓ Simple plugin design that allows users to easily develop their own service checks
- ✓ Parallelized service checks
- ✓ Ability to define network host hierarchy using "parent" hosts, allowing detection of and distinction between hosts that are down and those that are unreachable
- ✓ Contact notifications when service or host problems occur and get resolved (via email, pager, or user-defined method)
- ✓ Ability to define event handlers to be run during service or host events for proactive problem resolution
- ✓ Automatic log file rotation
- ✓ Support for implementing redundant monitoring hosts
- ✓ Optional web interface for viewing current network status, notification and problem history, log file, etc.

## SYSTEM REQUIREMENTS

The only requirement of running Nagios Core is a machine running Linux (or UNIX variant) that has network access and a C compiler installed (if installing from source code).

You are *not required* to use the CGIs included with Nagios Core. However, if you do decide to use them, you will need to have the following software installed...

1. A web server (preferably Apache)
2. Thomas Boutell's gd library version 1.6.3 or higher

## PREREQUISITES

- Apache
- PHP
- GCC compiler
- GD development libraries

```
[root@localhost ~]# rpm -qa wget httpd php gcc glibc glibc-common gd gd-devel  
make net-snmp  
net-snmp-5.5-37.el6.x86_64  
glibc-2.12-1.47.el6.x86_64  
gcc-4.4.6-3.el6.x86_64  
gd-2.0.35-10.el6.x86_64  
wget-1.12-1.4.el6.x86_64  
make-3.81-19.el6.x86_64  
php-5.3.3-3.el6_1.3.x86_64  
glibc-common-2.12-1.47.el6.x86_64  
httpd-2.2.15-15.el6.x86_64
```

Download the latest version of Nagios-core from nagios.org

The screenshot shows the Nagios website's download section. The main navigation bar includes Home, News, Products, Documentation, Support, Projects, About, and Get Started. Below the navigation, a breadcrumb trail shows Home > Download > Core > Thanks for Downloading Nagios Core. The main content area features a large heading "Thanks for Downloading Nagios Core". A paragraph explains that Nagios Core provides a central monitoring engine and a web interface for viewing current logs, and basic reports. Below this, a section titled "Nagios Core" is shown with a blue link. Under "Latest Version 4 Releases", there is a table with two rows:

Version	Date	Notes	Type	Link
4.0.0	2013-09-20	Latest stable release	Source code	<a href="#">nagios-4.0.0.tar.gz</a>
4.0.0rc1	2013-09-15	Previous release candidate	Source code	<a href="#">nagios-4.0.0rc1.tar.gz</a>

Verify that the package is downloaded:

```
[root@localhost ~]# ls  
anaconda-ks.cfg  install.log          nagios-plugins-1.4.16.tar.gz  Videos  
Desktop          install.log.syslog    Pictures  
Documents         Music              Public  
Downloads        nagios-4.0.0.tar.gz   Templates
```

## CREATING USER AND GROUP

1. Create user Nagios
2. Create group nagcmd

### 3. Make nagcmd a secondary group for the user Nagios

```
[root@localhost ~]# useradd nagios
[root@localhost ~]# groupadd nagcmd
[root@localhost ~]# usermod -a -G nagcmd nagios
```

## NAGIOS INSTALLATION

Extract the files first

```
[root@localhost ~]# tar zxvf nagios-4.0.0.tar.gz
[root@localhost ~]# tar zxvf nagios-plugins-1.4.16.tar.gz
```

Verify and move to the nagios directory:

```
[root@localhost ~]# ls
anaconda-ks.cfg    install.log      nagios-4.0.0.tar.gz      Public
Desktop           install.log.syslog  nagios-plugins-1.4.16   Templates
Documents          Music           nagios-plugins-1.4.16.tar.gz  Videos
Downloads          nagios          Pictures
[root@localhost ~]# cd nagios
[root@localhost nagios]# ls
base              daemon-init.in  install-sh     nagios.sysconfig  t-tap
cgi               docs            LEGAL        pkginfo.in       update-version
Changelog         doxy.conf      lib          README          UPGRADING
common            functions     LICENSE      sample-config   worker
config.guess      html           Makefile.in  subst.in        xdata
config.sub        include        make-tarball  t
configure         indent-all.sh  mkpackage    tap
configure.in      indent.sh     module      test
contrib           INSTALLING    nagios.spec THANKS
```

Now, execute the command:

```
[root@localhost nagios]# ./configure --with-command-group=nagcmd
```

Now, use the **make** command as listed below:

```
make all
make install
make install-init
make install-config
make install-commandmode
make install-webconf
```

Now, copy recursively the contents of contrib/eventhandlers to /usr/local/nagios/libexec

```
[root@localhost nagios]# cp -R contrib/eventhandlers/ /usr/local/nagios/libexec/
```

Check the owner of /usr/local/nagios/libexec/eventhandlers

```
[root@localhost nagios]# ls -ld /usr/local/nagios/libexec/eventhandlers/
drwxr-xr-x. 4 root root 4096 Sep 27 08:42 /usr/local/nagios/libexec/eventhandlers/
```

Check the owner and the group owner to **nagios**

```
[root@localhost ~]# chown -R nagios:nagios /usr/local/nagios/etc/nagios.cfg
[root@localhost ~]# ls -ld /usr/local/nagios/etc/nagios.cfg
-rw-rw-r--. 1 nagios nagios 44475 Sep 27 08:40 /usr/local/nagios/etc/nagios.cfg
```

### Start the **nagios** service

```
[root@localhost ~]# service nagios start  
nagios is stopped  
Starting nagios:  
[root@localhost ~]# chkconfig nagios on
```

[ OK ]

### Also start the **httpd** service

```
[root@localhost ~]# service httpd start  
Starting httpd:  
[root@localhost ~]# chkconfig httpd on
```

### Create a user for **web** access

```
[root@localhost ~]# htpasswd -c /usr/local/nagios/etc/htpasswd.users nagiosadmin  
New password:  
Re-type new password:  
Adding password for user nagiosadmin
```

## NAGIOS PLUGIN INSTALLATION

Navigate to the Nagios Plugin directory which we extracted using tar on the previous page

```
[root@localhost ~]# cd nagios-plugins-1.4.16  
[root@localhost nagios-plugins-1.4.16]# ./configure --with-nagios-user=nagios-group=nagios
```

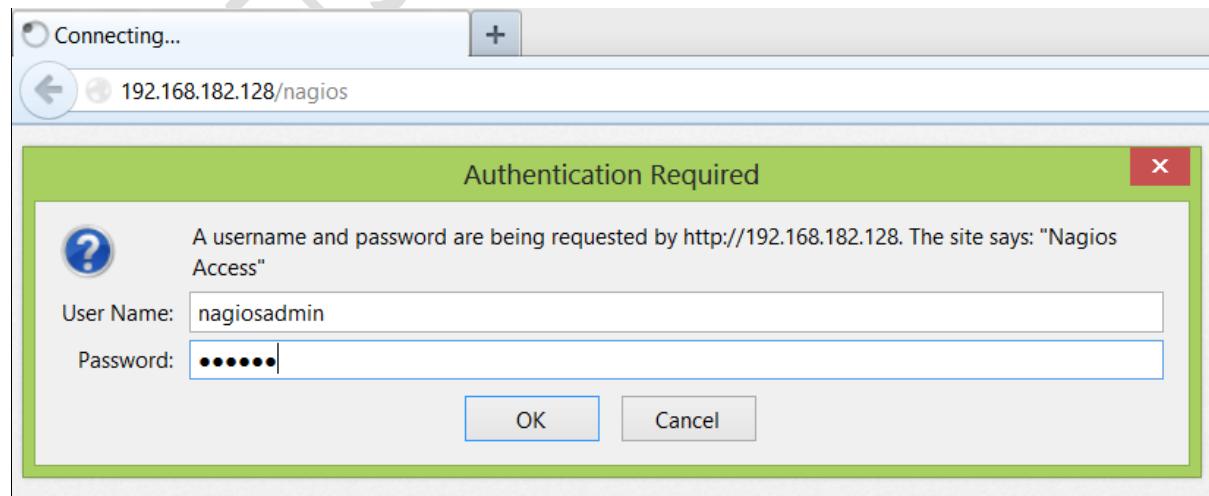
Use the **make** and **make install** commands

```
[root@localhost nagios-plugins-1.4.16]# make  
[root@localhost nagios-plugins-1.4.16]# make install
```

Make the services **nagios** and **httpd** persistent across reboot

```
[root@localhost nagios-plugins-1.4.16]# chkconfig --add nagios  
[root@localhost nagios-plugins-1.4.16]# chkconfig --level 35 nagios on  
[root@localhost nagios-plugins-1.4.16]# chkconfig --add httpd  
[root@localhost nagios-plugins-1.4.16]# chkconfig --level 35 httpd on
```

Let us try to connect to our **NAGIOS** server using the address <http://<nagios serverip>/nagios>



N Nagios Core + 192.168.182.128/nagios/ Google

# Nagios® Core™

**Nagios® Core™ Version 4.0.0**  
September 20, 2013  
[Check for updates](#)

## General

[Home](#) [Documentation](#)

## Current Status

[Tactical Overview](#) [Map](#) [Hosts](#) [Services](#) [Host Groups](#)  
[Summary](#) [Grid](#)

**Service Groups**  
[Summary](#) [Grid](#)

**Problems**  
[Services \(Unhandled\)](#) [Hosts \(Unhandled\)](#) [Network Outages](#)

Quick Search:

## Reports

[Availability](#) [Trends](#) [Alerts](#)  
[History](#) [Summary](#) [Histogram](#)  
[Notifications](#) [Event Log](#)

## System

[Comments](#) [Downtime](#) [Process Info](#) [Performance Info](#)

### Get Started

- Start monitoring your infrastructure
- Change the look and feel of Nagios
- Extend Nagios with hundreds of addons
- Get support
- Get training
- Get certified

### Don't Miss...

 **Nagios® World Conference North America**  
Saint Paul, MN | Sept 30 - Oct 2, 2013

Don't miss the [Nagios World Conference](#) September 30-October 3, 2013. 4 days, 40+ sessions, industry experts, networking and more. Register today before the conference fills up!

- Improve your Nagios skillset with self-paced and instructor led [training services](#).
- Monitor business processes with the new [Nagios BPI](#) addon...

### Quick Links

- [Nagios Library](#) (tutorials and docs)
- [Nagios Labs](#) (development blog)
- [Nagios Exchange](#) (plugins and addons)
- [Nagios Support](#) (tech support)
- [Nagios.com](#) (company)
- [Nagios.org](#) (project)

### Latest News

- Nagios Core 4.0.0 Released
- NRPE 2.15 Released
- Nagios Core 4.0.0beta4 Released
- More news...

Copyright © 2010-2013 Nagios Core Development Team and Community Contributors. Copyright © 1999-2009 Ethan Galstad. See the THANKS file for more information on our contributors.

Nagios Core is licensed under the GNU General Public License and is provided AS IS with NO WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, INCLUDING THE WARRANTY OF DESIGN, MERCHANTABILITY, AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. Nagios is a registered trademark and the Nagios logo is a service mark of Nagios Enterprises, LLC. All other products and services mentioned are trademarks, servicemarks, registered trademarks or registered servicemarks owned by Nagios Enterprises, LLC. Use of the Nagios marks is governed by the trademark use policy.

 SOURCEFORGE.NET

# CREATING FILE SYSTEM USING PARTED

Like the **fdisk** utility, the **parted** utility also allows users to:

- a) View the existing partition table
- b) Create a new partition with available free space
- c) Change the size of the existing partitions

To start the **parted** utility, log in as root and execute the command **parted /dev/sda** (where **/dev/sda** is the device name for the drive we need to configure)

Table 1.1 parted commands

S.NO	COMMAND	DESCRIPTION
1)	check minor-num	Perform a simple check of the file system
2)	cp from to	Copy file system from one partition to another; from and to are the minor numbers of the partitions
3)	help	Display list of available commands
4)	mklabel label	Create a disk label for the partition table
5)	mkfs minor-num file-system-type	Create a file system of type file-system-type
6)	mkpart part-type fs-type start-mb end-mb	Make a partition without creating a new file system
7)	mkpartfs part-type fs-type start-mb end-mb	Make a partition and create the specified file system
8)	move minor-num start-mb end-mb	Move the partition
9)	name minor-num name	Name the partition for Mac and PC98 disklabels only
10)	print	Display the partition table

S.NO	COMMAND	DESCRIPTION
11)	quit	Quit parted
12)	rescue start-mb end-mb	Rescue a lost partition from start-mb to end-mb
13)	resize minor-num start-mb end-mb	Resize the partition from start-mb to end-mb
14)	rm minor-num	Remove the partition
15)	select device	Select a different device to configure
16)	set minor-num flag state	Set the flag on a partition; state is either on or off
17)	toggle [NUMBER [FLAG]]	Toggle the state of FLAG on partition NUMBER
18)	unit UNIT	Set the default unit to UNIT

### DEMO:

```
[root@ktlinux1 ~]# parted
GNU Parted 2.1
Using /dev/sda
Welcome to GNU Parted! Type 'help' to view a list of commands.
(parted) █
```

After starting **parted**, use the command **print** to view the partition table. A table similar to the following appears:

```
[root@ktlinux1 ~]# parted
GNU Parted 2.1
Using /dev/sda
Welcome to GNU Parted! Type 'help' to view a list of commands.
(parted) print
Model: ATA QEMU HARDDISK (scsi)
Disk /dev/sda: 53.7GB
Sector size (logical/physical): 512B/512B
Partition Table: msdos

Number  Start   End     Size    Type      File system  Flags
 1      1049kB  211MB   210MB   primary   ext4         boot
 2      211MB   15.9GB   15.7GB   primary   ext4
 3      15.9GB   18.1GB   2147MB  primary   linux-swap(v1)
 4      18.1GB   53.7GB   35.6GB  extended
 5      18.1GB   18.6GB   527MB   logical   ext4

(parted)
```

The first line contains the disk type, manufacturer, model number and interface, and the second line displays the disk label type. The remaining output below the fourth line shows the partition table.

In the partition table, the Minor number is the partition number. For example, the partition with minor number 1 corresponds to /dev/sda1. The Start and End values are in megabytes. Valid Type are metadata, free, primary, extended, or logical. The Filesystem is the file system type, which can be any of the following:

- ext2
- ext3
- fat16
- fat32
- hfs
- jfs
- linux-swap
- ntfs
- reiserfs
- hp-ufs
- sun-ufs
- xfs

If a Filesystem of a device shows no value, this means that its file system type is unknown.

The Flags column lists the flags set for the partition. Available flags are:



#### NOTE:

To select a different device without having to restart `parted`, use the `select` command followed by the device name (for example, `/dev/sda`). Doing so allows you to view or configure the partition table of a device.

- boot
- root
- swap
- hidden
- raid
- lvm or lba

## CREATING A PARTITION

Start **parted**, where /dev/sda is the device on which to create the partition:

```
parted /dev/sda
```

View the current partition table to determine if there is enough free space:

```
print
```

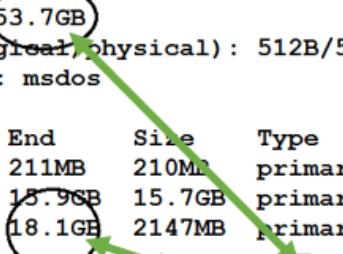
From the partition table, determine the start and end points of the new partition and what partition type it should be. You can only have four primary partitions (with no extended partition) on a device. If you need more than four partitions, you can have three primary partitions, one extended partition, and multiple logical partitions within the extended.

```
mkpart extended 18.1GB 53.7GB
```

```
[root@ktlinux1 ~]# parted /dev/sda
GNU Parted 2.1
Using /dev/sda
Welcome to GNU Parted! Type 'help' to view a list of commands.
(parted) print
Model: ATA QEMU HARDDISK (scsi)
Disk /dev/sda: 53.7GB
Sector size (logical/physical): 512B/512B
Partition Table: msdos

Number  Start   End     Size    Type      File system     Flags
 1      1049kB  211MB   210MiB  primary   ext4           boot
 2      211MB   15.9GB   15.7GB   primary   ext4
 3      15.9GB   18.1GB   2147MB  primary   linux-swap(v1)

(parted) mkpart extended 18.1GB 53.7GB
Warning: WARNING: the kernel failed to re-read the partition table on /dev/sda
(Device or resource busy). As a result, it may not reflect all of your changes
until after reboot.
(parted)
```



```
(parted) print
Model: ATA QEMU HARDDISK (scsi)
Disk /dev/sda: 53.7GB
Sector size (logical/physical): 512B/512B
Partition Table: msdos

Number  Start   End     Size    Type      File system  Flags
 1      1049kB  211MB   210MB   primary   ext4         boot
 2      211MB   15.9GB   15.7GB   primary   ext4
 3      15.9GB   18.1GB   2147MB  primary   linux-swap(v1)
 4      18.1GB   53.7GB   35.6GB  extended

```

The changes start taking place as soon as you press Enter, so review the command before executing to it.

After creating the partition, use the print command to confirm that it is in the partition table with the correct partition type, file system type, and size. Also remember the minor number of the new partition so that you can label it. You should also view the output of:

```
cat /proc/partitions
```

to make sure the kernel recognizes the new partition.

```
(parted) quit
```



**NOTE:**

IF YOU USE THE MKPARTFS COMMAND INSTEAD, THE FILE SYSTEM IS CREATED AFTER THE PARTITION IS CREATED. HOWEVER, PARTED DOES NOT SUPPORT CREATING AN EXT3 FILE SYSTEM. THUS, IF YOU WISH TO CREATE AN EXT3 FILE SYSTEM, USE MKPART AND CREATE THE FILE SYSTEM WITH THE MKFS COMMAND

```
[root@ktlinux1 ~]#
[root@ktlinux1 ~]#
[root@ktlinux1 ~]# cat /proc/partitions
major minor #blocks  name

          8        0   52428800  sda
          8        1     204800  sda1
          8        2  35840000  sda2
          8        3  2097152  sda3
```

# WELL KNOWN PORT NUMBERS (0-1023)

## TABLE LEGEND

Use	Description	Color
Official	Port is registered with IANA (Internet Assigned Numbers Authority) for the application	White
Unofficial	Port is not registered with IANA for the application	Blue
Multiple use	Multiple applications are known to use this port.	Yellow

## WELL-KNOWN PORTS

The port numbers in the range from 0 to 1023 are the well-known ports. They are used by system processes that provide widely used types of network services. On Unix-like operating systems, a process must execute with superuser privileges to be able to bind a network socket to an IP address using one of the well-known ports.

PORT	TCP	UDP	DESCRIPTION	STATUS
0		TCP	Programming technique for specifying system-allocated (dynamic) ports[2]	Unofficial
0		UDP	Reserved	Official
1	TCP	UDP	TCP Port Service Multiplexer (TCPMUX)	Official
2	TCP	UDP	CompressNET[3] Management Utility[4]	Official
3	TCP	UDP	CompressNET[3] Compression Process[5]	Official
4	TCP	UDP	Unassigned	Official
5	TCP	UDP	Remote Job Entry	Official
7	TCP	UDP	Echo Protocol	Official

PORT	TCP	UDP	DESCRIPTION	STATUS
8	TCP	UDP	Unassigned	Official
9	TCP	UDP	Discard Protocol	Official
9		UDP	Wake-on-LAN	Unofficial
10	TCP	UDP	Unassigned	Official
11	TCP	UDP	Active Users (systat service)[6][7]	Official
12	TCP	UDP	Unassigned	Official
13	TCP	UDP	Daytime Protocol (RFC 867)	Official
14	TCP	UDP	Unassigned	Official
15	TCP	UDP	Previously netstat service[6]	Unofficial
16	TCP	UDP	Unassigned	Official
17	TCP	UDP	Quote of the Day	Official
18	TCP	UDP	Message Send Protocol	Official
19	TCP	UDP	Character Generator Protocol (CHARGEN)	Official
20	TCP	UDP	FTP data transfer	Official
21	TCP		FTP control (command)	Official
22	TCP	UDP	Secure Shell (SSH) — used for secure logins, file transfers (scp, sftp) and port forwarding	Official
23	TCP	UDP	Telnet protocol—unencrypted text communications	Official
24	TCP	UDP	Priv-mail : any private mail system.	Official
25	TCP		Simple Mail Transfer Protocol (SMTP)—used for e-mail routing between mail servers	Official
26	TCP	UDP	Unassigned	Official
27	TCP	UDP	NSW User System FE	Official
29	TCP	UDP	MSG ICP	Official

PORT	TCP	UDP	DESCRIPTION	STATUS
33	TCP	UDP	Display Support Protocol	Official
35	TCP	UDP	Any private printer server protocol	Official
37	TCP	UDP	TIME protocol	Official
39	TCP	UDP	Resource Location Protocol[8] (RLP)—used for determining the location of higher level services from hosts on a network	Official
40	TCP	UDP	Unassigned	Official
42	TCP	UDP	ARPA Host Name Server Protocol	Official
42	TCP	UDP	Windows Internet Name Service	Unofficial
43	TCP		WHOIS protocol	Official
47	TCP	UDP	NI FTP[8]	Official
49	TCP	UDP	TACACS Login Host protocol	Official
50	TCP	UDP	Remote Mail Checking Protocol[9]	Official
51	TCP	UDP	IMP Logical Address Maintenance	Official
52	TCP	UDP	XNS (Xerox Network Systems) Time Protocol	Official
53	TCP	UDP	Domain Name System (DNS)	Official
54	TCP	UDP	XNS (Xerox Network Systems) Clearinghouse	Official
55	TCP	UDP	ISI Graphics Language (ISI-GL)	Official
56	TCP	UDP	XNS (Xerox Network Systems) Authentication	Official
56	TCP	UDP	Route Access Protocol (RAP)[10]	Unofficial
57	TCP		Mail Transfer Protocol (RFC 780)	Official
58	TCP	UDP	XNS (Xerox Network Systems) Mail	Official
64	TCP	UDP	CI (Travelport) (formerly Covia) Comms Integrator	Official
67		UDP	Bootstrap Protocol (BOOTP) Server; also used by Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP)	Official

PORT	TCP	UDP	DESCRIPTION	STATUS
68		UDP	Bootstrap Protocol (BOOTP) Client; also used by Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP)	Official
69		UDP	Trivial File Transfer Protocol (TFTP)	Official
70	TCP		Gopher protocol	Official
71	TCP		NETRJS protocol	Official
72	TCP		NETRJS protocol	Official
73	TCP		NETRJS protocol	Official
74	TCP		NETRJS protocol	Official
77	TCP	UDP	Any private Remote Job Entry	Official
79	TCP		Finger protocol	Official
80	TCP		Hypertext Transfer Protocol (HTTP)	Official [11]
81	TCP		Torpark—Onion routing	Unofficial
82		UDP	Torpark—Control	Unofficial
88	TCP	UDP	Kerberos—authentication system	Official
90	TCP	UDP	dnsix (DoD Network Security for Information Exchange) Security Attribute Token Map	Official
90	TCP	UDP	PointCast (dotcom)	Unofficial
99	TCP		WIP Message protocol	Unofficial
100		UDP	CyberGate RAT protocol	Unofficial
101	TCP		NIC host name	Official
102	TCP		ISO-TSAP (Transport Service Access Point) Class 0 protocol;[12] also used by Digital Equipment Corporation DECnet (Phase V+) over TCP/IP	Official

PORT	TCP	UDP	DESCRIPTION	STATUS
104	TCP	UDP	ACR/NEMA Digital Imaging and Communications in Medicine (DICOM)	Official
105	TCP	UDP	CCSO Nameserver Protocol (Qi/Ph)	Official
107	TCP		Remote TELNET Service[13] protocol	Official
108	TCP	UDP	SNA Gateway Access Server [1]	Official
109	TCP		Post Office Protocol v2 (POP2)	Official
110	TCP		Post Office Protocol v3 (POP3)	Official
111	TCP	UDP	ONC RPC (Sun RPC)	Official
113	TCP		Ident—Authentication Service/Identification Protocol,[14] used by IRC servers to identify users	Official
113		UDP	Authentication Service[14] (auth)	Official
115	TCP		Simple File Transfer Protocol (SFTP)	Official
117	STD		UUCP Path Service	Official
118	TCP	UDP	SQL (Structured Query Language) Services	Official
119	TCP		Network News Transfer Protocol (NNTP)—retrieval of newsgroup messages	Official
123		UDP	Network Time Protocol (NTP)—used for time synchronization	Official
126	TCP	UDP	Formerly Unisys Unitary Login, renamed by Unisys to NXEdit. Used by Unisys Programmer's Workbench for Clearpath MCP, an IDE for Unisys MCP software development	Official
135	TCP	UDP	DCE endpoint resolution	Official
135	TCP	UDP	Microsoft EPMAP (End Point Mapper), also known as DCE/RPC Locator service,[15] used to remotely manage services including DHCP server, DNS server and WINS. Also used by DCOM	Unofficial
137	TCP	UDP	NetBIOS NetBIOS Name Service	Official
138	TCP	UDP	NetBIOS NetBIOS Datagram Service	Official

PORT	TCP	UDP	DESCRIPTION	STATUS
139	TCP	UDP	NetBIOS NetBIOS Session Service	Official
143	TCP		Internet Message Access Protocol (IMAP)—management of email messages	Official
152	TCP	UDP	Background File Transfer Program (BFTP)[16]	Official
153	TCP	UDP	SGMP, Simple Gateway Monitoring Protocol	Official
156	TCP	UDP	SQL Service	Official
158	TCP	UDP	DMSP, Distributed Mail Service Protocol[17]	Unofficial
161		UDP	Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP)	Official
162	TCP	UDP	Simple Network Management Protocol Trap (SNMPTRAP)[18]	Official
170	TCP		Print-srv, Network PostScript	Official
175	TCP		VMNET (IBM z/VM, z/OS & z/VSE - Network Job Entry(NJE))	Official
177	TCP	UDP	X Display Manager Control Protocol (XDMCP)	Official
179	TCP		BGP (Border Gateway Protocol)	Official
194	TCP	UDP	Internet Relay Chat (IRC)	Official
199	TCP	UDP	SMUX, SNMP Unix Multiplexer	Official
201	TCP	UDP	AppleTalk Routing Maintenance	Official
209	TCP	UDP	The Quick Mail Transfer Protocol	Official
210	TCP	UDP	ANSI Z39.50	Official
213	TCP	UDP	Internetwork Packet Exchange (IPX)	Official
218	TCP	UDP	Message posting protocol (MPP)	Official
220	TCP	UDP	Internet Message Access Protocol (IMAP), version 3	Official
259	TCP	UDP	ESRO, Efficient Short Remote Operations	Official
264	TCP	UDP	BGMP, Border Gateway Multicast Protocol	Official

PORT	TCP	UDP	DESCRIPTION	STATUS
280	TCP	UDP	http-mgmt	Official
300	TCP		ThinLinc Web Access	Unofficial
308	TCP		Novastor Online Backup	Official
311	TCP		Mac OS X Server Admin (officially AppleShare IP Web administration)	Official
318	TCP	UDP	PKIX TSP, Time Stamp Protocol	Official
319		UDP	Precision time protocol event messages	Official
320		UDP	Precision time protocol general messages	Official
350	TCP	UDP	MATIP-Type A, Mapping of Airline Traffic over Internet Protocol	Official
351	TCP	UDP	MATIP-Type B, Mapping of Airline Traffic over Internet Protocol	Official
366	TCP	UDP	ODMR, On-Demand Mail Relay	Official
369	TCP	UDP	Rpc2portmap	Official
370	TCP		codaauth2—Coda authentication server	Official
370		UDP	codaauth2—Coda authentication server	Official
370		UDP	securecast1—Outgoing packets to NAI's SecureCast servers [19]As of 2000	Unofficial
371	TCP	UDP	ClearCase albd	Official
383	TCP	UDP	HP data alarm manager	Official
384	TCP	UDP	A Remote Network Server System	Official
387	TCP	UDP	AURP, AppleTalk Update-based Routing Protocol[20]	Official
389	TCP	UDP	Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP)	Official
399	TCP	UDP	Digital Equipment Corporation DECnet (Phase V+) over TCP/IP	Official
401	TCP	UDP	UPS Uninterruptible Power Supply	Official
427	TCP	UDP	Service Location Protocol (SLP)	Official

PORT	TCP	UDP	DESCRIPTION	STATUS
443	TCP		Hypertext Transfer Protocol over TLS/SSL (HTTPS)	Official
444	TCP	UDP	SNPP, Simple Network Paging Protocol (RFC 1568)	Official
445	TCP		Microsoft-DS Active Directory, Windows shares	Official
445	TCP		Microsoft-DS SMB file sharing	Official
464	TCP	UDP	Kerberos Change/Set password	Official
465	TCP		URL Rendezvous Directory for SSM (Cisco protocol), SMTP over SSL	Official
475	TCP	UDP	tcpnethaspsrv (Aladdin Knowledge Systems Hasp services, TCP/IP version)	Official
491	TCP		GO-Global remote access and application publishing software	Unofficial
497	TCP		Dantz Retrospect	Official
500		UDP	Internet Security Association and Key Management Protocol (ISAKMP)	Official
502	TCP	UDP	Modbus, Protocol	Unofficial
504	TCP	UDP	Citadel—multiservice protocol for dedicated clients for the Citadel groupware system	Official
512	TCP		Rexec, Remote Process Execution	Official
512		UDP	comsat, together with biff	Official
513	TCP		rlogin	Official
513		UDP	Who[21]	Official
514	TCP		Shell—used to execute non-interactive commands on a remote system (Remote Shell, rsh, remsh)	Official
514		UDP	Syslog—used for system logging	Official
515	TCP		Line Printer Daemon—print service	Official
517		UDP	Talk	Official

PORT	TCP	UDP	DESCRIPTION	STATUS
518		UDP	NTalk	Official
520	TCP		efs, extended file name server	Official
520		UDP	Routing Information Protocol (RIP)	Official
521		UDP	Routing Information Protocol Next Generation (RIPng)	Official
524	TCP	UDP	NetWare Core Protocol (NCP) is used for a variety things such as access to primary NetWare server resources, Time Synchronization, etc.	Official
525		UDP	Timed, Timeserver	Official
530	TCP	UDP	RPC	Official
531	TCP	UDP	AOL Instant Messenger	Unofficial
532	TCP		netnews	Official
533		UDP	netwall, For Emergency Broadcasts	Official
540	TCP		UUCP (Unix-to-Unix Copy Protocol)	Official
542	TCP	UDP	commerce (Commerce Applications)	Official
543	TCP		klogin, Kerberos login	Official
544	TCP		kshell, Kerberos Remote shell	Official
545	TCP		OSIsoft PI (VMS), OSIsoft PI Server Client Access	Unofficial
546	TCP	UDP	DHCPv6 client	Official
547	TCP	UDP	DHCPv6 server	Official
548	TCP		Apple Filing Protocol (AFP) over TCP	Official
550	TCP	UDP	new-rwho, new-who[21]	Official
554	TCP	UDP	Real Time Streaming Protocol (RTSP)	Official
556	TCP		Remotefs, RFS, rfs_server	Official
560		UDP	rmonitor, Remote Monitor	Official

PORT	TCP	UDP	DESCRIPTION	STATUS
561		UDP	monitor	Official
563	TCP	UDP	NNTP protocol over TLS/SSL (NNTPS)	Official
587	TCP		e-mail message submission[22] (SMTP)	Official
591	TCP		FileMaker 6.0 (and later) Web Sharing (HTTP Alternate, also see port 80)	Official
593	TCP	UDP	HTTP RPC Ep Map, Remote procedure call over Hypertext Transfer Protocol, often used by Distributed Component Object Model services and Microsoft Exchange Server	Official
604	TCP		TUNNEL profile,[23] a protocol for BEEP peers to form an application layer tunnel	Official
623		UDP	ASF Remote Management and Control Protocol (ASF-RMCP)	Official
631	TCP	UDP	Internet Printing Protocol (IPP)	Official
631	TCP	UDP	Common Unix Printing System (CUPS)	Unofficial
635	TCP	UDP	RLZ DBase	Official
636	TCP	UDP	Lightweight Directory Access Protocol over TLS/SSL (LDAPS)	Official
639	TCP	UDP	MSDP, Multicast Source Discovery Protocol	Official
641	TCP	UDP	SupportSoft Nexus Remote Command (control/listening): A proxy gateway connecting remote control traffic	Official
646	TCP	UDP	LDP, Label Distribution Protocol, a routing protocol used in MPLS networks	Official
647	TCP		DHCP Failover protocol[24]	Official
648	TCP		RRP (Registry Registrar Protocol)[25]	Official
651	TCP	UDP	IEEE-MMS	Official
653	TCP	UDP	SupportSoft Nexus Remote Command (data): A proxy gateway connecting remote control traffic	Official

PORT	TCP	UDP	DESCRIPTION	STATUS
654	TCP		Media Management System (MMS) Media Management Protocol (MMP)[26]	Official
657	TCP	UDP	IBM RMC (Remote monitoring and Control) protocol, used by System p5 AIX Integrated Virtualization Manager (IVM)[27] and Hardware Management Console to connect managed logical partitions (LPAR) to enable dynamic partition reconfiguration	Official
660	TCP		Mac OS X Server administration	Official
666	TCP	UDP	Doom, first online first-person shooter	Official
666	TCP		airserv-ng, aircrack-ng's server for remote-controlling wireless devices	Unofficial
674	TCP		ACAP (Application Configuration Access Protocol)	Official
688	TCP	UDP	REALM-RUSD (ApplianceWare Server Appliance Management Protocol)	Official
691	TCP		MS Exchange Routing	Official
694	TCP	UDP	Linux-HA High availability Heartbeat	Official
695	TCP		IEEE-MMS-SSL (IEEE Media Management System over SSL)[28]	Official
698		UDP	OLSR (Optimized Link State Routing)	Official
700	TCP		EPP (Extensible Provisioning Protocol), a protocol for communication between domain name registries and registrars (RFC 5734)	Official
701	TCP		LMP (Link Management Protocol (Internet)),[29] a protocol that runs between a pair of nodes and is used to manage traffic engineering (TE) links	Official
702	TCP		IRIS[30][31] (Internet Registry Information Service) over BEEP (Blocks Extensible Exchange Protocol)[32] (RFC 3983)	Official
706	TCP		Secure Internet Live Conferencing (SILC)	Official
711	TCP		Cisco Tag Distribution Protocol[33][34][35]—being replaced by the MPLS Label Distribution Protocol[36]	Official

PORT	TCP	UDP	DESCRIPTION	STATUS
712	TCP		Topology Broadcast based on Reverse-Path Forwarding routing protocol (TBRPF) (RFC 3684)	Official
749	TCP	UDP	Kerberos (protocol) administration	Official
750		UDP	kerberos_iv, Kerberos version IV	Official
751	TCP	UDP	kerberos_master, Kerberos authentication	Unofficial
752		UDP	passwd_server, Kerberos Password (kpasswd) server	Unofficial
753	TCP		Reverse Routing Header (rrh)[37]	Official
753		UDP	Reverse Routing Header (rrh)	Official
753		UDP	userreg_server, Kerberos userreg server	Unofficial
754	TCP		tell send	Official
754	TCP		krb5_prop, Kerberos v5 slave propagation	Unofficial
754		UDP	tell send	Official
760	TCP	UDP	krbupdate [kreg], Kerberos registration	Unofficial
782	TCP		Conserver serial-console management server	Unofficial
783	TCP		SpamAssassin spamd daemon	Unofficial
800		UDP	mdbe daemon	Official
808	TCP		Microsoft Net.TCP Port Sharing Service	Official
829	TCP		Certificate Management Protocol[38]	Unofficial
843	TCP		Adobe Flash[39]	Unofficial
847	TCP		DHCP Failover protocol	Official
848	TCP	UDP	Group Domain Of Interpretation (GDOI) protocol	Official
860	TCP		iSCSI (RFC 3720)	Official
861	TCP	UDP	OWAMP control (RFC 4656)	Official

PORT	TCP	UDP	DESCRIPTION	STATUS
862	TCP	UDP	TWAMP control (RFC 5357)	Official
873	TCP		rsync file synchronization protocol	Official
888	TCP		cddb, CD DataBase (CDDB) protocol (CDDBP)	Unofficial
897	TCP	UDP	Brocade SMI-S RPC	Unofficial
898	TCP	UDP	Brocade SMI-S RPC SSL	Unofficial
901	TCP		Samba Web Administration Tool (SWAT)	Unofficial
901	TCP	UDP	VMware Virtual Infrastructure Client (from managed device to management console)	Unofficial
902	TCP	UDP	ideafarm-door	Official
902	TCP	UDP	VMware Server Console (from management console to managed device)	Unofficial
903	TCP		VMware Remote Console [40]	Unofficial
904	TCP		VMware Server Alternate (if 902 is in use, i.e. SUSE linux)	Unofficial
911	TCP		Network Console on Acid (NCA)—local tty redirection over OpenSSH	Unofficial
944		UDP	Network File System (protocol) Service	Unofficial
953	TCP	UDP	Domain Name System (DNS) RNDC Service	Unofficial
973		UDP	Network File System (protocol) over IPv6 Service	Unofficial
981	TCP		SofaWare Technologies Remote HTTPS management for firewall devices running embedded Check Point FireWall-1 software	Unofficial
987	TCP		Microsoft Corporation Microsoft Windows SBS SharePoint	Unofficial
989	TCP	UDP	FTPS Protocol (data): FTP over TLS/SSL	Official
990	TCP	UDP	FTPS Protocol (control): FTP over TLS/SSL	Official
991	TCP	UDP	NAS (Netnews Administration System)[41]	Official

PORT	TCP	UDP	DESCRIPTION	STATUS
992	TCP	UDP	TELNET protocol over TLS/SSL	Official
993	TCP		Internet Message Access Protocol over TLS/SSL (IMAPS)	Official
994	TCP	UDP	Internet Relay Chat over TLS/SSL (IRCS)	Official
995	TCP		Post Office Protocol 3 over TLS/SSL (POP3S)	Official
999	TCP		ScimoreDB Database System	Unofficial
1002	TCP		Opsware agent (aka cogbot)	Unofficial
1010	TCP		ThinLinc Web Administration	Unofficial
1023	TCP	UDP	Reserved	Official